

الفنون و المهارات اللازمة للتفوق في إمتحانات

# كفايات اللغة الإنجليزية

# *S.T.E.P*

محمد عبد العزيز طيب

1434هـ - 2013م

2 ..... مقدمة الكتاب

## الباب الأول : التراكيب اللغوية. Structure and Compositional Anal.

17.....	: الأسماء والمسميات	الفصل الأول
27.....	: الضمائر	الفصل الثاني
32.....	: الصفات	الفصل الثالث
47.....	: المصادر	الفصل الرابع
53.....	: الأفعال	الفصل الخامس
76.....	: الروابط	الفصل السادس
82.....	: روابط am, is, are, was, were	الفصل السابع
91.....	: روابط do, does	الفصل الثامن
106.....	: روابط did	الفصل التاسع
116.....	: روابط have, has	الفصل العاشر
128.....	: روابط have been, has been	الفصل الحادي عشر
136.....	: روابط can, could, will, would, shall, should	الفصل الثاني عشر
142.....	: روابط that	الفصل الثالث عشر
149.....	: تراكيب تفاصيل المبتداء والخبر	الفصل الرابع عشر
167.....	: تراكيب النفي و الإستفهام والتعليق والرد	الفصل الخامس عشر
182.....	: تراكيب دمج وتعاقب وتوصيل جملتين و أكثر	الفصل السادس عشر

205.....Reading Comprehension : القراءة والإستيعاب

228.....Listening Comprehension. : الإستماع والإستيعاب

التسجيلات الصوتية لأكثر من خمسين محادثة و قطعة وموضوع متوفرة على قناة إمتحانات كفايات اللغة الإنجليزية على موقع



[www.qiyashelp.com](http://www.qiyashelp.com)

## مقدمة الكتاب

أصبح الإلمام باللغة الإنجليزية مطلباً أساسياً للتقدم في العديد من المجالات العلمية والتقنية و الوظائف والمهن، مثل الطب و الحاسب الآلي، والتكنولوجيا والطيران وصناعة النفط و جميع أنواع العلوم الأخرى و نتيجة لذلك أصبح أكثر من مليار شخص يتحدثون اللغة الإنجليزية بدرجات مختلفة في جميع أنحاء العالم. وتعتبر اللغة الإنجليزية أهم اللغات الرسمية الست للأمم المتحدة.

عادة ما يتم وصف اللغة الإنجليزية الحديثة علي أنها أهم لغة عالمية مشتركة بين شعوب الأرض ، لأنها اللغة الأكثر إستعمالاً و المهيمنة دولياً في مجالات الاتصالات و العلوم و التجارة و الطيران و الترفيه و الإذاعة و جميع التعاملات الدبلوماسية. ولقد لعبت الإمبراطورية البريطانية دوراً رئيسياً في إنتشار اللغة الإنجليزية حتي أنه بحلول أواخر القرن التاسع عشر لم يكن هناك ركن من أركان العالم إلا وفيه من يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية. و بعد تمدد الإمبراطورية البريطانية في أمريكا الشمالية أصبحت اللغة الإنجليزية هي اللغة السائدة في الولايات المتحدة. وبعد إستقلال الولايات المتحدة عن بريطانيا لعب إزدهار الولايات المتحدة الاقتصادي و الثقافي وكذلك نفوذها كقوى عظمى عالمية منذ الحرب العالمية الثانية في الإسراع من اتخاذ اللغة الإنجليزية كلغة أساسية في جميع أنحاء المعمورة.

### نشأة اللغة الإنجليزية

اللغة الإنجليزية هي لغة جرمانية نشأت في إنجلترا في القرن الخامس من لهجات الإنجلوسكسون و التي جلبت إلي بريطانيا عن طريق مستوطنون ألمان بمساعدة القوات الرومانية القادمة من مناطق شمال غرب ألمانيا و شمال هولندا. واحدة من تلك القبائل الجرمانية هي قبيلة الإنجلز و التي من الممكن أن تكون قد قدمت من إنجلن وهي القبيلة التي نسبت لها اللغة الإنجليزية. قبل قدوم الإنجلوسكسون الي إنجلترا كان السكان الأصليين يتحدثون البريثنونية و هي لغة سيلتية.

في البداية ، كانت اللغة الإنجليزية القديمة لغة عامية يستعملها الطبقات الغير متعلمة، ( حيث أن اللغة اللاتينية كانت هي لغة العلم آنذاك ) ، ولقد كانت اللغة الإنجليزية القديمة آنذاك تتكون من مجموعة متنوعة من اللهجات المختلفة و التي تعكس الاصول المتعددة

لممالك الإنجلوسكسون التابعة لبريطانيا العظمى وهي مايسمىها المؤرخون اللغة الإنجليزية الأصلية القديمة. ومع غزو متحدثي اللغة الجرمانية الشمالية النورمان القديمة في القرن 8 و 9. 11 تطورت اللغة الإنجليزية و تنوعت مفرداتها أطلق عليها المؤرخون لغة انجلونورمان. وهي لغة هجين ، حولت الإنجليزية إلي لغة "مستعيرة"، أي تتقبل و تستوعب مفردات ومصطلحات اللغات الأخرى، مما جعلها لغة ذات مرونة كبيرة و كم هائل من المفردات.

ومع ظهور وانتشار الإمبراطورية البريطانية ، أنتشرت اللغة الإنجليزية في مناطق كثيرة حول العالم، مثل أمريكا الشمالية و الهند و أفريقيا و استراليا. كما ساعد أيضا ظهور الولايات المتحدة كقوى عظمى علي انتشار اللغة و هيمنتها على جميع مناحي الحياة العلمية و الإقتصادية. وبذلك تطورت اللغة الإنجليزية القديمة إلي الإنجليزية الوسطى، مستعيرة كم هائل من المفردات و العادات الهجائية للنورمان (الإنجليزية- الفرنسية)

في بداية القرن الخامس عشر، استمرت اللغة الإنجليزية في اكتساب كلمات ومفردات أجنبية من لغات مختلفة و كما أنها قامت بتشكيل و بناء عدد كبير من الكلمات الإنجليزية علي أساس جذور من اللاتينية و اليونانية القديمة و خاصة الكلمات الخاصة بالتقنية.

### نشأة قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية

في البداية لم تكن اللغة الإنجليزية لغة الطبقات المتعلمة في بريطانيا، التي كان يتحدث متعلموها اللغة اللاتينية و اللغة اليونانية والعربية. لذلك لم تكن لهذة اللغة قواعد لغوية تحكم تركيباتها اللغوية. حيث كان الإعتقاد السائد أن هذه اللغة هي لغة العوام وهي عبارة عن لغة حرة لاتحكمها قواعد لغوية محددة.

ولقد إستمر هذا الإعتقاد حتى منتصف القرن السادس عشر، الي أن أصدر وليام بولوكر كتيب باللغة اللاتينية بعنوان قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية. حاول و ليام في كتيبه إثبات أن اللغة الإنجليزية تتبع قواعد شبيهة بقواعد اللغة اللاتينية، فحاول جاهداً تركيب قواعد اللغة اللاتينية على اللغة الإنجليزية. فبدأت فكرة صياغة قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية و كثر الباحثين في هذا المجال. وظهر هنالك العديد من الكتاب الذين عارضو أسلوب وليام و الكتاب التابعين، المناديين بصياغة قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية على منوال اللغة اللاتينية. إلا أن المعارضين ، وحتى بداية القرن السادس عشر، لم

الألية. وكان أول عمل يجب أن أقوم به، هو كتابة برامج و مجموعة من التعليمات يستطيع الحاسب الإلى إتباعها لتحليل النصوص الإنجليزية و إستيعاب معناها.

فمن خلال دراستي و بتطبيق بعض الأفكار من أساليب التعرف على الإنماط الشكلية Pattern Recognition ، لاحظت و جود بنية تركيبية موحدة للجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية، وكذلك العديد من التشابه في مكونات الجملة الأساسية، التي تسهل فهم الكثير من التراكيب التي يصعب تفسيرها بالطرق الإعتيادية (أي الإسلوب اللاتيني). فعلى ضوء هذه الملاحظات صممت مجموعة من القواعد و التعليمات التي يستطيع الحاسب الإلى إتباعها لتحليل النصوص الإنجليزية و إستيعاب معناها.

وعندما كبر إبنني تركي و بناتي ، بدأت أعلمهم قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية، على طريقة قاعدة HcN ، أستطاعو بفضل الله و جوده و كرمه من أن يجتازوا إمتحان التوفل وهم طلاب في المرحلة الثانوية، بعد ذلك بدأت أدرس هذه الطريقة لطلاب جامعيين بعضهم من المتخصصين في اللغة الإنجليزية، وكانت النتائج مذهلة.

بعد ذلك بدأت أطور هذا الإسلوب و أعرضه على مجموعة من المتخصصين في اللغة الإنجليزية من الأمريكان والبريطانيين، اللذين أعجبو بسهولةها ومنطقيتها وقدرتها على تلافي مشاكل الإسلوب التقليدي لتدريس اللغة الإنجليزية و طلب منى الكثير من زملائي و إبنائي الطلاب صياغة هذه المعلومات على شكل برنامج متكامل لتعليم اللغة الإنجليزية. التي أحلم أن يصبح هذا الإسلوب في فهم تراكيب اللغة الإنجليزية إسلوب عالمياً، لتعليم وتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية.

ومع ظهور أمتحان STEP وكونه أصبح هاجس وعبء أمام أبنائي طلاب وطالبات الدراسات العليا حاولت أن أقدم هذا الجهد المتواضع ليكون عوناً لهم بعد الله سبحانه و تعالى في دخولهم إلى برامج الدراسات العليا، سائلاً المولى العلى القدير العون والسداد متمنياً أن يكون محمد طيب صديقاً يذكره أبنائه الطلاب بالخير طيلة رحلتهم العلمية ومابعدها.

محمد عبدالعزيزحسن طيب

مستشار متخصص في علوم الذكاء والحاسب الآلي

جوال 0506854291

mohammed.tayyib@yahoo.com

يتمكنوا من التغلب على التقاليد العلمية البريطانية و تغلغل الثقافة اللاتينية في الثقافة العلمية البريطانية. ومع نهاية القرن السابع عشر، ظهر هناك كم هائل من كتب قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية المتأثرة بأسلوب وليام بولوكر و تختلف في نوعية الأشخاص المستهدفين، فكان هناك كتب للتجار وكتب للعمال و كتب للتعرف مع الجنس الآخر.

في القرن الثامن عشر أصدر روبرت لوث كتاب بعنوان مدخل مختصرة الى قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية ركز فيه على الدقة في التعبير، و تصحيح الأخطاء في إستخدام اللغة الإنجليزية، مع العديد من التمارين و التدريبات، و لقد لقي هذا الكتاب نجاحاً تجارياً باهراً، حيث عشق الكتاب العديد من متعلمي اللغة الإنجليزية. وتبع لوث العديد من تلاميذه بالعديد من الإصدارات و الكتب التي تدور في فلك كتاب لوث.

في القرن التاسع عشر، بدأت أساليب الدراسات العلمية للغة الإنجليزية في الظهور، و بدأت دراسة قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية من ناحية التركيبات و الصوتيات. ولعل أهم محطات هذه المرحلة كتاب هنري سويت "قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية الحديثة، منطق وتاريخ". وبدأت العديد من الكتب والمؤلفات في الظهور معتمدة على أساليب التركيبات و الصوتيات الحديثة. ولعل آخرها كتاب رودني هدلستون بعنوان قواعد كامبرج للغة الإنجليزية.

### نشأة قاعدة HcN (المبتداء - الرابط - الخبر)

بحمد الله و توفيقه، هداني الله سبحانه و تعالى إلى إكتشاف قاعدة تركيب معظم (إذا لم يكن كل) الجمل في اللغة الإنكليزية، هذه القاعدة سميتها قاعدة HcN (المبتداء - الرابط - الخبر) وهي بمثابة شفرة DNA الوراثية التي تشكل خصائص اللغة الإنجليزية.

تمتاز قاعدة HcN بسهولةها ومنطقيتها، كما أنها ساهمت في إلغاء كل القواعد الشاذة التي لم يستطيع المتخصصون في اللغة الإنجليزية تفسيرها بالإسلوب اللاتيني.

وتبدأ قصة إكتشافي لقاعدة HcN ، عندما كنت طالب في مرحلة الدراسات العليا في جامعة الملك فهد للبترول و المعادن ، كنت أبحث في مجال كتابة برامج كمبيوتر ذكية تستطيع أن تساعد الكمبيوتر على فهم وإستيعاب النصوص المكتوبة باللغة الإنجليزية، وهو أحد مجالات البحث في مجالات ذكاء الحاسبات

**الجزء الأول،** يقيس هذا الجزء من الإمتحان مهارة الطالب في أستيعاب المحادثات و المناقشات و النصوص المسموعة. يتكون هذا الجزء من الأمتحان من 25 سؤال تقريبا. وفي هذا الجزء من الأمتحان سيطلب منك الأستماع الى عدد من التسجيلات الصوتية الي مايقارب من 15 محادثة أو نص مسموع. ستسمع التسجيل عن طريق مكبر الصوت في قاعة الإمتحان، لاحظ ان التسجيل قد لا يكون جيدا و ان مكبرات الصوت قد لا تكون ممتازة، إضافة الى ان بعض المراقبين او الطلاب قد يكونو مزعجين أحيانا. و تتنوع المحادثات فبعضها قصير لايزيد عن 10 ثواني و بعضها قد يصل الى دقيقة واحدة. في نهاية كل محادثة أو قطعة يطلب منك الإجابة على سؤال، أو أكثر.

**الجزء الثاني الى السادس.** - يتكون كل جزء من الجزء الثاني الى السادس، من 25 سؤال تقريبا، تكون أول 20 سؤال تقريبا مخصصة لقياس مقدرة الطالب على فهم التراكيب اللغوية و قواعدها و كذلك تميز المفردات المختلفة و أما آخر خمسة الى ثمانية أسئلة من كل من هذه الأجزاء يكون مخصص لفهم إستيعاب النصوص الكتابية، وذلك من خلال إعطاء الطالب نص مكتوب مابين صفحة (500 كلمة) أو نصف صفحة (250 كلمة) و من ثم تكون اخر خمسة الى ثمانية أسئلة من كل من هذه الفصول تكون أسئلة على القطعة أو النص المعطى.

## المهارات المطلوبة للإمتحان

### أولاً، مهارات الأستماع

**مهارة فهم و أستيعاب المسموع.** التفوق في جزء الأستماع من الإمتحان يتطلب ان يكون لدى الطالب مهارة في أستيعاب المحادثات و المناقشات و النصوص المسموعة. و أن يكون قادر على تمييز طريقة نطق كل كلمة من الكلمات الواردة في النص. وتدوين وإدراك جميع المعلومات الواردة فيه. في هذه المرحلة سيكون دور الطالب دور المتلقي للمعلومات أي أنه مطالب فقط بفهم المعلومات المعطاة في النص. هذه المهارة أساسية، للتعامل مع الأسئلة المباشرة في الإمتحان.

**الثانية، مهارة الإستيعاب و الأستنتاج،** هذه المهارة تتطلب قدرات الطالب علي الأستماع الى النص بإنصات شديد و واع و لإدراك المعلومات الواردة في

## نبذة عن إمتحانات كفاية اللغة الإنجليزية

تتشرط جميع الجامعات وبعض الشركات العالمية المرموقة، حصول الطالب علي درجة معينة في أحد الإمتحانات العالمية التالية ( TOEFL, IELTS, STEP )، لتحديد مدى تمكن الطالب و مهارته في أستخدام اللغة الإنجليزية من حيث معرفة القواعد، و إستيعاب القراءة، وفهم و المادة المسموعة، والقدرة على كتابة مقالات والتحدث عن موضوعات مختلفة. هذه المهارات المختلفة هي المهارات اللازمة للتحصيل الأكاديمي.

إمتحان TOFEL ، وهو أقدم و أشهر هذه الإمتحانات العالمية. يعود تاريخه الى عام 1964، يتقدم له سنوياً مايزيد عن 800,000 طالب وطالبة سنوياً. يركز الإمتحان على قياس مقدرة الطالب و معرفته باللغة الإنجليزية الأمريكية، وكذلك أنماط ووسائل و طرق التعامل مع الآخرين في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية وخصائص المجتمع الأمريكي. إضافة على التركيز على العلوم الإنسانية الأخرى.

إمتحان IELTS وهو إمتحان حديث نوعاً ما، يعود تاريخه الى عام 1980. رغم ان جذوره تعود الى عام 1960، إلا ان إنتشاره خارج نطاق بريطانيا لايزال محدوداً. ويتميز هذا الإمتحان بانه يركز على اللغة الأكاديمية العلمية و المحادثات العالمية، دون أن يركز على ثقافة او شعب أو دولة معينة. هذه الميزة ساعدت على بدء إنتشار هذا الإمتحان خارج نطاق بريطانيا.

إمتحان STEP وهو إمتحان حديث يقدمه المركز الوطني للقياس و التقويم في التعليم العالي السعودي. كمقياس و متطلب للقبول في الجامعات ومؤسسات التعليم العالي في المملكة العربية السعودية، يهدف هذا الإمتحان الى التعرف على مستوى قدرة و مهارة إستخدام اللغة الإنجليزية لدى الطلاب المتقدمين للدراسة فيها و تقيمهم حتي يسهل تصنيفهم ووضعهم في المستوى و البرنامج المناسب لهم من حيث اللغة.

## أقسام الإمتحان

يستغرق الأمتحان مدة ساعتين و نصف ، ويتكون من خمس الى ستة أجزاء. يخصص مقدار 25 دقيقة تقريباً لكل جزء. أي بمعدل دقيقة واحدة لكل سؤال.

طبعاً الجواب (D) لأن الرجل يقول أنه لا يستطيع أن يتفق مع المرأة بأقل من ذلك.

مثال

ستسمع رجل يقول

Hey, I heard you tried that new Japanese restaurant around the corner. How was it?

ثم ستسمع إمراة ترد عليه

Couldn't have been better!

بعد ذلك ستسمع السؤال التالي

What does the woman mean?

وعليك أن تختار أحد الأجابات المعطاة

- (A) She has not been to the restaurant yet.  
 (B) She enjoyed the restaurant very much.  
 (C) She thinks that some of the menu items are better than others.  
 (D) She plans to eat at the restaurant soon.

طبعاً الجواب (B) لأن المرأة تقول أنها لا تستطيع أنه لا يمكن أن يكون أحسن من ذلك.

مثال

ستسمع أمراة تقول

Hassan, Joanna told me that you'd seen the student sculpture exhibit on the quad. What'd you think of it?

ثم ستسمع رجل يرد عليها

I've seen better!

بعد ذلك ستسمع السؤال التالي

N: What does Hassan mean?

وعليك أن تختار أحد الأجابات المعطاة

- (A) The exhibit is not as impressive as other exhibits that she has seen.

النص، زيادة على ذلك يتوقع من الطالب إستنتاج معلومات جديدة من المعلومات الواردة في النص. وهذه المهارة مهمة للتعامل مع الأسئلة الغير مباشرة في الإمتحان و التي تشكل جزء مهم منه.

مثال

ستسمع رجل يقول

This coffee is really terrible.

ثم ستسمع إمراة ترد عليه

I couldn't agree more.

بعد ذلك ستسمع السؤال التالي

What does the woman mean?

وعليك أن تختار أحد الأجابات المعطاة

- (A) She would like more coffee.  
 (B) She thinks the man should Complain.  
 (C) She also dislikes the coffee.  
 (D) She thinks the coffee is acceptable.

طبعاً الجواب (C) لأن المرأة تقول أنها لا تستطيع أن توافقه على أكثر من ذلك.

مثال

ستسمع أمراة تقول

This is just about the worst coffee I've ever had.

ثم ستسمع رجل يرد عليها

I couldn't agree less.

بعد ذلك ستسمع السؤال التالي

What does the man mean?

وعليك أن تختار أحد الأجابات المعطاة

- (A) He would like more coffee.  
 (B) He thinks the woman should complain.  
 (C) He also dislikes the coffee.  
 (D) He thinks the coffee does not taste bad.

قاعدة HcN (المبتداء - الرابط - الخبر)

إذا تأملنا الجمل التالية و حاولنا إكتشاف الأخطاء بها، فإن الشخص المعتاد علي قراءة و فهم النصوص باللغة الإنجليزية، يستطيع إكتشافها بسهولة معتمدا على مبداء التعود، ولذلك قد يقول لك الشخص، الجملة فيها غلط، "It does not sound right!!!" ولكن كيف تعلم شخص غير متمرس في تركيبات اللغة الإنجليزية الى إكتشاف هذه الأخطاء؟

مثال

حدد الأخطاء اللغوية في هذا النص ؟

The region already struggling to cope with huge influx of migrants arriving from Tunisia.

Since January, at least 15,000 migrants have arrived, many of them land on the tiny island of Lampedusa is struggling to cope.

Thousand of people are living in basic camps on island, leading to health concerns and rising local tensions.

والصحيح هو مايلي

The region **is** already struggling to cope with **a** huge influx of migrants arriving from Tunisia.

Since January, at least 15,000 migrants have arrived, many of them **landing** on the tiny island of Lampedusa **which** is struggling to cope.

Thousands of people are living in basic camps on **the** island, leading to health concerns and rising local tensions.

وهناك العديد من التسائل و الإلتباس، ماهو الفرق بين كلمة **Struggling** في الجملة الأولى، وكلمة **Landing** في الجملة الثانية.

- (B) She was not able to see the exhibit.  
(C) It was difficult to enjoy the exhibit.  
(D) Her eyes are troubling her.

طبعا الجواب (A) لأن الرجل يقول أنه رأى أفضل من ذلك

مثال

ستسمع أمراء تقول

Carl, how you feeling today?

ثم ستسمع رجل يرد عليها

Couldn't be better!

بعد ذلك ستسمع السؤال التالي

What does the man mean?

وعليك أن تختار أحد الأجابات المعطاة

- (A) He feels great.  
(B) She was not able to see the exhibit.  
(C) It was difficult to enjoy the exhibit.  
(D) Her eyes are troubling her.

طبعا الجواب (A) لأن الرجل يقول أنه لايمكن أن يكون أحسن من ذلك

في الباب الثالث من هذا الكتاب نقدم للطالب أكثر من خمسين نصاً من المحاضرات والمحادثات والنصوص المسموعة التي يمكن للطالب سماعها و التدرب عليها لتقوية مهارات الأستماع. جميع التسجيلات الصوتية متوفرة على متوفرة على موقعنا

www.qiyashelp.com

ثانياً، مهارات التراكيب اللغوية

كما مر معنا سابقاً فإن الجزء الثاني الى الخامس من الإمتحان يركز على مهارة الطالب في فهم تراكيب الجملة الصحيحة في اللغة الإنجليزية حسب قواعدها اللغوية. و في الباب الثاني من هذا الكتاب نقدم للطالب قاعدة HcN و التي يتميز بها هذا الكتاب والتي نسال الله سبحانه و تعالى أن تكون عوناً لابنائنا و بناتنا الطلاب في التخلص من عقدة قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية.

أستنتاجها من القطعة أو النص المعطى. وفي الباب الثالث من هذا الكتاب نقدم مجموعة من النصوص المتفاوتة في الطول و صعوبة المفردات للتدرب عليها.

مثال

إقرأ القطعة التالية ثم أجب على الأسئلة التالية

One of my happiest memories is of my elementary school days in USA. I was nine years old when my family moved to America. I liked life in the United States and got used to it easily.

However, I was always proud of being a Saudi national. One day, the school took us on a field trip to the John F. Kennedy Centre in Washington DC.

The centre was full of interesting things to see. I listened carefully to what the tour guide and our teacher had to say about the exhibits.

I wanted to get home and tell my family about the exhibits. To leave the centre, we had to pass the Hall of Flags.

The guide told us that the flag of every country in the world hangs in this hall. Hurriedly my eyes searched for the Saudi flag. I simply stood under it and saluted it.

My teacher and classmates were touched by my patriotism. They spent the rest of the day telling everyone how wonderful it was for a child to love his country so much. It was a memorable day indeed.

قد يكون السؤال عن معنى كلمة وردة في النص

1. "proud" means

A. to be unhappy and sad.

في الجملة الأولى نسميها، مضارع مستمر و في الجملة الثانية، نسميها جرنند Gerend لماذا؟ ولعل معظم هذه الأسئلة و التساؤلات قد تكون وردت في ذهنك و ذهن العديد ممن تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية، ولم يجد لها تفسيراً منطقياً .

في هذا الكتاب نقدم لك أسلوب منطقي جديد سميناه قاعدة HcN والتي ستسهل لك عملية فهم تراكيب اللغة الإنجليزية.

**عناصر قاعدة HcN (المبتداء - الرابط - الخبر)**

بحمد الله و توفيقه، هداني الله سبحانه و تعالى إلى إكتشاف و جود علاقات بنية تركيبية موحدة للجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية، تتكون من ثلاث أجزاء.

- المبتداء - Heading
- الرابط - Connection
- الخبر - News

هذه التركيبية ، الموحدة سميناهما قاعدة

المبتداء-الرابط-الخبر

أو قاعدة H-c-N

Heading-Connection-News

إضافة إلى هذه القاعدة الموحدة، قمنا بإعادة صياغة و تعريف كلاً من القواعد التي كانت تشكل عقبة في فهم قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية. مثل

Gerneds, Past Participle, Past Perfict  
Infinitives, Auxolry verbs, Tenses

وفي الباب الثاني من هذا الكتاب نقدم شرح مفصل لهذه القاعدة و كيفية أستخدامها في الإمتحان.

**ثالثاً، مهارات أستيعاب المكتوب**

في نهاية كل من الفصل الثاني الى الخامس يعطي الطالب نص مكتوب مابين صفحة (500 كلمة) أو نصف صفحة (250 كلمة) تتبعا خمسة الى ثمانية أسئلة أما أن تكون مباشرة أو غير مباشرة يجب



- A. because the child is so smart  
B. because the teacher was surprised  
C. because that gives great feelings

أقرب الأجوبة الى الصحيح (C) لان ذلك يعطي إحساس جميل

قد يكون سؤال مباشر من القطعة، وهذا في الواقع قليل الاحتمال

How old was he when he moved to the united states?

- A. 9 years  
B. 8 years  
C. 7 years

سؤال مباشر و سهل جداً، وقليل وجوده في الإمتحان

رابعاً، مهارات تمييز المفردات

يتوقع من الطالب أن يكون قادر على معرفة بعض العلاقات بين المفردات.

1. أيجاد الكلمة المكررة في قائمة من الكلمات

مثال

Identify the repeated word in the box?

Here Hair Her Hair Hare

طبعاً الجواب Hair

2. أيجاد الكلمة المختلفة في قائمة من الكلمات

مثال

Identify the different word in the box?

Banana Apple Grape Rock Okra

طبعاً الجواب Rock كل الكلمات الأخرى من المأكولات

3. أيجاد الكلمة و ضدها في قائمة من الكلمات

- B. to behave very badly.  
C. to be pleased by something.

طبعاً الجواب (C) لأن معني الكلمة فخور و معترف.

2. "exhibits" means

- A. things for everyone to see.  
B. places teachers  
C. flags you can buy.

طبعاً الجواب (A) لأن معني الكلمة يعرض.

قد يكون السؤال عن معلومة لم ترد في النص و لكن يمكن تخمينها من المعلومات المعطاة

3. Where did the writer live before he came to the United States?

- A. United Arab Emirates.  
B. Saudi Arabia.  
C. United Kingdom

أقرب الأجوبة الى الصحيح (B) رغم أن الكاتب لم يذكر ذلك صراحة في النص، لكننا يمكن أن نستنتج أنه سعودي

قد يكون السؤال عن الفكرة العامة للنص

4. What is the main idea of this reading?

- A. An unhappy childhood memory.  
B. Going to school in another contrary  
C. A child's love for his country.

أقرب الأجوبة الى الصحيح (C)

قد يطلب منك أن تبدي رأيك، وستعطي بعض الآراء التي تبدو كلها منطقية مما يجعل الخيارات ستكون صعبة نوعاً ما.

5. Why do you think the teacher and the writer's classmates were touched by his action?

---

---

# القواعد والتركيبات اللغوية Structure (ST)

---

---

- الرابط - Connection
- الخبر - News

يلعب فيها الرابط دوراً أساسياً في فهم تركيب في صياغة الجملة وتركيبها.

## أولاً، الروابط

الروابط كلمات محددة يجب أن يكون أحدها داخل الجملة. أي ان الجملة التي لاتحتوي على رابط لايمكن ان تكون جملة صحيحة و تقوم الروابط بربط المعلومات الواردة في المبتداء بالمعلومات الواردة في الخبر، وفيما يلي قائمة بالروابط، التي يتم إستخدامها في اللغة الإنجليزية.

- am, is, are, was, were
- do, did
- have, has, had,
- have been, has been
- can, could, will, should, would
- may, might, ought, must

## ثانياً، المبتداء

المبتداء هو كل الكلمات التي تسبق الرابط، مع ملاحظة أن المبتداء لايمكن أن يعطينا جملة مفيدة لوحده مهما تعددت كلماته. ويتكون المبتداء من عدد من التركيبات المنطقية البسيطة مثل تركيبات الأسماء و المسميات و الضمانر، والصفات و التفاصيل. مع ملاحظة أن الأفعال لايمكن أن تظهر في المبتداء. ولكنها تظهر في الخبر فقط. و سنقوم بشرح كل من هذه التركيبات في الفصول القادمة من هذا الكتاب.

حتى يسهل تميز المبتداء في الجملة فإننا نرسم خط مستقيم تحت كلمات المبتداء. و نضع دائرة حول الرابط.

ملاحظة، الأمثلة التالية قد تكون صعبة نوعاً ما على الطالب العادي، وضعت هنا لتوضيح مزايا ومميزات قاعدة HcN.

## الباب الأول

### التركيب اللغوية

يركز الجزء الثاني الى الجزء الخامس من إمتحان STEP على مهارة الطالب في فهم تركيب الجملة الصحيحة في اللغة الإنجليزية حسب قواعدها اللغوية. و في هذا الباب من الكتاب نقدم للطالب قاعدة HcN و التي يتميز بها هذا الكتاب والتي نسأل الله سبحانه و تعالى أن تكون عوناً لابننا و بناتنا الطلاب في التخلص من عقدة قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية.

### عناصر قاعدة HcN (المبتداء - الرابط - الخبر)

تنص قاعدة المبتداء - الرابط - الخبر HcN على و جود علاقات بنية تركيبية موحدة للجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية، تتكون من ثلاث أجزاء.

- المبتداء - Heading
- الرابط - Connection
- الخبر - News

هذه التركيبية ، الموحدة سمينها قاعدة

### المبتداء-الرابط-الخبر

أو قاعدة

### Heading-Connection-News H-c-N

إضافة إلى هذه القاعدة الموحدة، قمنا بإعادة صياغة و تعريف كلاً من القواعد التي كانت تشكل عقبة في فهم قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية. مثل

Gerneds , Past Participle, Past Perfict  
Infinitives, Auxolry verbs, Tenses

### تفاصيل قاعدة HcN (المبتداء - الرابط - الخبر)

حسب قاعدة HcN فإن الجمل في اللغة الإنجليزية كلها جمل اسمية، تتكون من ثلاث أجزاء رئيسية،

- المبتداء - Heading

مثال

حلل الجملة التالية ؟

Mohammed is a good man.

الجواب

Mohammed is a good man.

مثال

حلل الجملة التالية ؟

The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Evgpt and Libya is an excellent example of the impct of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

الجواب

The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Evgpt and Libya is an excellent example of the impct of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

مثال

حلل الجملة التالية ؟

Nuclear fuel authorities in many parts of the world along with many political leaders in the Islamic world will advocate switching from using seawater to fresh water in nuclear fuel reactors early next week in the UN.

الجواب

Nuclear fuel authorities in many parts of the world along with many political leaders in the Islamic world will advocate switching from using seawater to fresh water in nuclear fuel reactors early next week in the UN.

مثال

The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Evgpt and Libya is an excellent example of the impct of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

المبتداء

The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Evgpt and Libya

لاحظ ان المبتداء لا يعطينا جملة مفيدة لوحده.

### ثالثا، الخبر

الخبر هو كل الكلمات التي تتبع الرابط، و هي الكلمات التي تحدد و تعطينا معلومات مفيدة عن المبتداء. لكن لا يمكن أن يعطينا الخبر جملة مفيدة لوحده مهما تعددت كلماته من دون المبتداء . وفي هذا الكتاب نرسم خطين مستقيمين أو متعرج تحت كلمات الخبر.

مثال

The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Evgpt and Libya is an excellent example of the impct of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

في المثال السابق ، الخبر

an excellent example of the impct of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

لاحظ ان الخبر لا يعطينا جملة مفيدة لوحده.

ونسمي عملية تحديد المبتداء، الرابط و الخبر، بعملية التحليل الأولى للجملة. و ذلك بوضع دائرة حول الرابط و من تم خط مستقيم تحت المبتداء، و خط متعرج أو مستقيم تحت الخبر. و هي عملية تشبه الى حد ما عملية الإعراب في قواعد اللغة العربية.

مبتداء من نوع إسم Mohammed  
رابط is  
خبر من نوع صفة fat

مثال

حلل الجملة التالية ؟

Mohammed was late yesterday for the party.

مبتداء من نوع إسم Mohammed  
رابط was  
خبر يحتوي على العديد من التفاصيل  
صفة late  
متي؟ yesterday  
عن ماذا؟ for the party

مثال

حلل الجملة التالية ؟

Mohammed and his rich family were late yesterday for the party.

مبتداء Mohammed and his rich family  
رابط were  
خبر يحتوي على العديد من التفاصيل  
صفة late  
متي؟ yesterday  
عن ماذا؟ for the party

لاحظ ان المبتداء أيضا يحتوي على تفاصيل و معلومات ، أن محمد و عائلته و عرفنا أيضا أن محمد عائلته غنية أيضا. أي ان المبتداء يتكون من أسم (محمد) و مسمي (عائلة) و ضمير و صفة

وفي الفصول القادمة سنتعرف على مكونات المبتداء و الخبر من الأسماء و المسميات والضمائر و الصفات و كذلك الأفعال. و سنربط كل ذلك بالروابط في الفصل السادس الى الفصل السادس عشر من هذا الكتاب.

مثال

حلل الجملة التالية ؟

## تفاصيل المعلومات في المبتداء و الخبر

في معظم الأحيان يحتاج الكاتب و المتحدث إعطاء معلومات تفصيلية عن المبتداء و الخبر حتي يستطيع توضيح الصورة للقارئ.. مثلاً "ذهب محمد"، نعلم هنا أن محمد قد ذهب لكننا لاندرى متي؟ وإلى أين؟ و كيف؟ و مع من؟ ، تأمل المثال التالي و دقة المعلومات المعطاة ، هذه المعلومات تسمى المعلومات التفصيلية، حيث ان المعلومة الرئيسية ان "محمد ذهب" و هو المبتداء و الخبر، وكل المعلومات الأخرى تفصيلية.

مثال

- ذهب محمد.
- ذهب محمد مسرعاً. (كيف؟)
- ذهب محمد إلى المدرسة مسرعاً. (أين؟ كيف؟)
- ذهب محمد مع زميلة إلى المدرسة مسرعاً. (أين؟ كيف؟ مع من؟)
- ذهب محمد ليلة البارحة مع زميلة إلى المدرسة مسرعاً. (متي؟ أين؟ كيف؟ مع من؟)
- ذهب محمد بالسيارة ليلة البارحة مع زميلة إلى المدرسة مسرعاً. (ماهي المواصلات التي استخدمها؟ متي؟ أين؟ كيف؟ مع من؟)

كل الكلمات التي تحتها خط في المثال السابق تسمى معلومات تفصيلية.

### المعلومات التفصيلية

المعلومات التفصيلية هي كلمة أو مجموعة كلمات تعطي تفاصيل زمانية أو مكانية، أو أحوال ، أو الترتيب ، أو مدى تكرار المبتداء أو الخبر. هذه المعلومات تجعل الجملة أكثر إفادة للقارئ أو المستمع.

مثال

حلل الجملة التالية ؟

Mohammed is fat.

المستمع معلومات مهمة عن المبتداء و الخبر. التي قد تكون كثيرة جداً و التي قد تساهم قد تجعل الجملة طويلة نوعاً ما. في أحد الكتب قرأت جملة تتكون من 460 كلمة ، أي ما يقارب صفحة كاملة. فقد يتساءل البعض، كم عدد التفاصيل الممكن إعطائها في جملة واحدة؟

الجواب ليس هناك عدد محدد من التفاصيل، لكن كثرة التفاصيل في جملة و احدة قد يكون مزعجاً للقارئ و المستمع و قد يصعب عملية إستيعاب القارئ للجملة، لذلك كلما كانت الجملة معقولة الطول فإن ذلك يساعد القارئ على إستيعاب النصوص،

مع كثرة التفاصيل في الجملة قد يتساءل البعض عن ترتيب التفاصيل في المبتداء و الخبر، ليس هناك قواعد صارمة لترتيب التفاصيل في الجملة، إلا أن هناك إجماع متعارف عليه، سنورده في الفصل الخامس عشر، علي سبيل المثال إذا كان الخبر حدث، فإن تفاصيل الحدث ترتب حسب التسلسل التالي (إصطلاحاً)

- أولاً، تفاصيل كيفية حدوث الحدث (الحال)
- ثانياً، تفاصيل مكان حدوث الحدث
- ثالثاً، تفاصيل مدى تكرار حدوث الحدث
- رابعاً، تفاصيل زمن حدوث الحدث
- خامساً، تفاصيل سبب و قوع الحدث

## تقديم و تأخير بعض تفاصيل المبتداء و الخبر

يحتاج الكاتب أحياناً، إلى تقديم جزء من الخبر، أو عدة أجزاء من الخبر إلى ما قبل المبتداء للتركيز على أهميتها. ويفصل بين جزء الخبر المقدم و المبتداء بفاصلة.

مثال

Nuclear fuel authorities in many parts of the world along with many political leaders in the Islamic world (will) advocate switching from using seawater to fresh water in nuclear fuel reactors early next week in the UN.

Better knowledge of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe—have put the goal within reach, according to a commentary in this week's issue of the journal *Nature*, co-written by Teagle, a geologist at the U.K.'s University of Southampton now.

لاحظ ان هذه جملة واحدة، لكنها تحتوي على تفاصيل كثيرة عن المبتداء و الخبر

نحدد الرابط، تم المبتداء و الخبر

Better knowledge of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe—have put the goal within reach, according to a commentary in this week's issue of the journal *Nature*, co-written by Teagle, a geologist at the U.K.'s University of Southampton last year.

لاحظ أننا لو حذفنا المعلومات التفصيلية لأصبحت الجملة

Knowledge and technological advances have put the goal.

في مثل هذه الجملة تتجلى قوة قاعدة المبتداء و الرابط و الخبر، و طريقة تحليل المبتداء و الخبر إلى مكوناته الأساسية، تخيل لو أن أحد عناصر الجملة السابقة محذوف وطلب منك معرفته، ستستمتع بالمزيد في الفصول القادمة من هذا الكتاب

## ترتيب تفاصيل المعلومات في المبتداء و الخبر

لاحظنا في الأمثلة السابقة، أن هناك العديد من أنواع التفصيلات و التفاصيل التي تعطي القارئ أو

{ and, or, but, so, then, first, second, next, finally, therore, thus, however }

وعند تحليلنا للجملتين المترابطة فإننا نضع خطين تحت كلمات التعاقب.

مثال

Both Sims and Peter were familiar with the nature of the geologic problem they were dealing with and were prepared to take risks.

• أحياناً، ما تتعاقب جملة مع ماقبلها حسب العلاقات التالية:-

- علاقة : سبب ← نتيجة

{ Thus, Therefore, So, Then }

وعند تحليلنا للجملتين المتعاقبتين من هذا النوع فإننا نضع سهم تحت كلمة التعاقب.

مثال

Both Sims and Peter were familiar with the nature of the geologic problem. Therefore, it was very easy for them to explain it.

لاحظ أن الجملة الأولى ناتجة من الجملة الأولى.

- علاقة : تضاد ⇔

{ But, However, Unfortunatly }

وعند تحليلنا للجملتين المتعاقبتين من هذا النوع فإننا نضع سهمين متعاكسين تحت كلمة التعاقب.

إذا أراد الكاتب الى أن يركز على أهمية الزمان أي أن الحدث جديد جدا و أنه وقع في مكان مهم، فإن الكاتب يقدم جزء من الخبر الى ماقبل المبتداء، و يفصله عن المبتداء بعلامة الفاصلة. في الجملة السابقة تصبح بعد تقديم جزء من الخبر، Early next week in the UN, الى ماقبل المبتداء للتركيز على أهمية الزمان والمكان. الى مايلي :

Early next week in the UN, nuclear fuel authorities in many parts of the world along with many political leaders in the Islamic world will advocate switching from using seawater to fresh water in nuclear fuel reactors.

## دمج الجمل

أحياناً، ما يحتوي المبتداء أو الخبر أو كلاهما على جملة كاملة لكل منها رابطه و مبتداءه و خبرة و تسمى هذه العملية بعملية دمج الجمل.

مثال

Both Sims and Peter were familiar with the nature of the geologic problem they were dealing with.

لاحظ ان الخبر في الجملة الثانية يحتوي على جملة كاملة

*they were dealing with.*

وهي جملة كاملة تتكون من مبتداء و رابط وخبر مستقل.

## تعاقب الجمل في المعنى

أحياناً، يكون لدينا جملتين مستقلتين من ناحية المبتداء و الربط و الخبر لكنها تتربط في المعنى، كأن تكون الجملة الثانية ناتجة مما حدث في الجملة الأولى، و قد تكون الجملة الثانية تتعارض مع الجملة الأولى، و قد يكون هناك نوع من الترتيب يحرص الكاتب على توضيحه في النص، و تحتوي اللغة الإنجليزية على كلمات محددة تربط الجملة بما سبقها من الجمل ، منها

مثال

Both Sims and Peter were aware the nature of the geologic problem. But, they totally ignore.

لاحظ أن الجملة الأولى تتعارض مع الجملة الثانية.

مثال

Both Sims and Peter were aware the nature of the geologic problem. Unfortunately, they were not able report it.

لاحظ أن الجملة الأولى تتعارض مع الجملة الأولى.

- علاقة : تسلسل 1، 2، 3، ....

{ First, second, Next,  
Finally, upove all }

وعند تحليلنا للجملتين المتعاقبتين من هذا النوع فإننا نضع رقم صغير، فوق كلمة التعاقب.

مثال

This business proposal is very bad. First<sup>1</sup>, it is illegal. Second<sup>2</sup>, it is dangourous. Finally<sup>3</sup>, it is not profitable.



أسماء الأحداث التاريخية

the Civil War - the Industrial Revolution -  
World War I

أسماء الأيام و الشهور و المناسبات

Friday - Christmas - December – Al-Haj

أسماء الأديان و الكتب السماوية

God - Islam -- Christ - Christianity -  
Judaism - the Koran- the Bible - the  
Torah.

أسماء الجوائز، و الماكات العالمية

the Nobel Peace Prize - the Scout  
Movement - Ford Focus - the Bismarck -  
Kleenex - Hoover

خصائص الأسماء

• تبدأ الأسماء بالحرف الكبير Capital Letter، و كذلك كل جزء من هذه الأسماء كلها تبدأ بالحرف الكبير.

• تظهر الأسماء في المبتداء

Mohammed is a good man.

• تظهر الأسماء في الخبر ، على شكل مفعول أو بعد حرف الجر.

He did give Ali a book.

He did give a book to Ali.

المُسمَّيات Noun

المُسمَّيات هي جميع ما يطلق من مسميات علي الأشياء المادية و المعنوية من حولنا، غير أسماء الأعلام. مثل طاولة، كرسي، طماطم ، جبن، لبن، كتاب، قلم وغير ذلك من المسميات للأشياء من حولنا. و تنقسم المسميات من حيث إمكانية عدها الى نوعين رئيسيين: مسميات معدودة وهي المسميات التي يمكن عدها مثل كتاب و قلم و مرسة ، و مسميات غير معدودة وهي المسميات التي لا يمكن عدها مثل

الباب الأول

الفصل الأول

الأسماء و المُسمَّيات

تعتبر الأسماء و المسميات من أهم مكونات المبتداء والخبر في الجملة الإنجليزية.

الأسماء Proper Noun

الأسماء ، هي أسماء الأشخاص ، والأماكن، و الشهور، و الأيام ، و الفصول. وهي ما يمكن تسميته الأسم العلم، أي المعروف. مع ملاحظة أن هذه الأسماء تبدأ كتابتها دائماً بالحرف الكبير Capital Letter، و كذلك كل جزء من هذه الأسماء كلها تبدأ بالحرف الكبير.

مثال

أسماء الأشخاص المشهورين و العاديين

Mohammed, Ali, King Abdullah, John,

Lynne Hand - Elizabeth Helen Ruth Jones

أسماء الشركات

Microsoft - Rolls Royce – General Motor,  
Google.

أسماء المدن و الدول و اللغات

Paris - London - New York - England -  
English

اسماء الأماكن الجغرافية

the Red Sea - Abha - Mars

أسماء المباني و الشوارع و القاعات

The Taj Mahal - The Eiffel Tower - Room  
222 – Al-Faisaliyah

مثال

- I sat on a chair . جلست على كرسي ما
- He is a man. هو رجل ما (نكرة)
- This is his car. هذه سيارته (معرفة)
- Open that door. أفتح ذلك الباب (معرفة)

تتكبير المسميات

- تدخل أدوات التكبير a, an علي جميع المسميات إذا لم نحدد أو نعرف ذلك الشيء بعينه، نستخدم an مع المسميات التي تبدأ بأي من الحروف التالية a,e,i,o,u بينما تستخدم a مع كل المسميات الأخرى.

مثال

Give me a book.  
تعني أعطني أي كتاب وليس كتاب بعينه.

I saw a man.  
تعني رأيت رجل ما وليس رجل محدد بعينه

I ate an apple.  
تعني أكلت تفاحة ما وليس تفاحة محددة بعينها

تعريف المسميات

تعريف المسميات بإضافتها إلى إحدى أنواع المضاف إليه التالية:

- تعريف المسميات بإضافتها إلى the وهي ال التعريف

مثال

The book is on the table.

هنا نحن نتحدث عن كتاب بعينه يعرفه المستمع وكذلك طاولة بعينها ، فنقول أن الكتاب على الطاولة

The book is on a table.

هنا نحن نتحدث عن كتاب بعينه يعرفه المستمع موجود على إحدى الطاولات لم نحددها، فنقول أن الكتاب الذي نتحدث عنه موجود على إحدى الطاولات.

A book is on a table.

هنا نحن نتحدث عن كتاب ما دون تحديد لا يعرفه المتحدث موجود على إحدى الطاولات

هواء، سكر ، ملح، و حليب ، لاحظ انه يمكنك قياس كمية الحليب ولكن لايمكنك عد الحليب أو الملح أو الهواء و غير ذلك.

أولاً، المسميات المعدودة، وهي المسميات التي يمكن عدّها مثل كتاب و قلم و مرسمة ، مثلاً يمكن أن نقول كتابان، ثلاث كتب ، أربع كتب، وفيما يلي قائمة بعض المسميات المعدودة :

table, chair, book, pen, coat, shop, apple, poem, women, TV,

خصائص المسميات المعدودة

- أن المسميات المعدودة يمكن جمعها وذلك بوضع حرف s في نهاية الكلمة مثل ان نقول Cats, chairs, books ، إلا ان هناك بعض الكلمات التي تشذ عن هذه القاعدة، أهمها:

child	طفل	children
man	رجل	men
tooth	سن	teeth
woman	إمرأة	women
mouse	فأر	mice
ox	ثور	oxen
foot	قدم	feet

- أن المسميات المعدودة لوحدها لايمكن و صفها بانها نكرة أو معرفة ، لذلك لايمكن استخدامها في الجملة مالم تضاف الى أدوات التكبير مثل a, an أو أن تضاف الى أدوات التعريف التالية the ، أو ضمائر الملكية ( my, your, his, her ) ، أو أسماء الإشارة ( our, theirs this, that, ) ، وكذلك إضافتها الى الكلمات التي تحدد المقادير مثل no, some, any

مثال

- I sat on chair . خطأ
- He is man. خطأ
- This is car. خطأ

والصحيح هو نضيفها الى أدوات التكبير مثل a, an أو أن نعرفها بإضافتها إلى the، أو ضمائر الملكية my, your, his, her , our, theirs أو أسماء الإشارة this, that, وكذلك إضافتها الى الكلمات التي تحدد المقادير مثل no, some, any

• تعريف المسميات بإضافتها الى الكلمات التي تحدد المقادير مثل any, some, few, no

مثال

• I do not want **any** book.  
يفهم من هذه الجملة، أن المتحدث لا يريد أي كتاب.  
لاحظ ان any تأتي مع النفي

• Give me **any** book.  
يفهم من هذه الجملة، أن المتحدث يريد أي كتاب.  
لاحظ ان any تأتي مع عدم التحديد

• I see **no** key.  
يفهم من هذه الجملة، أن المتحدث لا يري أي مفتاح،  
و تستخدم لتفيد النفي

• I bought **some** chairs.  
يفهم من هذه الجملة، أن المتحدث إشتري بعض الكراسي

• I bought **few** chairs.  
يفهم من هذه الجملة، أن المتحدث إشتري عدد من الكراسي ، و تستخدم لتعني العدد أقل من 10، و بذلك نعلم أن المتحدث إشتري عدد من الكراسي قد يكون بين الواحد و العشرة كراسي.

ثانياً، المسميات الغير معدودة، و هي مسميات الأشياء التي لايمكن عدّها مثل الملح و السكر ، و الخشب، و الحديد و النحاس و غير ذلك ، مثلاً لايمكن أن نقول موسيقتان، ثلاث موسيقات ، أربع موسيقات، و أحياناً يسمي هذا النوع من المسميات بمسميات المواد، وفيما يلي قائمة ببعض هذه المسميات الغير معدودة :

أخبار news ، معلومات Information  
سكر sugar ، أرز rice ، أثاث furniture  
beef ، حليب milk ، ماء water ، زبده butter  
غاز ، بنزين gas ، كهرباء electricity ، لحم البقر  
نقود money ، قوة أو كهرباء power ،  
حديد iron ، هواء air ، عملات currency  
رمل sand ، دخان smoke ، خشب wood  
grass ، ثلج ice ، جلد الحيوانات المدبوغة leather  
شروق الشمس sunshine ، جبن cheese ، عشب  
موسيقى music ، أدب literature ، قذارة dirt  
شعر poetry .

لم نحددها، فنقول أن كتاب ما موجود على إحدى الطاولات.

• تعريف المسميات بإضافتها الى ضمائر الملكية my, your, his, her , our, theirs لاحظ ان هذه الضمائر لايمكن ان تظهر في جملة مالم تكون مضافة إلى مسمى

مثال

• I sat on **my** . خطأ  
• He is **our** . خطأ  
• This is **her** . خطأ

والصحيح هونضيف هذه الضمائر الى مسميات

مثال

• I sat on **my** chair . جلستُ على كرسي  
• He is **our** friend . هو صديقنا  
• This is **her** car . هذه سيارتها

لاحظ اننا هنا نتحدث عن مسميات يعرفها المتحدث ، سيارتها، كرسي ، صديقنا.

• تعريف المسميات بإضافتها إلى أسماء الإشارة this, للمفرد القريب , that, للمفرد البعيد، those , للجمع البعيد these للجمع القريب.

مثال

• I want **this** book.  
يفهم من هذه الجملة، أن المتحدث يريد كتاباً، قد يكون الكتاب في يده، أو قريباً جداً من أصبعه و هو يؤشر عليه. و تصبح الجملة أريد هذا الكتاب.

• Give me **that** key.  
يفهم من هذه الجملة، أن المتحدث يريد كتاباً، لكن هذا الكتاب بعيداً عنه، لذا فهو يؤشر عليه من بعيد. و تصبح الجملة أريد ذلك الكتاب.

• **Wahch those** girls!  
يفهم من هذه الجملة، أن المتحدث يريد من المستمع ان يراقب الفتيات الاتي يقفن بعيداً عنهم، و تصبح الجملة انظر الى أولئك الفتيات (البعيدتين).

• I hate **these** cloths.  
يفهم من هذه الجملة، أن المتحدث يكره الملابس القريبة منه، قد يكون يلبسها و تكون في متناول يده، و تصبح الجملة أكره هذه الملابس (القريبة).

خصائص المسميات الغير معدودة

لاحظ المسمى paper أسم مادة الورق، يعتبر غير معدود، يمكننا ان لانضيف شيئا، بينما المسمى blackbord يعتبر معدود و يجب ان يضاف لتعريفه أو تنكيهه

We can write on paper or on a blackboard.

We can write on this paper or on that blackboard.

We can write on my paper or on our blackboard.

3. .... milk is very good to drink.

لاحظ المسمى milk أسم مادة الحليب، يعتبر غير معدود، يمكننا ان لانضيف شيئا، وهو الأفضل هنا لأننا نتكلم عن حقيقة عن الحليب عموما، و ليس حليب بعينه.

Milk is very good to drink.

5. Please give me .....milk.

لاحظ المسمى milk أسم مادة الحليب، يعتبر غير معدود، يمكننا ان لانضيف شيئا، بينما من الأفضل أن نحدد كمية الحليب المطلوبة، تصبح

Please give me milk.

Please give me some milk. تحديد الكمية

Please give me any milk أي نوع من الحليب

6. There is .....food on this plate .

لاحظ المسمى food أسم مادة الطعام، يعتبر غير معدود، يمكننا ان لانضيف شيئا، بينما من الأفضل أن نحدد كمية الطعام الموجودة، تصبح

There is food on this plate .

There is some food on this plate .

There is no food on this plate .

There little food on this plate .

7. .... man gave me ..... books this morning.

• أن المسميات الغير معدودة تعامل دائما معاملة المفرد ، لذلك لا يمكن جمعها ويصبح من الخطاء ان نقول milks, airs, musics وكذلك لا يمكن إضافتها الى those, , those لذلك من الخطاء أيضا ان نقول

these butter , those sult

• أن المسميات الغير معدودة يمكن ان تستخدم في الجملة من دون تعريف ، او تنكيه او إضافة.

• I like music. صحيحة

• Butter is made of milk. صحيحة

• أن المسميات الغير معدودة لا يمكن تنكيهها باستخدام أدوات التنكيه a, an

• I want a butter. خطأ

• Give me a milk. خطأ

• This is an air. خطأ

• أن المسميات الغير معدودة يمكن تعريفها بإضافتها الى the، أو ضمائر الملكية my, your, his, her , our, theirs الإشارة this, that, وكذلك إضافتها الى الكلمات التي تحدد المقادير مثل no, some, any

• The beef is tasty. صحيحة

• This music is good. صحيحة

• My butter is sweet. صحيحة

• I do not have any beef. صحيحة

• Give me some milk. صحيحة

• I need no salt. صحيحة

أمثلة

مثال

أكمل الجمل التالية

1. .... table has four legs.

لاحظ المسمى table يعتبر معدود، يجب أن يضاف لتعريفه أو تنكيهه

A table has four legs.

My table has four legs.

This table has four legs.

2. We can write on ..... paper or on ..... blackboard.

*Any book about politics is not good for my child.*  
نفهم من هنا ان أب يتحدث و يقول ان أي كتاب في السياسة ليس جيد لطفله.

*Your book about politics is not good for a child.*  
نفهم من هنا ان المتحدث يتكلم مع المؤلف و يقول له ان كتابك في السياسة ليس جيد للطفل ( هذا يعني أي طفل ).

*A book about our politics is not good for any child.*  
نفهم من هنا ان المتحدث سياسي يقول ان كتاب في السياسة ليس جيد لأي للطفل .

*Our book about this politics is not good for a child.*  
نفهم من هنا ان المتحدث هو مؤلف الكتاب يتحدث الى زميله و يقول ان كتاب في هذا السياسة ليس جيد لأي للطفل . و قد يفهم ان هناك كتب في سياسات أخرى تكون مفيدة للطفل.

لاحظ كيف تختلف الجملة بنوع الإضافات المضافة، كلها تعتمد على ما يريد المتحدث أن يخبر عنه.  
1 0. Put..... lemon in your soup instead of ..... salt .

لاحظ المسمى salt ، lemon أسم مادة الليمون و الملح، وهما يعتبران يعتبر غير معدودين، لذا يمكننا ان لانضيف شيئا، لكن الإجمال ان نحدد كمية الليمون.  
Put some lemon in your soup instead of salt.

### مثال

أكمل الجمل التالية ، حسب ما يريد المتحدث الإخبار عنه المعطى لك

1.. .... children love .... sweets.

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول :  
الأطفال يحبون الحلويات ؟

*Children love. sweets.*

2.. I love to read ... book in .... morning.

لاحظ المسمى man يعتبر معدود، لذا يجب أن يضاف لتعريفه أو تنكيره، بينما المسمى books يعتبر معدود ولكنه مجموع (قد أضيفت في نهايته) ، لذلك يمكننا ان لانضيف شيئا له أو يمكننا ان نضيفه. ولاحظ مدى تغير معنى الجملة حسب الإضافات المضافة.

*My man gave me books this morning.*  
قد تكون زوجة تتحدث بفخر ان زوجها أعطها كتب هذا الصباح.  
قد يكون مدير ان موضفه أعطه كتب هذا الصباح.

*My man gave me these books this morning.*  
*My man gave me some books this morning.*  
*My man gave me no books this morning.*

*A man gave me books this morning.*  
المتحدث هنا يقول ان رجل ما اعطه كتب هذا الصباح

*A man gave me these books this morning.*  
المتحدث هنا يقول ان رجل ما اعطه هذه الكتب (التي في يده) هذا الصباح

*A man gave me those books this morning.*  
المتحدث هنا يقول ان رجل ما اعطه تلك الكتب (التي يشير اليها المتحدث بيده من بعيد) هذا الصباح

*This man gave me your books this morning.*

المتحدث هنا يقول ان هذا الرجل (التي يشير اليها المتحدث بيده من قريب) اعطه كتب المستمع هذا الصباح

9. .... book about ..... politics is not good for ..... child.

لاحظ المسمى book وكذلك المسمى child يعتبران معدودين، لذا يجب أن يضافا لتعريفهما أو تنكيرهما، بينما المسمى politics أسم مادة السياسة، تعتبر غير معدود، لذا يمكننا ان لانضيف شيئا

*A book about politics is not good for any child.*  
نفهم من هنا ان أب يتحدث و يقول ان كتاب في السياسة ليس جيد لطفله.

*His book about politics is not good for my child.*  
نفهم من هنا ان أب يتحدث و يقول ان كتابه في السياسة ليس جيد لطفله.

8. I need ..... umbrella and .....jaket.

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول :  
إحتاج شمسية و معطف؟

*I need an umbrella and a jaket.*

9. I need ..... umbrella and .....jaket.

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول :  
إحتاج شمسية والمعطف ؟ لاحظ ان المستمع هنا  
يعرف المعطف الذي نتحدث عنه.

*I need an umbrella and the jaket.*

10. I need ..... umbrellas and .....jakets.

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول :  
إحتاج شمسيات وبعض المعاطف ؟

*I need umbrellas and some jakets.*

### تدريب

أكمل الجمل التالية

1. This is \_\_\_ easy question.
2. Please speak \_\_\_ little louder.
3. May I have your \_\_\_ phone number?
4. I have never seen \_\_\_ UFO.
5. May I ask you \_\_\_ question?
6. David is \_\_\_ best student in our class.
7. What is \_\_\_ name of the next station?
8. He has \_\_\_ my car today.
9. I went to \_\_\_ sea during my summer vacation.
10. Is there \_\_\_ public telephone near here?

الأجابة الصحيحة

1.an 2.a 3. a 4.a 5.a 6.the 7.the 8. a 9.the 10.a . ( \_ تعني لاشيئ )

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول :  
أحب أن أقرأ كتاب في الصباح ؟

*I love to read a book in the morning.*

3. There is .... tree behind .... building.

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول :  
توجد هناك شجرة خلف ذلك المنزل البعيد؟

*There is a tree behind that building.*

4. .... tea is very hot, I must put ....  
milk in it.

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول : إن  
هذا الشاي ساخن، يجب ان أضع فيه قليل من الحليب؟

*This tea is very hot, I must put some milk in  
it.*

5. I must give her ... bread and .... cup  
of tea.

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول :  
يجب أن أعطيها بعض الخبز و كوباً من الشاي؟

*I must give her some bread and a cup of tea.*

6.. ....window of ....house is broken.

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول :  
أن نافذة ذلك المنزل مكسورة؟

*The window of that house is broken.*

7. .... girl at ..... back of .... class is  
writing .... letter.

أكمل الجملة السابقة، إذا أراد المتحدث ان يقول :  
أن البنت في آخر الصف تكتب رسالة؟

*A girl at the back of the class is writing a  
letter.*

s:some, a: any, n:no

1. Only \_\_\_ of his friends came.  
Not all of them. الأجابة الصحيحة (s)
3. There isn't \_\_\_ food in the refrigerator, is there? (a)
6. We are broke. We have \_\_\_ money to buy grandpa a gift.(n)
9. I bought a loaf of bread and \_\_\_ cheese at the supermarket yesterday.(s)
12. Don't you know the proverb: " \_\_\_ news is good news"? (n)
15. We don't have \_\_\_ sugar or flour to make the cake.(a)
18. \_\_\_ place he chooses to go will be fine.(a)
20. Don't close the door. There are still \_\_\_ children outside.(s)
23. Why don't you decorate the room with \_\_\_ white flowers?(s)
26. I'm busy. I have \_\_\_ time to chat with you now.(n)
29. \_\_\_ people prefer to study in the morning; others at night.(s)
32. If you have \_\_\_ problem, call me.(a)
35. There aren't \_\_\_ books on this topic in the library.(a)
38. \_\_\_ book about camping will tell you how to put up a tent.(a)

### تدريب

أكمل الجمل التالية

1. There were many dogs in the park. One dog was \_\_\_ Dalmatian.
2. Pandas and \_\_\_ tigers are both endangered animals.
3. She is wearing \_\_\_ blue dress with red earrings
4. Hawaii is \_\_\_ island in the Pacific Ocean.
5. Christmas comes once \_\_\_ year.
6. \_\_\_ ant is \_\_\_ insect.
7. The Nile is \_\_\_ river.
8. I went to the shop to get \_\_\_ bread.
9. He broke \_\_\_ glass when he was washing dishes.
10. You should take \_\_\_ umbrella.

الأجابة الصحيحة

1.a 2. / 3.a 4.an 5.a 6.an/an 7.a 8.some 9.a 10.an . ( \_ تعني لاشيئين )

### تدريب

إملا الفراغ بالكلمة المناسبة؟

" no " أو " some " ، " any "

لاحظ ، رموز الأجابة الصحيحة :

1. I've got \_\_\_ money. Let's have coffee.(l), رغم أننا نعد النقود،
2. I've got \_\_\_ stamps that you can use.(f)
3. I've got \_\_\_ time. Do you want to talk? (l)
4. She can speak \_\_\_ Spanish.(l)
5. I write \_\_\_ letters every week.(f)
6. We had \_\_\_ rain last night.(l)
7. They made \_\_\_ mistakes, but it was OK.(f)
8. Let's go outside for \_\_\_ fresh air.(l)
9. There are \_\_\_ new hotels since you last visited.(f)

### تدريب

إملا الفراغ بالكلمة المناسبة؟

" some " أو " any "

لاحظ ، رموز الأجوبة الصحيحة :

s:some, a: any

1. Please give me ..... more pudding . I'm sorry but there isn't .....(s/a)
2. Go and ask him for ..... more paper, I haven't ..... in my desk.(s/a)
3. I have ..... more letters for you to write.(s)
4. I like those roses ; please give me ..... What a pity there aren't .... Red ones. (s/a)

41. I gave him \_\_\_ medicine for his headache, so he feels much better now.(s)

44. The teacher has \_\_\_ time to correct the compositions now. She has a meeting with the school director.(n)

47. I have \_\_\_ dictionaries in my room that you are welcome to use.(s)

50. Here are \_\_\_ nice ripe apples.(s)

53. \_\_\_ matter what he does, they will not accept him in the group.(n)

56. They haven't asked us \_\_\_ questions so far.(a)

59. He doesn't want \_\_\_ dessert, for he's on a diet.(a)

62. He always gives \_\_\_ money to charity. He's a very generous person.(s)

65. We are taking a short ride. There's \_\_\_ time for a long one.(n)

68. The poor man has \_\_\_ food to eat. He's starving.(n)

### تدريب

إملا الفراغ بالكلمة المناسبة؟

"a few " أو " a little "

لاحظ ، رموز الأجوبة الصحيحة :

l: a little, f: a few

نستخدم *a few* مع الأسماء المعدودة و  
نستخدم *a little* مع الأسماء الغير معدودة



5. I want ..... flour , but the grocer hasn't .....
6. I asked him for ..... ink, and he gave me .....
7. So this is your house, it's a very pretty.
8. I doubt if there are ..... sweets left. You'd better give .... chocolate to the children that haven't had .....
9. I want ..... oranges . Give me these big .....
10. You can take these eggs if you want ....., but I've better .... Inside.
11. If you need.... More money , you must get .... out of the bank! There is hardly ..... in the house.
12. They say the blue ..... are best. I'll buy ..... If you have ..... left.
13. Don't make ..... noise. He wants to get ..... sleep.
14. Do you want ..... bananas? Here are .... Nice ripe .....
15. Are there ..... more books ? I've read all these old ....

### تدريب (عالي)

Fill in the blank with : a, an, the or nothing?

1. Are you shopping for \_\_\_ health club to join so you can get in shape?
2. Shop wisely! You could end up choosing \_\_\_ wrong club and losing more money than pounds.
3. You may find out too late that \_\_\_ health clubs aren't for you.

5. I can't eat ..... more potatoes, but I should like more beans.(a)
6. I don't think there is ..... one here who can speak French .(a)
7. I must have ..... ink and ..... paper, or I can't write .... thing.(s/s/a)
8. There aren't ..... matched left; we must buy ..... more.(a/s)
9. Put ..... salt on your meat , the cook hasn't put .....(s/a)
10. You can have ..... of my chocolate when you haven't ..... more of your own left.(a/a)
11. You can't have ..... more dates because I want ..... for myself.(a/s)
12. There is ..... tea in the kitchen, but there isn't ..... milk.(s/a)
13. I want to buy ..... flower's we haven't ..... in the garden now.(s/a)
14. He wants ..... more pudding. Give him .....(s/s)
15. Put ..... bread on the table; we shall need .... more.(s/s)

تدريب 19- المستوى الثاني

إملا الفراغ بالكلمة المناسبة ؟

" some " أو " any "

1. I want ..... new potatoes, have you ..... ?
2. You have a lot of apples ; please give me ....
3. I asked him for ..... soap, but he hadn't .....
4. These loaves are stale ; please give me ..... new .....

14. Look in \_\_\_ locker room, workout room, and shower--everywhere should be clean.
15. \_\_\_ locker room sanitation is usually a good indication of how clean other areas are.
16. Finally, before you sign \_\_\_ agreement to join, read the contract carefully.

الأجابة الصحيحة

1.a 2.the 3.\_ 4.\_ 5.a 6.an 7.a 8.the  
9.the 10.a 11.\_ 12.the 13.the 14.the  
15.\_ 16.an

4. \_\_\_ San Diego fitness experts recommend thoroughly checking out several health clubs before you join one.
5. First, know what you want and need in \_\_\_ fitness facility, and don't pay for what you'll never use.
6. If you only want exercise classes, \_\_\_ exercise studio without weight machines and locker rooms may work for you.
7. If you're looking for \_\_\_ place to only do bodybuilding, you'll be happy in a basic gym.
8. You may be in \_\_\_ market for a full-service health club; then, make sure it offers lots of activities.
9. Look for a place near your house, and check out \_\_\_ exercise instructors and personal trainers.
10. They should be educated in physical education or certified by \_\_\_ organization such as the American Council on exercise.
11. Certified instructors have at least some knowledge of anatomy, exercise physiology, injury prevention and \_\_\_ cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR).
12. You should evaluate \_\_\_ equipment and make sure fitness machines are modern and in working order.
13. Try to talk to other members of the club. Find out what they believe are \_\_\_ advantages and disadvantages there.

مثال

Please give <b>him</b> a call.	مفعول
She hit <b>me</b> with her idea.	مفعول
They surprised <b>us</b> with that.	مفعول
I told <b>you</b> not to be late.	مفعول

مثال

I am not happy <u>with</u> <b>him</b> .	بعد حرف الجر
<u>To</u> <b>her</b> , I am a king.	بعد حرف الجر
He came <u>after</u> <b>her</b> .	بعد حرف الجر
Put the book <u>in</u> <b>it</b> .	بعد حرف الجر
Stay <u>with</u> <b>us</b> .	بعد حرف الجر

مثال

ضمائر مضافة إلى مصادر او مسميات يتم اشتقاقها من الأفعال على شكل ، (to+ الفعل ) و (الفعل + ing)

مثال

I want to ask **him**.  
Finding **them** is not easy.  
 He dreams of kissing **her**.  
 He is late in helping **us**.  
 I was the first to see **it**.

• ضمائر الملكية ، و هي الضمائر my, your, its, his, her, our, their وتستخدم هذه الضمائر كمضاف الى مسميات أخرى، ولاتستخدم من دون مضاف

مثال

I want my **book**.  
Her **dress** is so beautiful.  
His **dreams** are too much.

مثال

إذا سبق الضمير حرف الجر و أتى بعده مضاف ، فإننا نستخدم صيغة المضاف، و هذه من الأخطاء الشائعة في الإمتحانات

I went to thier **house**. صحيح

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الثاني

#### الضمائر

#### Pronouns الضمائر

هي كلمات تعود على أسماء، أو مسميات معروفة لدي المتحدث أو السامع معاً، فمثلاً عندما نقول I, they, it, he, she, we, you ، فإننا نعرف أننا نتكلم عن شخص أو شيء بعينه .

وتنقسم الضمائر الى أربعة أنواع،

• **ضمائر المبتداء، و هي الضمائر I, you, They, we, he, she, it.** هذه الضمائر تستخدم دائماً في المبتداء و لاتظهر في الخبر، إطلاقاً. و عادة ما تكون أول كلمة في الجملة.

He (is) a good man.

She (is) in her house.

They (can) speak English.

• **الضمائر المنصوبة أو المجرورة ، و هي الضمائر me, you, him, her, us, it, them** . و سميناهما بهذا الإسم ليسهل تذكر أماكن إستخدامها ، حيث أنها عادة ما تكون في موقع المفعول به أو بعد حرف الجر أو مضافة إلى مصادر او مسميات يتم اشتقاقها من الأفعال على شكل ، ( to+الفعل ) و (الفعل + ing)

لاحظ المسمى house يعتبر معدود، يجب أن يضاف لتعريفه أو تنكيره

*My* house is not far from here.

2. We can write on ..... paper or on ..... blackboard. (I, we)  
لاحظ المسمى paper أسم مادة الورق، يعتبر غير معدود، يمكننا ان لانضيف شياء، بينما المسمى blackbord يعتبر معدود و يجب ان يضاف لتعريفه أو تنكيره

We can write on *my* paper or on *our* blackboard.

3. .... milk is very good. (it)

لاحظ المسمى milk أسم مادة الحليب، يعتبر غير معدود، لو كنا نتكلم عن حليب بقرة بعينها فأذن نقول

*Its* milk is very good.

4. Please give me .....key. (you)

Please give me *your* Key.

5. That is .....food on that plate . (we)

That is *our* food on that plate .

6. .... hasband gave me these books this morning. (she)

*Her* hasband gave me these books this morning.

7. .... put some lemon in your soup instead of salt . (they)

*They* put some lemon in your soup instead of salt.

8. .... slept late last night . (she)

*She* slept late last night.

9. ... (she) slept late last night with (he).

He talked with our frined. صحيح

I went to them house. خطأ  
He talked with us frined. خطأ

مثال

إذا سبق الضمير حرف الجر و أتى بعده مضاف ، فأننا نستخدم صيغة المضاف، و هذه من الأخطاء الشائعة في الإمتحانات

I went to thier house. صحيح  
He talked with our frined. صحيح

I went to them house. خطأ  
He talked with us frined. خطأ

• ضمائر صفة الملكية ، و هي الضمائر mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs وتستخدم هذه الضمائر ; كصفات.

مثال

This car is **mine**.

It does not look like my hat it must be **yours**.

I will bring my lunch and you should bring **yours**.

It was good idea of **hers** to buy a house.

That was not my money. It was **thiers**.

My apples are green what is **yours** like?

## تدريب

أكمل الجمل التالية ، بإستخدام الضمير المناسب حسب المعطى

1. .... house is not far from here. (I)

9. You must practice speaking English!

*You must practice it!*

10. The national team risked wining the game.

*They risked it.*

### تدريب

أكمل الجمل التالية بالضمير المناسب؟

الإجابة الصحيحة بين الأقواس

1. This doesn't look like ..... book, it must be .....(my/yours)
2. Tell him not to forget ..... homework; she musn't forget ..... either (his/hers)
3. " Tell me, isn't that ..... English teacher over there?" (your)  
" Oh no, that's ..... History teacher.'(my)
4. Have you done..... homework? I've finished .....(your/mine)
5. It was a good idea of ..... to put ..... books with .....(yours/your/mine)
6. Su'ad and Ismat have forgotten... notebooks again; Tom and Bill have forgotten ..... too.(their/theirs)
7. George has lost ..... pencil; perhaps you can lend him .....(his/yours)
8. I met a friend of ..... at a party last night.(mine)
9. Who bought these orange? ..... is a very dry one; what's ...like? (mine/yours)

*She slept late last night with him.*

10. ...(they) talked about killing (we).

*They talked about killing us.*

### تدريب

إستبدل المسميات التي تحتها خط بضمائر

1. Children love sweets.

*They love. sweets.*

2.. Mohammed loves to read a book in the morning.

*He loves to read a book in the morning.*

3. There is a tree behind those buildings.

*There is a tree behind them.*

4. This tea is very hot, I must put some milk in it.

*It is very hot, I must put some milk in it.*

5. The United Nation office must give the poor people some food and drinks.

*They must give them some food and drinks.*

6. The girl is writing a letter.

*She is writing it.*

7. I need an umbrella and a jaket.

*I need them.*

8. Tina and Mike began learning Arabic last year.

*They began learning it last year*

## تدريب

إختار الضمير المناسب من بين الأقواس؟

1. They knew all about my friend and ( I me).
2. Basil gave Harry and ( I me ) an ice – cream, and then we went to the pictures with (he him) and his friend.
3. He told Mary and ( me I) to go with ( he him) and his mother.
4. What would you do if you were ( he him).
5. Let you and (me I) be friends !
6. We're much stronger than ( they them ).
7. Just between you and (me I) it's ( him he) I'm a friend of, not (she her).
8. I know you're bigger than ( I me ), in fact you're bigger than (we us) both, but we're not afraid.
9. It was (he him) I was taking about.

الأجابة الصحيحة

1.me, 2.me/him, 3.me/him, 4.him, 5.me, 6.them, 7.me/him/her, 8.me/us, 9.him

## تدريب

أعد صياغة العبارات التالية باستخدام ضمير الملكية المناسب؟

الإجابة الصحيحة بين الأقواس

1. The coat of the boy. (His coat or The boy's coat)

10. She wonders if you have seen a book of .... lying about somewhere.(hers)
11. You can take ..... ticket and give me .....(my/yours)
12. John is coming here next week; ..... father and ..... were school friends.(his/mine)
13. They asked me to call on a friend of ..... in London. (theirs)
14. He introduced me to a neighbor of .....(his)
15. We've taken ..... share; has she taken ....? (our/hers)

## تدريب

إستبدل ماتحتة خط بالضمير المناسب؟

الإجابة الصحيحة بين الأقواس

1. John gave the book to Henry. (him)
2. Jane bought some sweets for her mother.(she)
3. Explain the answer to the student.(him)
4. My sister and I told my little brother a story.(we)
5. Alec and Mary gave a box of chocolate to my sister and me.(they/us)
6. You and I must give a present to John.(we/him)
7. John will find her coat for Mary.(it/her)
8. Henry and Alex came to see me and my wife. (they/us)
9. Give this one to the baby.(it)
10. My friend and I told John about our joinery last week. (we/it)

3. I remember that \_\_\_\_\_ (he, hem) bought the car from \_\_\_\_\_ (we, us).
4. Please don't tell \_\_\_\_\_ (she, her) about \_\_\_\_\_ (we, us).
5. \_\_\_\_\_ can't swim because \_\_\_\_\_ has broken legs.
6. I met Sam yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_ invited \_\_\_\_\_ to her house.
7. Janit has a cat; \_\_\_\_\_ loves to play with \_\_\_\_\_.
8. When the dog chased Susan, \_\_\_\_\_ ran as fast as \_\_\_\_\_ could.
9. My father works in a school. \_\_\_\_\_ says \_\_\_\_\_ is a great place.
10. The principle said to the class, "When \_\_\_\_\_ finished your degree, please return \_\_\_\_\_ books to the library."

الأجابة الصحيحة

1. they/she, 2. her/I, 3. he/us, 4. her/us, 5. he/she, 6. she/me, 7. she/it/her, 8. she/she, 9. he/it, 10. you/your.

2. The plays of Beaumont and Fletcher. (Their play or Beaumont and Fletcher's play)
3. The clothes of the boys. (Their cloths or The boys' cloths)
4. The hats of ladies. (Their hats or The ladies' hats )
5. The father of James. (Thier father or The James' father)
6. The music of Strauss. (His music or The Strauss' music )
7. The names of the woman. (Her name or The women's name)
8. The typist of Mr. Sims. (His typist or Mr. Smith's typist)
9. The tails of the fox. (Its tail or the foxe's tail)
10. She's done the work of a whole day. (She has done a whole day's work)
11. The glass of someone else. (Someone else's glas)
12. In the time of a week or two. (In a week or two's time)
13. The poems of Byron and Tennyson. (The Byron and Tennyson's poems )
14. The house of Henry and Mr. Jones. ( The Henry and Mr. Jones's house)

تدريب

إختار الضمير المناسب ؟

1. Do \_\_\_\_\_ (they, them) know that \_\_\_\_\_ (her, she) was absent?
2. Please tell \_\_\_\_\_ ( her, hers) that (I, me) have obtained a degree in Math.

curved	نحني - منحرف
deep	عميق
flat	مسطح - مستوي
high	مرتفع - عالي
hollow	مجوّف . فارغ . أجوف
low	منخفض
narrow	ضيق . محدود . دقيق
round	مستدير . كروي
shallow	ضحل . قليل العمق
skinny	نحيل (الجسم)
square	مربع . قائم الزاوية
steep	شاهق . شديد الانحدار
straight	مستقيم . غير جعد
wide	واسع . عريض

### الصفات الزمنية

ancient	قديم . عتيق
brief	وجيز . قصير الأمد . موجز
early	مبكر
fast	راسخ . مُحكم الإغلاق
late	مبطن . متأخر في المجيء
long	طويل . مستطيل . ذو طول معين
modern	حديث . عصري
old	قديم . بالغ سناً معينة . عجوز
Old-fashioned	محافظ . عتيق الطراز
quick	سريع . ذكي . نزق
rapid	سريع
short	قصير . غير كاف
slow	غبي . متوان . بطيء . ممل
swift	سريع . رشيق
young	صغير . حدث . ناشئ

### صفات الأصوات

cooing	صوت مثل هديل الحمام
deafening	يُصمّ الأذان
faint	خافت
harsh	خشين . أجش
high-pitched	صوت بنيرة مرتفعة
hissing	صوت الهسهسة
hushed	صوت مكتوم
loud	صوت مرتفع - عالي
melodic	صوت جميل كالموسيقى
moaning	صوت الأنين
mute	صوت مكتوم تماماً
noisy	صوت مزعج
purring	صوت يعبر عن الرضى
quiet	صوت هادئ
resonant	رَنان . مرجع للصدى

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الثالث

#### الصفات

#### Adjectives الصفات

هي كلمات تصف المسميات و تعطي معلومات و تفصيلات و صقية عن المسمى، مثل شكله، و طعمه، و صوته، و مظهره و ملمسه، و حالته و مشاعره. و مظهره الخارجي و غير ذلك من الصفات. و فيما يلي بعض الصفات التي يتوقع منك معرفتها في هذه المرحلة. حول أن تحفظ أكبر قدر ممكن منها لتحضير للإمتحان وكذلك لزيادة مهارتك في اللغة الإنجليزية.

#### صفات الملمس

boiling	يغلي من الحرارة
breezy	كثير التسمات . مرح
bumpy	غير مستوي
chilly	فاتر
cold	بارد
cool	دافي
creepy	داب . زاحف
crooked	معقوف . منحن
cuddly	جدير بالمعانقة
curly	جعد أو معقوص وهي صفة للشعر
damaged	مخرب
damp	رطب
dirty	متسخ
dry	جاف
dusty	مُغبر . عُباري
filthy	قذر
flaky	رقاقى ، قشارى
fluffy	زغب كالزغب
wet	رطب - مبلل

#### صفات الشكل الخارجي

broad	عريض . فسيح
chubby	رَيان . لحيم
crooked	معقوف . منحن . ملتو



frantic	مسعور . شديد الاهتياج
brave	شجاع . أنيق . ممتاز
calm	ساكن . هادئ . رصين . رزين
charming	ساحر . فاتن
healthy	متمتع بالصحة . دال على الصحة
cooperative	تعاوني . متعاون
eager	تواق إلى . متلهف على
elated	يجعله تهاها أو مبتهجا
enchanting	يسحر . يفتن . يسبي
encouraging	مُشجّع
energetic	نشيط . فَعَال
enthusiastic	متمحمس
excited	مثار . مهاج
exuberant	وافر . غزير . ضخم
fair	جميل . وسيم . نظيف
faithful	مخلص . وفّي . مُلزم . أمين
fantastic	خيالي . وهمي . غير واقعي
fine	صافٍ . رقيق . ناعم . بارع
friendly	ودود . وديّ . حَبِيّ
funny	مُسلّ . مضحك
gentle	نبيل المحند . كريم . وديع
good	حسن . جيّد . ملائم أو صالح لـ
happy	مواتٍ . ليق . سعيد
jolly	مبتهج . مرح
kind	حنون . شفوق . وديّ
lively	مُفعم بالحياة . نشيط . ناشط
lovely	محبّب إلى النفس . جميل
lucky	مُحظوظ . حسن الحظّ . سعيد
obedient	مطيع . ممتثل . مدعن
perfect	كامل
pleasant	سارٍ . سانعٍ . لطيف . صافٍ
proud	متكبرٍ . أبيّ . فخور

صفات الحالة

alive	حيّ . على قيد الحياة . ناشط
brainy	ذكيّ
busy	مشغول . ناشط . نشيط . فضوليّ
careful	حذر . يقظ . منتبه . دقيق
cautious	حذر . محترس
clever	ذكيّ . ماهر . بارع
concerned	قلق . مهتمّ بكذا
crazy	مخبّل . مجنون
curious	فضوليّ . مُحبّ للاستطلاع . غريب
dead	ميت . حذر . .
different	مختلف . آخر
difficult	صعب . عسير
doubtful	مشكوك فيه . مُبهم . غير مؤكّد
easy	سهل . رخيّ . غير متعجّل
famous	شهير . ممتاز

screeching	صوت صرخة دعر
shrill	صوت حادّ . ثاقب
silent	صوت هادئ
soft	صوت ناعم
squealing	صوت صرخة طويلة
thundering	صوت مرعد
voiceless	أبكم - لا صوت له
whispering	صوت يهمس

صفات الطعم

bitter	لاذع
delicious	لذيذ
fresh	طازج
juicy	كثير العصارة
ripe	ناضج
rotten	متنن
salty	مالح
sour	حامض
spicy	كثير التوابل - حار مثل الفلفل
stale	تفّه المذاق ليقدمه
sticky	لزج
strong	قوي الطعم
sweet	حلو المذاق
tasteless	لا طعم له
tasty	لذيذ المذاق
thirsty	عطشان
greasy	دُهنيّ
grubby	قذر
hot	ساخن
icy	مثلج

صفات المشاعر

afraid	خائف
angry	غاضب
arrogant	متكبر . متعجرف
awful	مُرعب . شنيع . بغيض
bad	سيئ
bewildered	مُدْهول . مَبْهُوت . حَيْران
bored	سئم
combative	مولع بالقتال
creepy	مرّوع
cruel	وحشيّ . قاس
defiant	متحدٍ . جريء . غير هَيّاب
embarrassed	مخرج
evil	شرير
fierce	ضار . مفترس . عنيف
foolish	أحمق . سخيف

اشتقاق الصفات

جميع الصفات السابقة يمكن وصفها بأنها صفات أساسية (غير مشتقة) ، أي أنها مفردات أساسية في اللغة، هذا يعني أنها كلمات بحد ذاتها ، مثل large ، small ، tall وهناك أيضاً صفات مشتقة ، يمكن اشتقاقها من مفردات أخرى بإضافات بعض الملحقات إلى بعض الأسماء أو الأفعال ، أو تصريف الأفعال فنحصل على صفات جديدة.

الصفات المشتقة من المسميات و الأسماء

• صفات -ful- أسم و -less- أسم وهي الصفات الناتجة من إضافة ful و less الى بعض المسميات، فنتنتج لدينا صفات تدل ful على و فرة وجود المسمى و تدل less على إنعدام وجود المسمى.

مثال

Painful مؤلم  
Painless غير مؤلم

لاحظ كلمة Pain تعني الألم

وبذلك تكون كلمة Painful تعني مليء بالألم

وبالمثل فإن كلمة Painless تعني انه خالي من الألم

مثال

إذكر الصفات المعاكسة لكل من الصفات التالية

wonderful	عجيب . مذهش . رائع
successful	ناجح . فائز
thoughtful	عميق التفكير . حسن الانتباه
helpful	مساعد . مفيد . نافع
cheerful	مرح . مبتهج . بهيج
delightful	مُبهِج . سار جداً
helpful	مساعد . مفيد . نافع

إستبدل ملحقة ful في آخر الكلمة بملحقة less

• صفات -ous- أسم وهي الصفات الناتجة من إضافة -ous- الى بعض المسميات، مثل النصر

fragile هش . سهل المكسر  
important هام . ذو شأن

هش . سهل المكسر  
هام . ذو شأن

صفات المظهر

adorable جدير بالعبادة . فاتن  
alert يقظ . نشيط . رشيق  
average متوسط . عادي  
beautiful جميل . وسيم  
blonde أشقر . شقراء  
bloody دموي . ملطخ بالدم . دام . قان  
blushing مُخْمَر  
bright ساطع . مشرق . متألّق فتنّة  
clean نظيف . خالٍ من العوائق . طاهر  
clear مشرق . صافٍ . خالٍ من الشوائب  
cloudy غائم . غيميّ . معرّق أو مبقّع  
colorful غنيّ بالألوان . نابض بالحياة  
crowded مزدحم  
cute ذكيّ . بارع . جَدَاب  
dark مظلم . داكن . قاتم . غامض  
drab أسمر فاتح . مُمِلّ . كئيب  
distinct بين . جليّ . بارز . مم  
dull غبيّ . بليد . كسول . فاتر . كليل  
elegant أنيق . ممتاز . رائع  
fancy ممتاز . مختار . خياليّ  
filthy قذر . فاجش . بذيء  
glamorous فاتن . ساحر  
gleaming ومضة  
graceful جميل . ليق  
grotesque غريب أو خيالي  
homely طبيعيّ . غير متكلف . بسيط . غير  
light فاتح اللون . خفيف . تافه .  
misty ضبابيّ . غامض . غير جليّ  
motionless ساكن . غير متحرك  
muddy موحل . عكر . مشوّش  
plain سهل . من دون إضافات  
quaint طريف  
shiny صافٍ . مشرق . لامع  
smoggy ضباب و دخان  
sparkling شرارة . أثرّ ضئيل  
spotless نظيف . طاهر . لا عيب فيه  
stormy عاصف  
strange أجنبيّ . غريب  
ugly بشع . قبيح . كرهه . شنيع  
unsightly بشع . قبيح  
unusual نادر . استثنائيّ . فريد . فذّ

جدير بالعبادة . فاتن  
يقظ . نشيط . رشيق  
متوسط . عادي  
جميل . وسيم  
أشقر . شقراء  
دمويّ . ملطخ بالدم . دام . قان  
مُخْمَر  
ساطع . مشرق . متألّق فتنّة  
نظيف . خالٍ من العوائق . طاهر  
مشرق . صافٍ . خالٍ من الشوائب  
غائم . غيميّ . معرّق أو مبقّع  
غنيّ بالألوان . نابض بالحياة  
مزدحم  
ذكيّ . بارع . جَدَاب  
مظلم . داكن . قاتم . غامض  
أسمر فاتح . مُمِلّ . كئيب  
بين . جليّ . بارز . مم  
غبيّ . بليد . كسول . فاتر . كليل  
أنيق . ممتاز . رائع  
ممتاز . مختار . خياليّ  
قذر . فاجش . بذيء  
فاتن . ساحر  
ومضة  
جميل . ليق  
غريب أو خيالي  
طبيعيّ . غير متكلف . بسيط . غير  
فاتح اللون . خفيف . تافه .  
ضبابيّ . غامض . غير جليّ  
ساكن . غير متحرك  
موحل . عكر . مشوّش  
سهل . من دون إضافات  
طريف  
صافٍ . مشرق . لامع  
ضباب و دخان  
شرارة . أثرّ ضئيل  
نظيف . طاهر . لا عيب فيه  
عاصف  
أجنبيّ . غريب  
بشع . قبيح . كرهه . شنيع  
بشع . قبيح  
نادر . استثنائيّ . فريد . فذّ

مثال

I am **studying** now.

أنا الآن مستمر في الدراسة

I was **sleeping**.

كنت مستمراً في الدراسة

I heard the man **laughing**.

لاحظ أن ( -ing فعل ) يأتي كما مر معنا سابقاً على شكل مصدر، و يعامل معاملة الأسم ، أي يأتي مبتداءً ، يأتي فاعل و يأتي مفعول و يأتي أيضاً بعد حرف الجر. و تأتي هنا صفة تصف حدوث فعل بالاستمرار.

بعض الأفعال لا يمكن أن يشتق منها صفة الإستمرار، لأنها مستمرة بطبيعتها مثل:

- أفعال الحواس see, hear, smell, taste,
- أفعال الاعتقاد believe, think, suppose
- أفعال المشاعر feel, love, like, hate
- أفعال الرغبات want, wish, desire,

● **صفة المفعول ( التصريف الثالث للفعل )**  
لاحظ أن التصريف الثالث للفعل هو صفة تعطي صيغة مفعول من الفعل مثل قتل مقتول، شرب مشروب.

مثال

He is **killed**. هو مقتول

He was **killed**. هو كان مقتولاً

He has been **killed**. أصبح مقتولاً

He had been **killed**. كان قد أصبح مقتولاً

درجات الصفة

في الجزء الأول من هذا الباب تعرفنا على الصفات و أنواعها، في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على درجات الصفات وهي كلمات توجد قبل الصفة لتبين درجة الصفة و كميتها مثل very, a little,

victory، الخطر danger المجد و الوهج glory ،  
فتنتج لدينا صفات

مثال

victorious	منتصر . ظافر . انتصاري
vivacious	مرح . نشيط . مفعم بالحيوية
zealous	متحمس . حماسي
joyous	مبهج . بهيج . مبهج
hilarious	مرح مع صخب
anxious	قلق
dangerous	خطير
envious	حسود
courageous	شجاع . باسل . جريء
glorious	مجيد . متألّق . رائع

● صفات -ic اسم وهي الصفات الناتجة من إضافة -  
ic الى بعض المسميات، فتنتج لدينا صفات من المسمي

مثال

Islamic	أسلامي
poetic	شاعري
Arabic	عربي
electric	كهربائي
Acidic	حامضي
cyclic	دوري

الصفات المشتقة من الأفعال

● **صفة إمكانية حدوث الفعل ( -able فعل )** وهي الصفات الناتجة من إضافة -able والتي تعني "يمكن أن" الى بعض الأفعال، فتنتج لدينا صفات تدل على إمكانية الفعل من عدمه

مثال

agreeable	يمكن الاتفاق عليه
comfortable	مريح ، يمكن ان نرتاح فيه
breakable	قابل للكسر - يمكن كسره
eatable	يؤكل - يمكن اكله
managable	يمكن إدارته و تحمله
teachable	يمكن تعليمه

● **صفة إستمرار حدوث الفعل ( -ing فعل )** وهي الصفات الناتجة من إضافة -ing الى الفعل والتي تعني أن حدوث الفعل مستمرا.

المضاف اليه: jacket

بين المضاف و المضاف اليه، توجد ثلاث صفات بدرجات مختلفة

الصفة      درجة الصفة

very	big
a little	brown
a bit	heavy leather

مثال

Ali is a so generous a little confused abit harsh some loving brother.

لاحظ المضاف : a  
المضاف اليه: brother

بين المضاف و المضاف اليه، توجد أربع صفات بدرجات مختلفة

الصفة      درجة الصفة

so	generous
a little	confused
abit	harsh
some	loving

ترتيب الصفات بين المضاف و المضاف اليه

تذكر ان الصفات بين المضاف و المضاف اليه تكون مرتبة من الخاص الى العام. مثل ان ترتب الصفات حسب الحجم، الشكل، اللون ثم المادة المصنوع منها

مثال

This is my very little black and white leather jacket.

صيغ المقارنات و المفاضلات

يمكن مفاضلة بعض المسميات من حيث بعض الصفات، مثلا هناك طويل و هناك أطول من، وهناك الأطول وكذلك شجاع و أشجع من ، و الأشجع و كذلك بارد، و أكثر برودة من، والأكثر برودة ويتم المفاضلة حسب القاعدة التالية:-

so, too, some, abit و يمكن ترتيبها من الصغير الى الكبير كالتالي:

a bit, a little, very, too, so

مثال

الصفة	درجة الصفة
big	very
expensive	a little
huge	so
hard	too
hot	some
crazy	a bit

وصف الأسماء و المسميات Adjective

تدخل الصفات على الأسماء و المسميات فتعطيها تفصيلا أكثر، فيمكننا ان نقول هذه جاكيتي ، و يمكنني أعطي تفاصيل عن لونه و حجمه و ملمسه حسب حاجة المستمع و موضوع الحديث. ودائما تذكر الصفات بين المضاف و المضاف اليه مرتبة من الخاص الى العام.



مثال

This is my leather jacket.

لاحظ المضاف : my  
المضاف اليه: jacket

بين المضاف و المضاف اليه، توجد صفة واحدة leather وهذه الصفة لا توجد معها درجة محددة لها.

مثال

This is my very big little brown abit heavy leather jacket.

لاحظ المضاف : my

Expensive	<b>More expensive than</b>	<b>the most expensive</b>
	<b>Less expensive than</b>	<b>the least expensive</b>
Dangerous	<b>More dangerous than</b>	<b>the most dangerous</b>
	<b>Less dangerous than</b>	<b>the least dangerous</b>
Crowded	<b>More crowded than</b>	<b>the most crowded</b>
	<b>Less crowded than</b>	<b>the least crowded</b>
Difficult	<b>More difficult than</b>	<b>the most difficult</b>
	<b>less difficult than</b>	<b>the least difficult</b>
Famous	<b>More famous than</b>	<b>the most famous</b>
	<b>Less famous than</b>	<b>the least famous</b>
Interesting	<b>More interesting than</b>	<b>the most interesting</b>
	<b>Less interesting than</b>	<b>the least interesting</b>
Beautiful	<b>More beautiful than</b>	<b>the most beautiful</b>
	<b>less beautiful than</b>	<b>the least beautiful</b>
Useful	<b>More useful than</b>	<b>the most useful</b>
	<b>less useful than</b>	<b>the least useful</b>

• لاحظ صيغ التفاضل لصفتين 'good ، bad' ، فإنهما حالة خاصة و دائما ما يخطئ المبتدئون في استخدام صيغة التفاضل مع هاتين الصفتين.

مثال

good	<b>Better than</b>	<b>The best</b>
bad	<b>Worse than</b>	<b>The worst</b>

صيغة المساواة في الصفة ( as صفة as )

يمكن أن نقول ان مسميين متساويين في صفة معينة باستخدام ( as صفة as ) و تتكون هذه الصيغة من أربع أجزاء رئيسية

1. as
2. صفة
3. as
4. المساوي للصفة

مثال

You are as lazy as your brother.

• إذا كانت صفة التفاضل تتكون من مقطع واحد مثل الصفات tall ، small ، fast ، فإن صيغة التفاضل تتم بإضافة er الى آخر الصفة مثل taller than أطول من و smaller than أصغر من، و تضاف est لأعطائنا صيغة الأفضل the tallest الأطول و عبارة the smallest الأصغر.

مثال

tall	taller than	the tallest
noisy	noisier than	the noisiest
small	smaller than	The smallest
far	Further than	The furthest
funny	Funnier than	The funniest
high	Higher than	The highest
brave	Braver than	The bravest
Fast	Faster than	The fastest
Busy	Busier than	The busiest
young	Younger than	The youngest
cold	Colder than	The coldest
wide	Wider than	The widest
hot	Hotter than	The hottest
healthy	Healthier than	The healthiest
short	Shorter than	The shortest
big	Bigger than	The biggest

• إذا كانت صفة التفاضل تتكون من أكثر من مقطع واحد مثل الصفات المشتقة من -ful ، صفات -ous ، صفات -able ، صفات -ic ، فإن صيغة التفاضل تتم باستخدام كلمة more ، less مثل more beautiful than أكثر جمالاً من و less beautiful than أقل جمالاً من، و تستخدم the most لأعطائنا صيغة الأفضل مثل the most beautiful الأكثر جمالاً و عبارة the least beautiful الأقل جمالاً.

مثال

الأرض" ، هنا يببالغ الكاتب في بيان أن هذا الشخص شديد الجهل و قد تكون المبالغة صحيحة، لآكنها سميت أقصى مايمكن ان يبين مقدار الصفة. وهناك العديد من صيغ المبالغة، أهمها :

صيغة المبالغة الأولى، "الدرجة أن"

تتكون صيغة المبالغة "الدرجة أن" من أربع أجزاء رئيسية

1. so
2. صفة،
3. that
4. مثال المبالغة، مثال يوضح حجم الصفة

.... مثال المبالغة that صفة so .....

مثال

He is so ignorant that he believes that the earth is flat.

هو شخص جاهل لدرجة أنه يعتقد أن الأرض مسطحة.

She is so beautiful that everybody calls her the beauty queen of the universe.

هي جميلة لدرجة أن كل منا يسميها ملكة جمال الكون.

He is so rich that we think that he has a money printing machine at his house.

هو ثري جداً لدرجة أننا نعتقد ان لديه ماكينة طباعة النقود في منزله.

صيغة المبالغة الثانية "من أن"

تتكون صيغة المبالغة "من أن" من أربع أجزاء رئيسية

أنت كسول مثل أخيك، لاحظ انهما متساويان في الكسل

You are as rich as a king.

أنت ثري جدا و كأنك ملك، أي ان ثرائك يساوي ثراء الملك.

She is as nice as an angle.

هي طيبة و كأنها ملاك.

صيغة كفاية الصفة ( enough to صفة )  
هنا نقول ان لدينا مايكفي من صفة معينة

مثال

You are old enough to drive a car.

هذه الصيغة تعبر انك قد و صلت العمر الكافي لقيادة السيارة.

You are crazy enough to drive this fast.

هذه الصيغة تعبر انك مخبول بما يكفي، لقيادة السيارة بهذه السرعة، لاحظ يستنتج ان من يقود السيارة بهذه السرعة مخبول لامحالة.

I am smart enough not to use drugs.

هذه الصيغة أنه ذكي بما يكفي، ذكاء يمنعه من أن يقع فريسة المخدرات.

It is early enough to catch the plain.

هذه الصيغة مبكرا بما يكفي للحاق بالطائرة.

صيغ المبالغة

وهي عندما يببالغ المتحدث أو الكاتب و يريد أن يبين مدى مقدار الصفة التي يريد أن يتحدث عنها، كان يقول "هو شخص جاهل لدرجة أنه يجادل في كروية

## تدريب

أكمل الجمل التالية؟

1. That new sofa is .....

*That new sofa is very comfortable.*

2. We have watched an ..... film recently.

*We have watched an Indian film recently.*

3. This heavy traffic creates an ..... situations.

*This heavy traffic creates an unpleasant situations.*

4. The young boy collected ..... stamps.

*The young boy collected some old stamps.*

5. The ..... soldiers marched on the street.

*The brave soldiers marched on the street.*

6. This is my ..... book.

*This is my new book.*

7. The safety guards walked along that..... beach.

*The safety guards walked along that sandy beach.*

8. We waited in a ..... queu.

*We waited in a long queu.*

9. Those ..... students will not succsed.

*Those lazy students will not succsed.*

1. too
2. صفة
3. to
4. فعل

.... فعل to صفة too .....

مثال

He is too sick to go to school.

هو مريض جداً، من أن يذهب الى المدرسة، أي اننا لانتوقع ان يذهب الى المدرسة وهو مريض بهذا الشكل.

She is too young to get married.

هي صغيرة في السن من ان تتزوج، أي اننا لانتوقع ان تتزوج و هي في هذا السن الصغيرة.

He is too rich to eat in this resturent.

هو ثري جداً من أن يأكل في هذا المطعم، لاحظ اننا هنا نفهم ان هذا المطعم بسيط، لايمكننا ان نتوقع و جود شخص بهذا الثراء اليه.

نفي الصفات ( عكس الصفات )

● عكس بعض الصفات، يكون كلمات صفات جديدة تسمى الأضداد

مثل large-small, hot-cold, rich-poor

● كما يمكن عكس معظم الصفات باستخدام not

مثل large-not large, hot-not hot

● كما يمكن عكس معظم الصفات باستخدام un  
مثل happy-unhappy, eatable-uneatable

مثال

أختر الكلمة المناسبة بين الأقواس

1. My mother is as (strong, stronger, strongest) as his sister.

لاحظ as .... as صيغة المساواة في الصفة،  
( as صفة as ) لذا يجب ان يكون بينهما  
صفة

*My mother is as strong as his sister*

2. She is (pretty, prettier, prettiest) than her daughter.

لاحظ than نستنتج أنها صيغة مفارنة و مفاضلة،

*She is prettier than her daughter.*

3. She is not as (tall, taller, tallest) as her boyfriend.

لاحظ as .... as صيغة المساواة في الصفة،  
( as صفة as ) لذا يجب ان يكون بينهما  
صفة

*She is not as tall as her boyfriend.*

4. The Arabian Gulf is the (shallow, shallower, shallowest) sea in Asia.

لاحظ من الناحية اللغوية، يمكننا ان نقول أن نقول  
أن،

*The Arabian Gulf is the shallowest sea in Asia.*

و لكن هنا تعني ان الخليج العربي هو البحر  
الوحيد الضحل في قارة آسيا. و هذا غير صحيح  
جغرافياً، لكن الصحيح هو أن ، الخليج العربي هو  
أضحل البحار في قارة آسيا، أي يوجد بحار  
أخري ضحلة.

*The Arabian Gulf is the shallowest sea in  
Asia.*

10. Suszan had ..... eggs for breakfast.

Suszan had boiled eggs for breakfast.

11. Would you please, light those .....  
candles?

*Would you please, light those new candles?*

12. A small bird sang sadly in that .....  
tree.

*A small bird sang sadly in the big tree.*

13. The ..... elephant walked slowly.

*The huge elephant walked slowly.*

14. The train stopped at the .....town.

*The train stopped at the empty town.*

15. She wore .... leather jacket.

*She wore brown leather jacket.*

16. They ate ..... seafood at the papaie  
resturent.

*They ate delicious seafood at the papaie  
resturent.*

17. She likes ..... and ... potatoes.

*She likes hot and crispy potatoes.*

18. We had ..... food for dinner

*We had delicious spicy chinees food for dinner*

لاحظ هنا أضفنا عدد من الصفات و رتبناها من  
الخاص الي العام، لو عكسنا الترتيب لن تكون  
صحيحة

*We had chinees delicious spicy food for dinner.  
خطا في الترتيب*



What is the farthest country you have ever visited?

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية باستخدام صيغ المبالغة

1. You're quite clever; you can do it by yourself.

من الواضح أن صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة كفاية الصفة ( enough to صفة ) ، و تصبح الجملة أنت ذكي بما يكفي لأن تعمل ذلك بنفسك.

You're **too** clever **that** you can do it by yourself.

2. You're quite young now; you can't drive a car.

من الواضح ان صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة المبالغة "من أن" و تصبح الجملة انت صغير جداً من أن و على أن تسوق سيارة.

You're **too** young now to drive a car.

3. I'm very tired; I can sleep sleep for a week.

من الواضح ان صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة "درجة أن" و تصبح الجملة أنا متعب جداً لدرجة أنني أستطيع أن أنام لمدة إسبوع.

I'm **so** tired **that** I can sleep sleep for a week.

4. Are you very tall? Can you reach that picture?

من الواضح ان صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة كفاية الصفة ( enough to صفة ) ، و تصبح الجملة هل أنت طويل بما يكفي لتصل إلى الصورة.

Are you very tall **enough** to reach that picture?

5. That is the (interestingest, more interesting, most interesting) film I have seen.

لاحظ I have seen the , نستنتج أنها صيغة الأفضل، كما ان الصفة تتكون أكثر من مقطع  
That is the most interesting film I have seen.

6. Which school offers (the goodest, the better, the best) math courses?.

لاحظ صيغة الأفضل، كما أن صيغة الأفضل من good هي the best

Which school offers the best math courses?

7. This film is not as (funny, funnier, funniest) as the other one.

لاحظ as .... as صيغة المساواة في الصفة،  
( as صفة as ) لذا يجب ان يكون بينهما صفة

This film is not as funny as the other one.

8. She is easily the (bad, badest, worst) actor in the film.

لاحظ صيغة الأفضل، كما أن صيغة الأفضل من bad هي the worst

She is easily the worst actor in the film.

9. The first half of the game was (little, less, the least) exciting.

لاحظ صيغة الأفضل

The first half of the game was the least exciting.

10. What is (far, farther, the farthest) country you have ever visited?

لاحظ صيغة الأفضل، كما أن صيغة الأفضل

10. This book is very small; you can put it into your pocket.

من الواضح أن صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة كفاية الصفة ( enough to صفة ) ، و تصبح الجملة أن الكتاب صغير بما يكفي لأن يوضع في الجيب.

*This book is small enough to put it into your pocket.*

11. My friend is very strong; he can lift you with one hand.

من الواضح أن صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة المبالغة "درجة أن" و تصبح الجملة أن صديقي قوي جداً لدرجة أنه يستطيع ان يرفعك بيد واحدة.

*My friend is too strong that he can lift you with one hand.*

12. This carpet is quite big; it will cover the whole floor.

من الواضح أن صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة كفاية الصفة ( enough to صفة ) ، و تصبح الجملة ان السجادة كبيرة بما يكفي لأن تغطي كامل الأرضية

*This carpet is big enough to cover the whole floor.*

13. It's quite cold; we will wear gloves.

من الواضح أن صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة كفاية الصفة ( enough to صفة ) ، و تصبح الجملة ان الطقس بارد بما يكفي لأن نلبس قفازات

*It's quite cold enough to wear gloves.*

مثال

5. The apples are ripe; we can pick them.

من الواضح ان صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة كفاية الصفة ( enough to صفة ) ، و تصبح الجملة هل ان هذه التفاحة ناضجة بما يكفي .

*The apples are ripe enough to pick them.*

6. This story is very short; they can read it in one lesson.

من الواضح ان صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة كفاية الصفة ( enough to صفة ) ، و تصبح الجملة هي أن القصة قصيرة بما يكفي لقرأتها في حصة واحدة.

*This story is short enough to read it in one lesson.*

7. The moon is very bright, I can read by it.

من الواضح أن صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة المبالغة "الدرجة أن" و تصبح الجملة إن القمر شديد الضوء لدرجة أنه يمكننا أن نقرأ على ضوءه.

*The moon is too bright that I can read by it.*

8. The wind is very strong; it will blow the roof off.

من الواضح أن صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، هي صيغة كفاية الصفة ( enough to صفة ) ، و تصبح الجملة إن الرياح قوية بما يكفي لإقتلاع السقف.

*The wind is strong enough to blow the roof off.*

9. I am very poor; I can't pay the bill.

من الواضح أن صيغة المبالغة المطلوبة، صيغة المبالغة "من أن" ، انا أفقر من ان أكون قادر على دفع الفاتورة،

*I am too poor to pay the bill.*

I didn't like him **living** with us for six months.

8. Father agreed to my **becoming** an engine-driver.

Father agreed to me **becoming** an engine-driver.

9. I can't imagine **their doing** that.

I can't imagine **them doing** that.

10. Doesn't your teacher dislike **your writing** your homework in pencil?

Doesn't your teacher dislike **you writing** your homework in pencil?

11. The doctor doesn't mind **my eating** a little meat occasionally.

The doctor doesn't mind **me eating** a little meat occasionally.

12. My parents object to **my going** out alone.

My parents object to **me going** out alone.

13. I don't like **their intruding** in my business.

I don't like **them intruding** in my business.

14. The weather shouldn't stop **our having** a good time.

The weather shouldn't stop **our having** a good time.

15. Do you remember **my writing** to you about it?

Do you remember **me writing** to you about it?

مثال

الكلمات التي تحتها خط ، مصادر مضافة الى ضمائر، أعد صيغة الجملة لتصبح الكلمات التي تحتها خط صفات:-

طريقة الحل

في هذه الجملة، الكلمة التي تحتها خط ، مصدر من نوع (ing-فعل) مضافة الى ضمير، إذا أعدنا صياغة الضمير و جعلنا الضمير في محل المفعول تصبح الكلمة التي تحتها خط صفة.

1. Would you mind **my coming** too?

Would you mind **me coming** too?

لا حظ ان الضمير هنا ، مفعول و يصبح (ing-فعل) صفة للضمير ، و ليست مضافة، لاحظ هنا أن كلا الصيغتين صحيحة، و كلا منها له تحليل مختلف. و بقية التدريب تتبع نفس الفكرة.

2. I can't understand **his behaving** like that.

I can't understand **him behaving** like that.

3. I can't have **your coming** home late every night.

I can't have **you coming** home late every night.

4. Did you do it without **his asking** you?

Did you do it without **him asking** you?

5. Mother hates **our eating** things between meals.

Mother hates **us eating** things between meals

6. I remember their **inviting** us to their house.

I remember them **inviting** us to their house.

7. I didn't like his **living** with us for six months.

10. Lat night was very dark; the caravan can't find their way in the desert.

*Lat night was too dark that the caravan can't find their way in the desert.*

مثال

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية باستخدام صيغ المقارنات

1. The weather seems (changeable) this year than last year.

لاحظ الصفة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع، لاحظ و  
جود ملحقة able ، لذلك نستخدم more

*The weather seems more changeable this year than last year.*

2. Is it true, that dogs are the (faithful) of all animals?

لاحظ الصفة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع، لاحظ و  
جود ملحقة full ، لذلك نستخدم more

*Is it true, that dogs are the more faithful of all animals?*

3. Is she (beautiful) than her sister?

لاحظ الصفة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع، لاحظ و  
جود ملحقة full ، لذلك نستخدم more

*Is she more beautiful than her sister?*

4. This apple is (fresh) than that one.

لاحظ الصفة تتكون من مقطع واحد، لذلك نستخدم er

*This apple is  fresher than that one.*

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية باستخدام صيغ المبالغة

I. It is very snowy; we can't drive in the road.

*It is so snowy that we can't drive in the road.*

2. Abstract mathmatics books are very difficult; I can't read it.

*Abstract mathmatics books are so difficult that I can't read it.*

3. They came very late; she couldn't see the movie.

*They came so late that they couldn't see the movie.*

4. This jacket is very big; you can't wear it.

*This jacket is too big to wear.*

5. The mall is very far; we can't walk to it.

*The mall is so far that we can't walk to it.*

6. They are very stupid; they can't understand my jokes.

*They are so stupid that they can't understand my jokes.*

7. This envelop is very big; it won't go into your pocket.

*This envelop is too big to go into your pocket.*

8. This cliff is very steep. We can't climb it.

9. This news is very good; it can't be true.

*This news is too good to be true.*

مثال

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية باستخدام صيغة المقارنات **so.....as** و **as.....as**

1. Your house is less near than I thought.

*Your house is not as near as I thought.*

حصانك ليس قريباً كما كنت أتوقع

*Your house is not so near as I thought.*

حصانك ليس قريباً جداً كما كنت أتوقع

2. This book is less big than yours.

*This book is not as big as yours.*

*This book is not so big as yours.*

3. This exercise is less good than your last one.

*This exercise is not as good as your last one.*

*This exercise is not so good as your last one.*

4. My mother is less old than you think she is.

*My mother is not as old as you think she is.*

*My mother is not so old as you think she is.*

5. These grapes are less expensive than those.

*These grapes are not as expensive as those.*

*These grapes are not so expensive as those.*

5. My brothers are (young) than me, thus, I am (old).

لاحظ الصفة تتكون من مقطع واحد، لذلك نستخدم  
est ،

*My brothers are younger than me, thus, I am the oldest.*

6. Sara is (quite) than Leena but Mariea is the (quite).

لاحظ الصفة تتكون من مقطع واحد، لذلك نستخدم  
est ،

*Sara is quiter than Leena but Mariea is the the quietest.*

7. Trip to Hawai is (joyfull) than a trip to Taif.

لاحظ الصفة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع، لاحظ و جود  
ملحقة full ، لذلك نستخدم  
more

*Trip to Hawai is more joyfull than a trip to Taif.*

8. Your draiving is (reckless) than (me).

لاحظ الصفة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع، لذلك نستخدم  
less

*Your draiving is less reckless than (me).*

9. Nothing is (difficult) than saying goodbye to your love.

لاحظ الصفة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع، لذلك نستخدم  
more

*Nothing is more difficult than saying goodbye to your love.*

10. She is (busy) today than yesterday.

لاحظ الصفة تنتهي بحرف y، لذلك نستخدم  
more

*She is more busytoday than yesterday.*

*Our horse is not as low as yours.*

*Our horse is not so low as yours.*

15. This street is less wide than the next one.

*This street is not as wide as the next one.*

*This street is not so wide as the next one.*

16. My bag is less heavy than my friend's.

*My bag is not as heavy as my friend's.*

*My bag is not so heavy as my friend's.*

17. The sea was less smooth than I had hoped.

*The sea was less smooth as I had hoped.*

*The sea was less smooth than I had hoped.*

18. The river is less deep near the ford.

*The river is not as deep near the ford.*

*The river is not so deep near the ford.*

يمكن حذف المقارن به

19. She is less proud than her sister.

*She is not as proud as her sister.*

*She is not so proud as her sister.*

20. John is much less intelligent than his sister.

*John is much less intelligent than his sister.*

*John is much less intelligent than his sister.*

6. A donkey is less beautiful than a horse.

*A donkey is not as beautiful as a horse.*

*A donkey is not so beautiful as a horse.*

7. We're less bad than you think we are.

*We're not as bad as you think we are.*

*We're not so bad as you think we are.*

8. This hill is less low than I thought it was.

*This hill is not as low as I thought it was.*

*This hill is not so low as I thought it was.*

9. I am less light than you.

*I am not as light as you are.*

*I am not so light as you are.*

10. The grass is less short here than in our garden.

11. Apples are less cheap than oranges.

*Apples are not as cheap as oranges.*

*Apples are not so cheap as oranges.*

12. A train is less quick than a bus.

*A train is not as quick as a bus.*

*A train is not so quick as a bus.*

13. My brother is less hard-working than me.

*My brother is not as hard-working as I am.*

*My brother is not so hard-working as me.*

14. Our horse is less low than yours.

## مثال

- Smokings are bad. خطأ
- Our singings are loud. خطأ

تعامل المصادر الجرند (الفعل + ing) دائما معاملة المفرد، لذلك نستخدم معه الرابط is ولا نجمعه و لانستخدم معه الرابط are

الأضافة الى مصدر الجرند (الفعل + ing)

- لا تضاف المصادر الجرند (الفعل + ing) الي أدوات التنكير a, an

- I hate a smooking. خطأ
- I need a seelping. خطأ
- An apologizing is easy. خطأ

الصحيح ان تحذف أدوات التنكير a, an

- تعريف المصادر الجرند (الفعل + ing) بإضافتها الي the وهي آل التعريف

## مثال

The cooking of my mother is great.

The clicking of the machine is bad.

- تعريف المصادر الجرند (الفعل + ing) بإضافتها الي ضمائر الملكية my, your, his, her, our, theirs لاحظ ان هذه الضمائر لايمكن ان تظهر في جملة مالم تكون مضافة إلى مسمى

## مثال

Show me your swimming.

I need his listening.

Her cooking is great.

- تعريف المصادر الجرند (الفعل + ing) بإضافتها إلى أسماء الإشارة this, للمفرد القريب that, للمفرد البعيد، ، ولاكن لانضيفها الي those للجمع البعيد these للجمع القريب.

## مثال

- I need this loving.

## الباب الأول

## الفصل الرابع

## المصادر

المصادر هي المسميات التي يتم اشتقاقها من الأفعال والأسماء، و الصفات لتكوين مسميات جديدة.

## المصادر المشتقة من الأفعال

تشتق المصادر من الأفعال بطريقتين، طريقة عامة لكل الأفعال و طريقة خاصة لبعض الأفعال.

## الطريقة العامة

يشتق من جميع الأفعال ، نوعين من المصادر و المسميات بوضع ing في نهاية الفعل ويسمى مصدر Gerund (الفعل + ing) (يقابله المصدر الصريح في اللغة العربية) ، أو بوضع to أمام الفعل ويسمى مصدر infinitive (to + الفعل ( يقابله المصدر المؤول في اللغة العربية)، و فيما يلي سيتم دراسة كلا من هذه الأنواع:-

الطريقة العامة الأولى ، وضع ing في نهاية الفعل ويسمى مصدر الجرند (الفعل + ing) (يقابله المصدر الصريح في اللغة العربية)

## مثال

يُدخن smoke تصبح تدخين smoking  
يقرأ read تصبح قراءة reading  
يأكل eat تصبح أكل eating

يستعمل مصدر الجرند (الفعل + ing) مثل الأسم و المسمى تماما فيظهر في المبتداء ، و يظهر في الخبر ، و يظهر فاعل و يظهر مفعول. و يعامل دائما معاملة المفرد، لذلك نستخدم معه الرابط is ولا نجمعه و لانستخدم معه الرابط are

- Smoking is bad. مبتداء
- I need some sleeping. في الخبر

تعامل مصدر (to+ الفعل) دائما معاملة المفرد، لذلك نستخدم معه الرابط is ولا نجمعه و لانستخدم معه الرابط are

الأضافة الى مصدر (to+الفعل)

لا يضاف مصدر (to+الفعل) الى أي من المضافات

• لا تضاف مصدر (to+الفعل) الى أدوات التنكير a, an

- I hate a to smook. خطأ
- I need a to sleep. خطأ

الصحيح ان تحذف أدوات التنكير a, an

• لا تضاف مصدر (to+الفعل) الى the وهي ال التعريف

مثال

The to cook of my mother is great. خطأ

The to click of the machine is bad. خطأ

الصحيح ان تحذف the

• لا تضاف مصدر (to+الفعل) الى ضمائر الملكية my, your, his, her, our, theirs

مثال

Show me your to swim. خطأ

I need his to work. خطأ

Her to cook is great. خطأ

• لا تضاف مصدر (to+الفعل) الى أسماء الإشارة this, للمفرد القريب that, للمفرد البعيد، those, للجمع البعيد these للجمع القريب.

مثال

- I need this to love. خطأ
- Show me those to dance. خطأ

• لا تضاف مصدر (to+الفعل) الى الكلمات التي تحدد المقادير مثل any, some, no

مثال

- I do not want any to joke. خطأ
- Show me any to love. خطأ
- I see no to dance. خطأ

• Show me that dancing.

مثال

- Look at those writing! خطأ
- I hate these dressing. خطأ

تعامل المصادر الجرند (الفعل+ing) دائما معاملة المفرد، لذلك لانضيفها الى those للجمع البعيد these للجمع القريب.

• تعريف المسميات بإضافتها الى الكلمات التي تحدد المقادير مثل any, some, no ولا نستخدم معها few

مثال

- I do not want any joking.
- Show me any loving.
- I see no dancing.
- I need some kissing.

مثال

- I heard few ringing! خطأ

الطريقة العامة الثانية، وضع to أمام الفعل ويسمى مصدر (to+الفعل) (يقابله المصدر المؤاول في اللغة العربية)

مثال

يُدخن smoke تصبح أن تدخين to smoke  
يقرأ read تصبح أن تقرأ to read  
يأكل eat تصبح أن تأكل to eat

يستعمل مصدر (to+الفعل) مثل الأسم و المسمى تماما فيظهر في المبتداء، و يظهر في الخبر، و يظهر فاعل و يظهر مفعول. و يعامل دائما معاملة المفرد، لذلك نستخدم معه الرابط is ولا نجمعه و لانستخدم معه الرابط are

- To smoke is bad. أن تدخن هو أمر سيئ
- I need to sleep. أحتاج ان أنام

مثال

- To smoke are bad. خطأ
- They need to sings. خطأ



fascination, يولع بشيء ماء - ولع ولهفة  
 navigation, يبحر ، إبحار أو ملاحه  
 presentation, يعرض - عرض  
 education, يعلم - تعليم  
 acceleration, يتسارع - تسارع  
 lubrication, يزييت الأجهزة - تزييت الأجهزة  
 duplication, يكرر أو نسخ - تكرار أو نسخ  
 animation, يحرك - الرسوم المتحركة.

المصادر المشتقة من الأسماء

يشتق من الأسماء و المسميات مصادر مثل طفل و طفولة ، رجل و رجولة، صديق و صداقة.

Child	طفل	childhood	طفولة
Member	عضو	membership	عضوية
Friend	صديق	friendship	صداقة
Leader	قائد	leadership	قيادة
Neighbor	جار	neighbourhood	جوار
King	ملك	Kindship	ملك
Mother	أم	motherhood	أمومة

مثال

Fill in the blanks with abstract nouns from the nouns in brackets.

1. He had a very sad \_\_\_\_\_ (child).
2. She forgot to renew her \_\_\_\_\_ (member) to the dancing club.
3. You and I have a strong and true \_\_\_\_\_ (friend).
4. John hopes to take over the \_\_\_\_\_ (leader) of the company.
5. There are lots of beautiful houses in the \_\_\_\_\_ (neighbour).
6. In the \_\_\_\_\_ (king) of Saudi Arabia, the king is beloved by every citizen.
7. Sara is enjoying \_\_\_\_\_ (mother).

الطريقة الخاصة

يشتق من بعض الأفعال ، مصادر و مسميات و ذلك بإضافة ملحقة ment إلى نهاية الفعل مثل development (Verb + ment) أو بإضافة ملحقة tion إلى نهاية الفعل مثل production (Verb + tion) .

مثال

مصادر و مسميات تكونت بإضافة ملحقة ment إلى نهاية الفعل مثل (Verb + ment)

move	يتحرك	movement	حركة
agree	يوفق	agreement	اتفاق
treat	يعالج	treatment	معالجة
invest	يستثمر	investment	استثمار
employ	يوظف	employment	توظيف
argue	يجادل	argument	مجادلة
equip	يجهز	equipment	تجهيزات
pay	يدفع	payment	دفعات مالية
assess	يقيم	assessment	تقييم
commit	يلزم	commitment	التزام
Require	يطلب	requirement	متطلبات
arrange	يرتب	arrangement	ترتيبات
improve	يحسن	improvement	يطور

مثال

مصادر و مسميات تكونت بإضافة ملحقة tion إلى نهاية الفعل مثل production (Verb + tion)

reflection	يعكس - إنعكاس
promotion	يرقي - ترقية
attraction	يجذب - إنجذاب
vacation	يخلي من - إجازة (إخلاء من المسؤوليات)
relation	يوجد علاقة بين - علاقة بين شيئين
direction	يوجه - اتجاه
vibration	يهتز - اهتزاز
collection	يجمع - مجموعة
construction	يبني - بناء
preparation	يعد ، أعدادات
infection	يعدي (بالمريض) - عدوى
concentration	يركز - تركيز
distracton	يحطم - تحطيم
determination	يحدد - تحديد
reduction	يقلل - تقليل

*Does she rememeber paying him?*

6. You must practice (speak) English!

لاحظ الفعل practise ، يجوز فية الحالتين، لذلك يمكننا ان نكتبها بأي من الصورتين التاليتين.

*You must practice to speak English!*  
*You must practice speaking English!*

7. I like (read) stories but I don't like (see) them as movies.

لاحظ الفعل like ، يجوز فية الحالتين، لذلك يمكننا ان نكتبها بأي من الصورتين التاليتين.

*I like to read strories but I don't like seing them as movies.*

*I like reading strories but I don't like seinge them as movies.*

*I like to read strories but I don't like to see them as movies*

8. She enjoys (play) with her dog.

لاحظ الفعل enjoy ، يجوز فية الحالتين، لذلك يمكننا ان نكتبها بأي من الصورتين التاليتين. . لكن المصدر من نوع (الفعل+ing ) هو الأصح

*She enjoys playing with her dog.*

9. Please forgive my (talk) so loud.

لاحظ الفعل forgive يجب أن يلازمه المصدر من نوع (الفعل+ing )

*Please forgive my talking so loud.*

10. They risked (win) the game.

8. I had barely reached \_\_\_\_\_ (man) when I got married.

مثال

ضع الأفعال بين الأقواس في شكلها الصحيح و أعد صياغة الجملة:-

1. She began (learn) Arabic last year.

لاحظ الفعل began ، يجوز فية الحالتين، لذلك يمكننا ان نكتبها بأي من الصورتين التاليتين.

*She began learning Arabic last year.*  
*She began to learn Arabic last year*

2. I do not like (be) late for work.

لاحظ الفعل like ، يجوز فية الحالتين، لذلك يمكننا ان نكتبها بأي من الصورتين التاليتين.

*I do not like to be late for work.*  
*I do not like being late for work.*

3. Do not stop (sing) until 2:00pm.

لاحظ الفعل stop ، يجوز فية الحالتين، لذلك يمكننا ان نكتبها بأي من الصورتين التاليتين. لكن هنا، المصدر من نوع (الفعل+ing ) هو الأصح

*Do not stop singing until 2:00pm.*

4. Did they enjoy (visit) him?

لاحظ الفعل enjoy ، يجوز فية الحالتين، لذلك يمكننا ان نكتبها بأي من الصورتين التاليتين.

*Did they enjoy visiting him?*  
*Did they enjoy to visit him?*

5. Does she rememeber (pay) him?

لاحظ الفعل remember ، يجوز فية الحالتين، لذلك يمكننا ان نكتبها بأي من الصورتين التاليتين.

*Does she rememeber to pay him?*

*I should love to see you playing tennis.*

9. Our teacher promised (help) us (prepare) for the examination.

*Our teacher promised helping us to prepare for the examination.*

10. She hoped (arrange) (come) early (help) (cut) the bread for the party.

*She hoped to arrange coming early to help cutting the bread for the party.*

11. For some time we watched them (try) (catch) fish.

*For some time we watched them trying to catch fish.*

12. We hope (have) an opportunity of (see) him tomorrow.

*We hope to have an opportunity of to see him tomorrow.*

13. This will be an opportunity for you (tell) him about the new play.

*This will be an opportunity for you to tell him about the new play.*

14. Please excuse me (say) so, but it is very difficult (spell) English correctly.

*Please excuse me to say so, but it is very difficult to spell English correctly.*

16. They let us (watch) the men (chop) down the trees.

*They let us to watch the men chopping down the trees.*

17. I hate (get up) early.

*I hate getting up early.*

لاحظ الفعل risk ، يجب أن يلازمه المصدر من نوع (الفعل + ing)

*They risked wining the game*

مثال

ضع الأفعال بين الأقواس في شكلها الصحيح و أعد صياغة الجملة:-

1. I must ask you (stop) (sing).

*I must ask you to stop singing.*

2. Let me (help) you (get) the answer right.

*Let me help you getting the answer right..*

3. They told him (start) (look for) some work at once.

*They told him to start looking for some work at once..*

4. We have decided (allow) him (do) as he pleases.

*We decided allowing him to do as he pleases.*

5. He is known of (try) (solve) more homework.

*He is knowing of trying to solve more homework.*

6. I heard him (say) that he wanted (buy) the house.

*I heard him saying that he wanted to buy the house..*

7. Can you (manage) (finish) (pack) these parcels yourself?

*Can you manage to finish packing ....?*

8. I should love (see) you (play) tennis.

27. May I ask you (begin) (eat) now, without (wait) for the others to come?

*May I ask you to begin eating now, without waiting for the others to come?*

29. I should love (go) to the theatre with you tonight; I hate (go out) alone.

*I should love going to the theatre with you tonight; I hate to go out alone.*

30. If the orange is sour, try (put) some sugar on it.

*If the orange is sour, try putting some sugar on it.*

18. I saw him (help) her (cook) the dinner.

*I saw him helping her cooking the dinner.*

19. I hope you're not going to keep me (wait) all day.

*I hope you're not going to keep me waiting all day.*

20. Would you mind (watch) the teacher (demonstrate) to (learn) (swim) more quickly.

*Would you mind watching the teacher demonstrating to learn swimming more quickly!*

21. I forgot (remind) her that my coat button needs (sew on).

*I forgot to remind her that my coat button needs sewing on.*

22. We must remember (start) (revise) our verbs next lesson.

*We must remember to start revising our verbs next lesson.*

23. I remember (ask) him (lend) me his new book last night.

*I remember asking him lending me his new book last night.*

24. I dislike (study) on a fine afternoon.

*I dislike studying on a fine afternoon.*

26. I forgot (remind) you (ask) your friend (bring back) the book he borrowed.

*I forgot reminding you to ask your friend to bring back the book he borrowed.*

She **hit** me with her idea.  
 They **surprised** us with that.  
 I **told** you not to be late.  
 I am not happy with him. لا يوجد فعل  
 To her, I am a king. لا يوجد فعل  
 He **came** after her.  
**Put** the book in it.  
**Stay** with us.

## صيغ الأفعال

يأخذ الفعل في اللغة الأنكليزية ثلاث صيغ قد تكون مختلفة و قد تكون متشابهة

الصيغة الأولى، و هو ما يعرف بالتصريف الأول للفعل و يرمز له بالرمز ( فعل 1 )، وفي هذا الكتاب نسميها أيضاً صيغة الرابط ، do-did-والأمر.

I **do go** to school everyday. عادة مؤكدة  
 أنا **بالتأكيد** أذهب الى المدرسة كل يوم.

I **did go** to school yesterday.  
 حدث ماضي مؤكد. أنا بالتأكيد قد ذهبت الى المدرسة

I **go** to school everyday . عادة  
 أنا أذهب الى المدرسة كل يوم.

Go to school now! أمر  
 اذهب الى المدرسة الآن.

الصيغة الثانية، و هو ما يعرف بالتصريف الثاني للفعل و يرمز له بالرمز ( فعل 2 )، وفي هذا الكتاب نسميها صيغة الماضي

I **went** to school yesterday.  
 حدث ماضي . أنا ذهبت الى المدرسة

الصيغة الثالثة، و هو ما يعرف بالتصريف الثالث للفعل و يرمز له بالرمز ( فعل 3 )، وفي هذا الكتاب نسميها صيغة صفة المفعول، لأننا نقول مكسور من (كسر)، مأكول من (أكل)، مشروب من شرب.

The door was **broken**. كان الباب مكسوراً  
 لاحظ هنا ان **broken** هي في محل صفة لذلك نسميها صفة على وزن مفعول.

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الخامس

#### الأفعال

#### Verbs الأفعال

الأفعال هي كلمات تدل على حدث معين في الجملة ، إما ان يكون هذا الحدث عادة مايقع، أو وقع أو يقع الآن، أو قد يقع أو أنه سوف يقع في المستقبل.

وحسب قاعدة HcN ليس كل الجمل تحتوي على أفعال، حيث ان بعض الجمل تحتوي فقط على مبتداء و رابط و خبر.

**He** (is) a good man. لا يوجد فعل،

**She** (was) in her house. لا يوجد فعل

بينما الجملة التالية بها فعل و احد Speak. لاحظ انه حسب قاعدة HcN فإن Can تعتبر رابط و ليست فعل.

**They** (can) speak English. يوجد فعل واحد

تذكر أنه حسب قاعدة HcN الكلمات التالية تسمى روابط و ليست أفعال

is, was, are, were, do, did, may, might, can, could, shall, should, will, would, must, ought, have, had

حسب قاعدة HcN فإن هذه الكلمات تقوم بربط المبتداء بالخبر.

مثال

أي من الجمل التالية يحتوي علي فعل

Please **give** him a call.

find	يجد	found	found
bind	يربط - يوثق - يقيد	bound	bound
wind	يجرح و يخرج الدم من شخص	wound	wound
bring	يحضر شيء ما	brought	brought
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
catch	يمسك شيء طائر - يصيد	caught	caught
teach	يدرس - يعلم	taught	taught
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
fight	يحارب - يقاتل	fought	fought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
tell	يخبر	told	told
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
shoot	يطلق السهم أو الرصاص	shot	shot
slide	يتزحلق	slid	slid
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
read	يقرا	read	read
feed	يطعم - يغذى	fed	fed
bleed	ينزف	bled	bled
lead	يقود	led	led
meet	يقابل - يلتقي بشخص	met	met
keep	يضع - يحفظ	kept	kept
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
sweep	يكنس	swept	swept
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
deal	يتعامل مع	dealt	dealt
mean	يعنى - يقصد	meant	meant
leave	يترك يئتي -	left	left
bend	الحديد مثلاً	bent	bent
lend	يعير - يسلف	lent	lent
send	يرسل	sent	sent
spend	يصرف - ينفق	spent	spent
build	يبني	built	built
	يقول	say	said
hold	يمسك بشيء في يده	held	held
have	ياكل - يملك - يتوجب على	had	had
make	يصنع	made	made
stand	يقف	stood	stood
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

إن الباب مكسوراً  
The door is **broken**.  
لاحظ هنا أن **broken** هي في محل صفة لذلك  
نسميها صفة على وزن مفعول.

## الأفعال من حيث عدد صيغها

يمكن تحويل معظم أفعال اللغة الإنكليزية من  
التصريف الأول للثاني و الثالث وذلك بوضع ed  
في نهاية الفعل. وتسمى هذه الأفعال بالأفعال العادية  
regular verbs

walk	walk <u>ed</u>	walk <u>ed</u>
talk	talk <u>ed</u>	talk <u>ed</u>
play	play <u>ed</u>	play <u>ed</u>
excuse	excuse <u>d</u>	excuse <u>d</u>

إلا أن هناك عدد محدود من الأفعال تشذ عن هذه  
القاعدة، و لا يمكن تحويل هذه الأفعال من التصريف  
الأول للثاني و الثالث بوضع ed في نهاية الفعل.  
وتسمى هذه الأفعال بالأفعال الغير عادية (الشاذة)  
irregular verbs ويمكن تقسيم هذه الأفعال إلى  
ثلاث مجموعات من حيث عدد الأشكال المختلفة التي  
يأخذها الفعل في تصريفاته المختلفة.

أفعال تأخذ شكل واحد في تصريفاتها الثلاث

الأفعال التالية لها صورة واحدة في جميع تصريفاتها  
الثلاث ، ننصحك بحفظ هذه الأفعال

cost	يكلف من المال	cost	cost
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
hit	يضرب, يرمي	hit	hit
hurt	يؤلم , يؤذي	hurt	hurt
put	يضع	put	put
let	يترك , يدع	let	let
set	يجلس, يجهز	set	set

أفعال تأخذ شكلين أي يتشابه تصريفها الثاني مع  
الثالث

الأفعال التالية لها صورتين ، أي يتشابه صورة  
تصريفها الثاني مع الثالث.

ننصحك بحفظ هذه الأفعال

speak	يتكلم	spoke	spoken
steal	يسرق	stole	stolen
wear	يلبس	wore	worn
tear	يمزق	tore	torn
swear	يحلف - يلعن	swore	sworn
blow	يهب مثل الرياح	blew	blown
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
know	يعرف	knew	known
throw	يرمي - يقذف الشيء	threw	thrown
fly	يطير	flew	flown
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
eat	ياكل	ate	eaten
give	يعطي	gave	given
come	يأتي	came	come
become	يصبح - يصير	became	become
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
shake	يهز - يرج	shook	shaken
take	يأخذ	took	taken

## الأفعال المضافة الى حروف الجر

بعض الأفعال يتغير معناها حسب حرف الجر الذي تضاف إليه

### مثال

لاحظ الفعل ask ، كيف يتغير معناه مع حروف الجر ( out ، around )

الحالة الأولى مع حرف الجر out

معناها يدعو شخص لموعد غرامي  
*Brian asked Judy out to dinner and a movie.*

الحالة الثانية مع حرف الجر around

معناها سألت العديد من الأشخاص  
*I asked around but nobody has seen my wallet.*

وفيما يلي قائمة ، بالأفعال و تغير معناها حسب حروف الجر المضافة لها:

أفعال تأخذ ثلاث أشكال أي أن لكل تصريف شكل خاص به

الأفعال التالية لها ثلاث أشكال مختلفة ، أي أن التصريف الأول الثاني و الثالث يأخذ كل منهم شكل مختلف عن الآخر

ننضحك بحفظ هذه الأفعال

sing	يغني	sang	sung
sink	يفرق - يرن مثل صوت الجرس	sank	sunk
ring	يشرب	rang	rung
drink	ينكمش - يتقلص	drank	drunk
shrink	يبدأ	shrank	shrunk
begin	يسبح	began	begun
swim	يجري	swam	swum
run	يتأرجح	ran	run
swing	يعصر - ينتزع - يغتصب	swung	swung
wring	يكسب - يفوز بجائزه	wrung	wrung
win	يعلق	won	won
hang	يحفر	hung	hung
dig	يضرب - يرتطم بشئ	dug	dug
strike	يأخذ - يحصل على	struck	struck
get	ينسى	got	gotten
forget	يفرض - يقرض - يعض	forgot	forgotten
bite	يختبئ	bit	bitten
hide	يرى - يشاهد	hid	hidden
see	يتمدد على الأرض مثلاً	saw	seen
lie	يذهب	lay	lain
go	يفعل	went	gone
do	يكون	did	done
be	يرى - يوضح	was	been
show	يسوق	showed	shown
drive	يكتب	drove	driven
write	يركب حصان مثلاً	wrote	written
ride	يكسر	rode	ridden
break	يستيقظ	broke	broken
wake	يختار	woke	woken
choose	يجمد	chose	chosen
freeze		freze	frozen

		her that her son had died.
<b>break something down</b>	يقسم إلى أشياء صغيرة	Our teacher <b>broke</b> the final project <b>down</b> into three separate parts.
<b>break in</b>	يقتحم منزلاً للسرقة	Somebody <b>broke in</b> last night and stole our stereo.
<b>break into something</b>	يدخل منزلاً بالقوة منزلاً أو محلاً	The firemen had to <b>break into</b> the room to rescue the children.
<b>break something in</b>	يلبس شيئاً لمدة بسيطة، حتي لا يبدو وكأنه جديد (بالعامي الحجازي تمرين)	I need to <b>break</b> these shoes <b>in</b> before we run next week.
<b>break in</b>	يقطع برنامج	The TV station <b>broke in</b> to report the news of the president's death.
<b>break up</b>	ينهي العلاقة	My boyfriend and I <b>broke up</b> before I moved to America.
<b>break up</b>	أنفجر ضاحكاً (عامي)	The kids just <b>broke up</b> as soon as the

المثال	المعنى	الفعل
Brian <b>asked</b> Judy <b>out</b> to dinner and a movie.	يدعو شخص لموعد غرامي	<b>ask someone out</b>
I <b>asked</b> <b>around</b> but nobody has seen my wallet.	سألت العديد من الأشخاص	<b>ask around</b>
Your purchases <b>add up to</b> \$205.32.	أصبح مجموعه	<b>add up to something</b>
You'll have to <b>back up</b> your car so that I can get out.	يعيد إلى الخلف	<b>back something up</b>
My wife <b>backed me up</b> over my decision to quit my job.	يدعم شخص	<b>back someone up</b>
The racing car <b>blew up</b> after it crashed into the fence.	ينفجر	<b>blow up</b>
We have to <b>blow</b> 50 balloons <b>up</b> for the party.	تنفخ بالون أو إطار	<b>blow something up</b>
Our car <b>broke down</b> at the side of the highway in the snowstorm.	توقف عن العمل مثل الماكينات	<b>break down</b>
The woman <b>broke down</b> when the police told	تحطمت نفسياً	<b>break down</b>



		the wedding <b>off</b> because he wasn't in love with his fiancé.
<b>call on someone</b>	تبحث عن جواب أو رأى أو مشورة	The professor <b>called on</b> me for question 1.
<b>call on someone</b>	تزور شخص ما	We <b>called on</b> you last night but you weren't home.
<b>call someone up</b>	أتصل هاتفياً بشخص ما	Give me your phone number and I will <b>call you up</b> when we are in town.
<b>calm down</b>	يهداء من غضبه	You are still mad. You need to <b>calm down</b> before you drive the car.
<b>not care for someone/something</b>	لا يحب شيء	I don't <b>care for</b> his behaviour.
<b>catch up</b>	يلحق بنفس مستوي شخص ما في الفهم أو المنزل	You'll have to run faster than that if you want to <b>catch up</b> with Marty.
<b>check in</b>	تسجيل الدخول في الفندق أو المطار	We will get the hotel keys when we <b>check in</b> .
<b>check out</b>	تسجيل الخروج من الفندق	You have to <b>check out</b> of the hotel before 11:00

		clown started talking.
<b>break out</b>	يهرب	The prisoners <b>broke out</b> of jail when the guards weren't looking.
<b>break out in something</b>	أصبح لديه مرض جلدي	I <b>broke out in</b> a rash after our camping trip.
<b>bring someone down</b>	يغم نفسية شخص ما	This sad music is <b>bringing me down</b> .
<b>bring someone up</b>	يربي طفلاً	My grandparents <b>brought me up</b> after my parents died.
<b>bring something up</b>	يبدأ الحديث عن موضوع ما	My mother walks out of the room when my father <b>brings up</b> sports.
<b>bring something up</b>	يتقيأ	He drank so much that he <b>brought</b> his dinner <b>up</b> in the toilet.
<b>call around</b>	أتصلت بالعديد من الجهات	We <b>called around</b> but we weren't able to find the car part we needed.
<b>call someone back</b>	ترد على اتصال شخص بإتصال	I <b>called</b> the company <b>back</b> but the offices were closed for the weekend.
<b>call something off</b>	يلغي	Jason <b>called</b>

<b>come forward</b>	تبرع بتقديم الأدلة	The woman <b>came forward</b> with her husband's finger prints.
<b>come from somewhere</b>	نشأ في الأصل من	The art of origami <b>comes from</b> Asia.
<b>count on someone/something</b>	يعتمد على	I am <b>counting on</b> you to make dinner while I am out.
<b>cross something out</b>	أشخط بالقلم على	Please <b>cross out</b> your old address and write your new one.
<b>cut back on something</b>	يقلل من إستهلاك	My doctor wants me to <b>cut back on</b> sweets and fatty foods.
<b>cut something down</b>	يطرح	We had to <b>cut</b> the old tree in our yard <b>down</b> after the storm.
<b>cut in</b>	يقاطع	Your father <b>cut in</b> while I was dancing with your uncle.
<b>cut in</b>	يسقط بالسيارة علي سيارة أخرى	The bus driver got angry when that car <b>cut in</b> .
<b>cut in</b>	بدء تشغيل جهاز أو	The air conditioner <b>cuts in</b> when the

		AM.
<b>check someone/something out</b>	يتفحص	The company <b>checks out</b> all new employees.
<b>check out someone/something</b>	خذ لك بصمة (عامي)	<b>Check out</b> the crazy hair on that guy!
<b>cheer up</b>	أبتهج	She <b>cheered up</b> when she heard the good news.
<b>cheer someone up</b>	يبهج أو يفرح	I brought you some flowers to <b>cheer</b> you <b>up</b> .
<b>chip in</b>	يساعد	If everyone <b>chips in</b> we can get the kitchen painted by noon.
<b>clean something up</b>	نظف و رتب	Please <b>clean up</b> your bedroom before you go outside.
<b>come across something</b>	صادفت	I <b>came across</b> these old photos when I was tidying the closet.
<b>come apart</b>	أنفصل	The top and bottom <b>come apart</b> if you pull hard enough.
<b>come down with something</b>	أصبح مريضا	My nephew <b>came down with</b> chicken pox this weekend.

	ماعدنه	we have to <b>dress up</b> .
<b>drop back</b>	يعود الى مكانه أو موقعه	Andrea <b>dropped back</b> to third place when she fell off her bike.
<b>drop in/by/over</b>	يحضر من دون موعد	I might <b>drop in/by/over</b> for tea some time this week.
<b>drop someone/something off</b>	يأخذ شيء الى مكان و يتركه هناك	I have to <b>drop</b> my sister <b>off</b> at work before I come over.
<b>drop out</b>	يترك الصف أو المدرسة	I <b>dropped out</b> of Science because it was too difficult.
<b>eat out</b>	يأكل في مطعم	I don't feel like cooking tonight. Let's <b>eat out</b> .
<b>end up</b>	أخير عملنا أو توصلنا الي قرار	We <b>ended up</b> renting a movie instead of going to the theatre.
<b>fall apart</b>	يحطم	My new dress <b>fell apart</b> in the washing machine.
<b>fall down</b>	يطيح أرض	The picture that you hung up last night <b>fell down</b> this morning.

	جهاز	temperature gets to 22°C.
<b>cut something off</b>	يبتر أو يقطع عضو	The doctors <b>cut off</b> his leg because it was severely injured.
<b>cut something off</b>	يوقف تزويد	The phone company <b>cut off</b> our phone because we didn't pay the bill.
<b>cut someone off</b>	يحرم من الميراث	My grandparents <b>cut</b> my father <b>off</b> when he remarried.
<b>cut something out</b>	يقطع شيء من	I <b>cut</b> this ad <b>out</b> of the newspaper.
<b>do someone/something over</b>	يحطم أو يكسر	He's lucky to be alive. His shop was <b>done over</b> by a street gang.
<b>do something over</b>	يعيد	My teacher wants me to <b>do</b> my essay <b>over</b> because she doesn't like my topic.
<b>do away with something</b>	يهمل	It's time to <b>do away with</b> all of these old tax records.
<b>do something up</b>	أربط أو أغلق	<b>Do</b> your coat <b>up</b> before you go outside. It's snowing!
<b>dress up</b>	يلبس أحلى	It's a fancy restaurant so

		listen.
<b>get along/on</b>	يرتاح لشخص ما	I was surprised how well my new girlfriend and my sister <b>got along/on</b> .
<b>get around</b>	يتنقل أو يتحرك	My grandfather can <b>get around</b> fine in his new wheelchair.
<b>get away</b>	يذهب في عطلة أو إجازة	We worked so hard this year that we had to <b>get away</b> for a week.
<b>get away with something</b>	يمكن من الأفلات من العقوبة	Jason always <b>gets away with</b> cheating in his maths tests.
<b>get back</b>	يعود	We <b>got back</b> from our vacation last week.
<b>get something back</b>	يستعيد أحد ممتلكاته	Liz finally <b>got her</b> Science notes <b>back</b> from my roommate.
<b>get back at someone</b>	ينتقم من	My sister <b>got back at</b> me for stealing her shoes. She stole my favourite hat.
<b>get back into something</b>	يصبح مهتم بى	I finally <b>got back into</b> my novel and finished it.

<b>fall out</b>	ينفصل عن	The money must have <b>fallen out</b> of my pocket.
<b>fall out</b>	بداء في التساقط	His hair started to <b>fall out</b> when he was only 35.
<b>figure something out</b>	فهم أو توصل الى الجواب	I need to <b>figure out</b> how to fit the piano and the bookshelf in this room.
<b>fill something in</b>	تعبئة فراغات في نموذج - بريطاني	Please <b>fill in</b> the form with your name, address, and phone number.
<b>fill something out</b>	تعبئة فراغات في نموذج - أمريكي	The form must be <b>filled out</b> in capital letters.
<b>fill something up</b>	تعبئة كاملة	I always <b>fill the</b> water jug <b>up</b> when it is empty.
<b>find out</b>	يكشف	We don't know where he lives. How can we <b>find out</b> ?
<b>find something out</b>	يكشف	We tried to keep the time of the party a secret, but Samantha <b>found it out</b> .
<b>get something across/over</b>	يوصل أو يشرح فكرة	I tried to <b>get</b> my point <b>across/over</b> to the judge but she wouldn't

away		sister <b>gave</b> the surprise party <b>away</b> by accident.
<b>give something away</b>	يعطي بلامقابل	The library was <b>giving away</b> old books on Friday.
<b>give something back</b>	يعيد شيء تم إستلافه	I have to <b>give</b> these skates <b>back</b> to Franz before his hockey game.
<b>give in</b>	يستسلم	My boyfriend didn't want to go to the ballet, but he finally <b>gave in</b> .
<b>give something out</b>	يعطي بلامقابل	They were <b>giving out</b> free perfume samples at the department store.
<b>give something up</b>	يقطع عن عادة	I am <b>giving up</b> smoking as of January 1st.
<b>give up</b>	يقف عن المحاولة	My maths homework was too difficult so I <b>gave up</b> .
<b>go after someone</b>	يتعقب شخص ما	My brother tried to <b>go after</b> the thief in his car.
<b>go after something</b>	يثابر في الوصول الى نتيجة	I <b>went after</b> my dream and now I am

<b>get on something</b>	يركب سيارة	We're going to freeze out here if you don't let us <b>get on</b> the bus.
<b>get over something</b>	يتعافى من مرض أم من خسارة	I just <b>got over</b> the flu and now my sister has it.
<b>get over something</b>	يتخطى مصاعب	The company will have to close if it can't <b>get over</b> the new regulations.
<b>get round to something</b>	أخير وجد بعض الوقت لعمل	I don't know when I am going to <b>get round to</b> writing the thank you cards.
<b>get together</b>	يتجمع في حفلة أو مناسبة	Let's <b>get together</b> for a BBQ this weekend.
<b>get up</b>	يترك السرير	I <b>got up</b> early today to study for my exam.
<b>get up</b>	يقف على قدميه	You should <b>get up</b> and give the elderly man your seat.
<b>give someone away</b>	يفشى سراً	His wife <b>gave him away</b> to the police.
<b>give someone away</b>	take the bride to the altar	My father <b>gave me away</b> at my wedding.
<b>give something</b>	يفشى سراً	My little

		<b>grew apart</b> after she changed schools.
<b>grow back</b>	إعادة نمو	My roses <b>grew back</b> this summer.
<b>grow up</b>	يصبح شخص راشد	When Jack <b>grows up</b> he wants to be a fireman.
<b>grow out of something</b>	ينمو ويصبح أكبر من	Elizabeth needs a new pair of shoes because she has <b>grown out of</b> her old ones.
<b>grow into something</b>	ينمو ويصبح مساويا	This bike is too big for him now, but he should <b>grow into</b> it by next year.
<b>hand something down</b>	يعطي شيئ مستعمل لشخص آخر	I <b>handed</b> my old comic books <b>down</b> to my little cousin.
<b>hand something in</b>	يسلم	I have to <b>hand in</b> my essay by Friday.
<b>hand something out</b>	يوزع	We will <b>hand out</b> the invitations at the door.
<b>hand something over</b>	يعطي من دون رضي	The police asked the man to <b>hand over</b> his wallet and his weapons.
<b>hang in</b>	إبقي	<b>Hang in</b>

	أو هدف	a published writer.
<b>go against someone</b>	يعارض	We are <b>going against</b> the best soccer team in the city tonight.
<b>go ahead</b>	يبدأ	Please <b>go ahead</b> and eat before the food gets cold.
<b>go back</b>	يعود إلى	I have to <b>go back</b> home and get my lunch.
<b>go out</b>	يغادر المنزل ل لمناسبة اجتماعية	We're <b>going out</b> for dinner tonight.
<b>go out with someone</b>	يخرج مع شخص في موعد غرامي	Jesse has been <b>going out with</b> Luke since they met last winter.
<b>go over something</b>	يراجع	Please <b>go over</b> your answers before you submit your test.
<b>go over</b>	زيارة شخص يسكن في مكان قريب	I haven't seen Tina for a long time. I think I'll <b>go over</b> for an hour or two.
<b>go without something</b>	يمشي حاله من دون	When I was young, we <b>went without</b> winter boots.
<b>grow apart</b>	إختفي مع الوقت	My best friend and I

		the liquid comes to a boil.
<b>keep something from someone</b>	يكتُم سراً عن شخص	We <b>kept</b> our relationship <b>from</b> our parents for two years.
<b>keep someone/something out</b>	يمنع من الدخول	Try to <b>keep</b> the wet dog <b>out</b> of the living room.
<b>keep something up</b>	إستمر بنفس الحماس و التقدم	If you <b>keep</b> those results <b>up</b> you will get into a great college.
<b>let someone down</b>	يخذل	I need you to be on time. Don't <b>let</b> me <b>down</b> this time.
<b>let someone in</b>	يسمح بالدخول	Can you <b>let</b> the cat <b>in</b> before you go to school?
<b>look after someone/something</b>	يعتني بشخص أو بشيء	I have to <b>look after</b> my sick grandmother.
<b>look down on someone</b>	يحتقر	Ever since we stole that chocolate bar your dad has <b>looked down on</b> me.
<b>look for someone/something</b>	يبحث عن	I'm <b>looking for</b> a red dress for the wedding.
<b>look forward to something</b>	يتطلع بشوق إلى	I'm <b>looking forward to</b> the Christmas break.

	متفائلاً	there. I'm sure you'll find a job very soon.
<b>hang on</b>	إنتظر لحظة	<b>Hang on</b> while I grab my coat and shoes!
<b>hang out</b>	إستمتع و إسترخي لبعض الوقت	Instead of going to the party we are just going to <b>hang out</b> at my place.
<b>hang up</b>	أوقف مكالمة تلفونية	He didn't say goodbye before he <b>hung up</b> .
<b>hold someone/something back</b>	يمنع	I had to <b>hold</b> my dog <b>back</b> because there was a cat in the park.
<b>hold something back</b>	يخبيء مشاعره	Jamie <b>held back</b> his tears at his grandfather's funeral.
<b>hold on</b>	إنتظر لحظة	Please <b>hold on</b> while I transfer you to the Sales Department.
<b>hold onto someone/something</b>	إمسك بقوة	<b>Hold onto</b> your hat because it's very windy outside.
<b>hold someone/something up</b>	يسرق	A man in a black mask <b>held</b> the bank <b>up</b> this morning.
<b>keep on doing something</b>	يستمر في فعل	<b>Keep on</b> stirring until

<b>mix something up</b>	يلخبط معلومات	I <b>mixed up</b> the twins' names again!
<b>pass away</b>	يموت	His uncle <b>passed away</b> last night after a long illness.
<b>pass out</b>	يغمى عليه	It was so hot in the church that an elderly lady <b>passed out</b> .
<b>pass something out</b>	يوزع	The professor <b>passed</b> the textbooks <b>out</b> before class.
<b>pass something up</b>	يرفض	I <b>passed up</b> the job because I am afraid of change.
<b>pay someone back</b>	يعيد الدين	Thanks for buying my ticket. I'll <b>pay you back</b> on Friday.
<b>pay for something</b>	يعاقب نتيجة ما فعل	That bully will <b>pay for</b> being mean to my little brother.
<b>pick something out</b>	يختار	I <b>picked out</b> three sweaters for you to try on.
<b>point someone/something out</b>	يؤشر عليه بإصبعه	I'll <b>point</b> my boyfriend <b>out</b> when he runs by.
<b>put something down</b>	يضع على الأرض	You can <b>put</b> the groceries

<b>look into something</b>	يتحرى عن	We are going to <b>look into</b> the price of snowboards today.
<b>look out</b>	إحترس	Look out! That car's going to hit you!
<b>look out for someone/something</b>	إحترس	Don't forget to <b>look out for</b> snakes on the hiking trail.
<b>look something over</b>	إفحص	Can you <b>look over</b> my essay for spelling mistakes?
<b>look something up</b>	إبحث عن المعلومات في كتاب أو الإنترنت	We can <b>look</b> her phone number <b>up</b> on the Internet.
<b>look up to someone</b>	يحترم ، يقدر	My little sister has always <b>looked up to</b> me.
<b>make something up</b>	يخلق قصة	Josie <b>made up</b> a story about about why we were late.
<b>make up</b>	سامح بعضنا نعضاً	We were angry last night, but we <b>made up</b> at breakfast.
<b>make someone up</b>	يزين بأدوات التجميل	My sisters <b>made me up</b> for my graduation party.



		in the driveway.
<b>run over/through something</b>	يراجع	Let's <b>run over/through</b> these lines one more time before the show.
<b>run away</b>	يهرب أو يغادر فجاءة	The child <b>ran away</b> from home and has been missing for three days.
<b>run out</b>	لم يعد يملك	We <b>ran out</b> of shampoo so I had to wash my hair with soap.
<b>send something back</b>	يعيد أو يرجع	My letter got <b>sent back</b> to me because I used the wrong stamp.
<b>set something up</b>	يرتب	Our boss <b>set</b> a meeting <b>up</b> with the president of the company.
<b>set someone up</b>	يورط	The police <b>set up</b> the car thief by using a hidden camera.
<b>shop around</b>	يقارن الأسعار	I want to <b>shop around</b> a little before I decide on these boots.
<b>show off</b>	يستعرض	He always <b>shows off</b> on his skateboard.
<b>sleep over</b>	ينام في	You should

		<b>down</b> on the kitchen counter.
<b>put someone down</b>	يهين، يهزء من	The students <b>put</b> the substitute teacher <b>down</b> because his pants were too short.
<b>put something off</b>	يؤخر	We are <b>putting off</b> our trip until January because of the hurricane.
<b>put something out</b>	يطفيء الحريق	The neighbours <b>put</b> the fire <b>out</b> before the firemen arrived.
<b>put something together</b>	يجمع أو يركب	I have to <b>put</b> the crib <b>together</b> before the baby arrives.
<b>put up with someone/something</b>	يتحمل	I don't think I can <b>put up with</b> three small children in the car.
<b>put something on</b>	يلبس ملابس	Don't forget to <b>put on</b> your new earrings for the party.
<b>run into someone/something</b>	يقابل بالصدفة	I <b>ran into</b> an old school-friend at the mall.
<b>run over someone/something</b>	يدهس شخص بالسيارة	I accidentally <b>ran over</b> your bicycle.

		the lake!
<b>take something out</b>	يزيل	Can you <b>take</b> the garbage <b>out</b> to the street for me?
<b>take someone out</b>	يدفع كاتل التكاليف لمرافقة شخص	My grandparents <b>took us out</b> for dinner and a movie.
<b>tear something up</b>	يمزق	I <b>tore up</b> my ex-boyfriend's letters and gave them back to him.
<b>think back</b>	يتذكر	When I <b>think back</b> on my youth, I wish I had studied harder.
<b>think something over</b>	يعتبر	I'll have to <b>think</b> this job offer <b>over</b> before I make my final decision.
<b>throw something away</b>	يلقي في سلة المهملات	We <b>threw</b> our old furniture <b>away</b> when we won the lottery.
<b>turn something down</b>	يخفض صوت الجهاز	Please <b>turn</b> the TV <b>down</b> while the guests are here.
<b>turn something down</b>	يرفض	I <b>turned</b> the job <b>down</b> because I don't want to move.

	منزل زميل أو صديق	<b>sleep over</b> tonight if the weather is too bad to drive home.
<b>sort something out</b>	يحل مشكلة	We need to <b>sort</b> the bills <b>out</b> before the first of the month.
<b>stick to something</b>	يستمر في ملازمة	You will lose weight if you <b>stick to</b> the diet.
<b>switch something off</b>	يطفىء جهاز	The light's too bright. Could you <b>switch it off</b> .
<b>switch something on</b>	يشغل جهاز	We heard the news as soon as we <b>switched on</b> the car radio.
<b>take after someone</b>	يرث بعض صفات العائلة	I <b>take after</b> my mother. We are both impatient.
<b>take something apart</b>	يفكك	He <b>took</b> the car brakes <b>apart</b> and found the problem.
<b>take something back</b>	يعيد شيء	I have to <b>take</b> our new TV <b>back</b> because it doesn't work.
<b>take off</b>	يبدأ الطيران	My plane <b>takes off</b> in five minutes.
<b>take something off</b>	يزيل	<b>Take off</b> your socks and shoes and come in

g up		feet <b>up</b> in front of the fireplace.
warm up	يحمي الجسم للرياضة	I always <b>warm up</b> by doing sit-ups before I go for a run.
wear off	يبهت و يتلاشى لونه	Most of my make-up <b>wore off</b> before I got to the party.
work out	يتمرن	I <b>work out</b> at the gym three times a week.
work out	ينجح	Our plan <b>worked out</b> fine.
work something out	يحسب	We have to <b>work out</b> the total cost before we buy the house.

مثال

أكمل العبارات التالية؟

ملاحظة، الحل في الجدول أعلاه...

1. Brian asked Judy ..... to dinner and a movie.
2. I asked ..... but nobody has seen my wallet.
3. Your purchases add ..... to \$205.32.
4. You'll have to back ..... your car so that I can get out.

turn something off	يطفيء الجهاز	Your mother wants you to <b>turn</b> the TV <b>off</b> and come for dinner.
turn something on	يشغل الجهاز	It's too dark in here. Let's <b>turn</b> some lights <b>on</b> .
turn something up	يرفع صوت الجهاز	Can you <b>turn</b> the music <b>up</b> ? This is my favourite song.
turn up	يظهر فجأة	Our cat <b>turned up</b> after we put posters up all over the neighbourhood.
try something on	يجرب الملابس	I'm going to <b>try</b> these jeans <b>on</b> , but I don't think they will fit.
try something out	يفحص	I am going to <b>try</b> this new brand of detergent <b>out</b> .
use something up	يستهلك	The kids <b>used</b> all of the toothpaste <b>up</b> so we need to buy some more.
wake up	يستيقظ	We have to <b>wake up</b> early for work on Monday.
warm someone/somethin	يزيد الحرارة	You can <b>warm</b> your

21. My mother walks out of the room when my father brings ..... sports.
22. He drank so much that he brought his dinner ..... in the toilet.
23. We called ..... but we weren't able to find the car part we needed.
24. I called the company ..... but the offices were closed for the weekend.
25. Jason called the wedding ..... because he wasn't in love with his fiancé.
26. The professor called on me ..... question 1.
27. We called ..... you last night but you weren't home.
28. Give me your phone number and I will call you ..... when we are in town.
29. You are still mad. You need to calm ..... before you drive the car.
30. I don't care ..... his behaviour.
31. You'll have to run faster than that if you want to catch ..... with Marty.
32. We will get the hotel keys when we check .....
33. You have to check ..... of the hotel before 11:00 AM.
34. The company checks ..... all new employees.
5. My wife backed me ..... over my decision to quit my job.
6. The racing car blew ..... after it crashed into the fence.
7. We have to blow 50 balloons ....for the party.
8. Our car broke ..... at the side of the highway in the snowstorm.
9. The woman broke ..... when the police told her that her son had died.
10. Our teacher broke the final project ..... into three separate parts.
11. Somebody broke ..... last night and stole our stereo.
12. The firemen had to break ..... the room to rescue the children.
13. I need to break these shoes ..... before we run next week.
14. The TV station broke ..... to report the news of the president's death.
15. My boyfriend and I broke ..... before I moved to America.
16. The kids just broke ..... as soon as the clown started talking.
17. The prisoners broke ..... of jail when the guards weren't looking.
18. I broke ..... in a rash after our camping trip.
19. This sad music is bringing me .....
20. My grandparents brought me .....after my parents died.

50. The bus driver got angry when that car cut .....
51. The air conditioner cuts ..... when the temperature gets to 22°C.
52. The doctors cut ..... his leg because it was severely injured.
53. The phone company cut ..... our phone because we didn't pay the bill.
54. My grandparents cut my father .....when he remarried.
55. I cut this ad ..... of the newspaper.
56. He's lucky to be alive. His shop was done ..... by a street gang.
57. My teacher wants me to do my essay ..... because she doesn't like my topic.
58. It's time to do ..... with all of these old tax records.
59. Do your coat ..... before you go outside. It's snowing!
60. It's a fancy restaurant so we have to dress .....
61. Andrea dropped ..... to third place when she fell off her bike.
62. I might drop ..... for tea some time this week.
63. I have to drop my sister ..... at work before I come over.
64. I dropped ..... of Science because it was too difficult.
35. Check ..... the crazy hair on that guy!
36. She cheered ..... when she heard the good news.
37. I brought you some flowers to cheer you .....
38. If everyone chips ..... we can get the kitchen painted by noon.
39. Please clean ..... your bedroom before you go outside.
40. I came ..... these old photos when I was tidying the closet.
41. The top and bottom come ..... if you pull hard enough.
42. My nephew came ..... with chicken pox this weekend.
43. The woman came ..... with her husband's finger prints.
44. The art of origami comes .....Asia.
45. I am counting ..... you to make dinner while I am out.
46. Please cross ..... your old address and write your new one.
47. My doctor wants me to cut ..... on sweets and fatty foods.
48. We had to cut the old tree in our yard ..... after the storm.
49. Your father cut ..... while I was dancing with your uncle.

79. My grandfather can get ..... fine in his new wheelchair.
80. We worked so hard this year that we had to get ..... for a week.
81. Jason always gets ..... with cheating in his maths tests.
82. We got ..... from our vacation last week.
83. Liz finally got her Science notes ..... from my room-mate.
84. My sister got ..... at me for stealing her shoes. She stole my favourite hat.
85. I finally got ..... into my novel and finished it.
86. We're going to freeze out here if you don't let us get ..... the bus.
87. I just got ..... the flu and now my sister has it.
88. The company will have to close if it can't get ..... the new regulations.
89. I don't know when I am going to get ..... to writing the thank you cards.
90. Let's get ..... for a BBQ this weekend.
91. I got ..... early today to study for my exam.
92. You should get ..... and give the elderly man your seat.
65. I don't feel like cooking tonight. Let's eat .....
66. We ended ..... renting a movie instead of going to the theatre.
67. My new dress fell ..... in the washing machine.
68. The picture that you hung ..... last night fell down this morning.
69. The money must have fallen ..... of my pocket.
70. His hair started to fall ..... when he was only 35.
71. I need to figure ..... how to fit the piano and the bookshelf in this room.
72. Please fill ..... the form with your name, address, and phone number.
73. The form must be filled ..... in capital letters.
74. I always fill the water jug ..... when it is empty.
75. We don't know where he lives. How can we find .....
76. We tried to keep the time of the party a secret, but Samantha found it .....
77. I tried to get my point ..... to the judge but she wouldn't listen.
78. I was surprised how well my new girlfriend and my sister got .....

108. Jesse has been going .... with Luke since they met last winter.
109. Please go ..... your answers before you submit your test.
110. I haven't seen Tina for a long time. I think I'll go ..... for an hour or two.
111. When I was young, we went ..... winter boots.
112. My best friend and I grew ..... after she changed schools.
113. My roses grew ..... this summer.
114. When Jack grows ..... he wants to be a fireman.
115. Elizabeth needs a new pair of shoes because she has grown ..... of her old ones.
116. This bike is too big for him now, but he should grow ..... it by next year.
117. I handed my old comic books ..... to my little cousin.
118. I have to hand ..... my essay by Friday.
119. We will hand ..... the invitations at the door.
120. The police asked the man to hand ..... his wallet and his weapons.
121. Hang..... there. I'm sure you'll find a job very soon.

93. His wife gave him ..... to the police.
94. My father gave me ..... at my wedding.
95. My little sister gave the surprise party ..... by accident.
96. The library was giving ..... old books on Friday.
97. I have to give these skates ..... to Franz before his hockey game.
98. My boyfriend didn't want to go to the ballet, but he finally gave .....
99. They were giving ..... free perfume samples at the department store.
100. I am giving ..... smoking as of January 1st.
101. My maths homework was too difficult so I gave .....
102. My brother tried to go ..... the thief in his car.
103. I went .... my dream and now I am a published writer.
104. We are going ..... the best soccer team in the city tonight.
105. Please go ..... and eat before the food gets cold.
106. I have to go ..... home and get my lunch.
107. We're going ..... for dinner tonight.

137. Ever since we stole that chocolate bar your dad has looked ..... on me.
138. I'm looking ..... a red dress for the wedding.
139. I'm looking ..... to the Christmas break.
140. We are going to look ..... the price of snowboards today.
141. Look .....! That car's going to hit you!
142. Don't forget to look ..... for snakes on the hiking trail.
143. Can you look ..... my essay for spelling mistakes?
144. We can look her phone number ..... on the Internet.
145. My little sister has always looked ..... to me.
146. Josie made ..... a story about about why we were late.
147. We were angry last night, but we made ..... at breakfast.
148. My sisters made me .... for my graduation party.
149. I mixed ..... the twins' names again!
150. His uncle passed ..... last night after a long illness.
151. It was so hot in the church that an elderly lady passed .....
122. Hang ..... while I grab my coat and shoes!
123. Instead of going ..... the party we are just going to hang out at my place.
124. He didn't say goodbye before he hung .....
125. I had to hold my dog ..... because there was a cat in the park.
126. Jamie held ..... his tears at his grandfather's funeral.
127. Please hold .... while I transfer you to the Sales Department.
128. Hold ..... your hat because it's very windy outside.
129. A man in a black mask held the bank ..... this morning.
130. Keep ..... stirring until the liquid comes to a boil.
131. We kept our relationship ..... our parents for two years.
132. Try to keep the wet dog ..... of the living room.
133. If you keep those results ..... you will get into a great college.
134. I need you to be on time. Don't let me ..... this time.
135. Can you let the cat ..... before you go to school?
136. I have to look ..... my sick grandmother.



167. Let's run ..... these lines one more time before the show.
168. The child ran ..... from home and has been missing .... three days.
169. We ran ..... of shampoo so I had to wash my hair with soap.
170. My letter got sent ..... to me because I used the wrong stamp.
171. Our boss set a meeting ..... with the president of the company.
172. The police set ..... the car thief by using a hidden camera.
173. I want to shop ..... a little before I decide on these boots.
174. He always shows ..... on his skateboard
175. You should sleep ..... tonight if the weather is too bad to drive home.
176. We need to sort the bills ..... before the first of the month.
177. You will lose weight if you stick ..... the diet.
178. The light's too bright. Could you switch it .....
179. We heard the news as soon as we switched ..... the car radio.
180. I take ..... my mother. We are both impatient.
181. He took the car brakes ..... and found the problem.
152. The professor passed the textbooks ..... before class.
153. I passed ... the job because I am afraid ....change.
154. Thanks for buying my ticket. I'll pay you ..... on Friday.
155. That bully will pay .... being mean to my little brother.
156. I picked .... three sweaters ..... you to try on.
157. I'll point my boyfriend ..... when he runs by.
158. You can put the groceries ..... on the kitchen counter.
159. The students put the substitute teacher ..... because his pants were too short.
160. We are putting ..... our trip until January because ..... the hurricane.
161. The neighbours put the fire .... before the firemen arrived.
162. I have to put the crib ..... before the baby arrives.
163. I don't think I can put ..... with three small children in the car.
164. Don't forget to put ..... your new earrings for the party.
165. I ran ..... an old school-friend ..... the mall.
166. I accidentally ran .....r your bicycle ..... the driveway.

196. Our cat turned ..... after we put posters up all over the neighbourhood.
197. I'm going to try these jeans ....., but I don't think they will fit.
198. I am going to try this new brand of detergent .....
199. The kids used all of the toothpaste ..... so we need to buy some more.
200. We have to wake ..... early for work on Monday.
201. You can warm your feet ..... in front of the fireplace.
202. I always warm ..... by doing sit-ups before I go for a run.
203. Most of my make-up wore ..... before I got to the party.
204. I work ..... at the gym three times a week.
205. Our plan worked ..... fine.
206. We have to work .... the total cost before we buy the house.

مثال

أكمل العبارات التالية؟

1. She didn't manage to bring the subject ..... at the meeting because there wasn't enough time (up)
2. The scandal brought the government .....(down)

182. I have to take our new TV back because it doesn't work.
183. My plane takes off in five minutes.
184. Take .....f your socks and shoes and come in the lake!
185. Can you take the garbage ..... to the street for me?
186. My grandparents took us ..... for dinner and a movie.
187. I tore ..... my ex-boyfriend's letters and gave them back to him.
188. When I think ..... on my youth, I wish I had studied harder.
189. I'll have to think this job offer ..... before I make my final decision.
190. We threw our old furniture .....when we won the lottery.
191. Please turn the TV ..... while the guests are here.
192. I turned the job ..... because I don't want to move.
193. Your mother wants you to turn the TV ..... and come for dinner.
194. It's too dark in here. Let's turn some lights .....
195. Can you turn the music .....? This is my favourite song.

15. The car gives ..... too much smoke, so the police told him not to drive it anymore.(off)
16. She felt it was irresponsible to accept the present so she gave it .....(back).
17. The worst job I ever had was giving ..... leaflets to passengers in the tube.(out)
18. He pretended that he was not frightened, but his staring eyes gave the truth .....(away)
19. The date of the election will be given ..... on the news tonight.(out)
20. The doctors thought that he was going to die. They had given him ..... for dead.(up)
21. Friday nights are given ..... to having a drink; I always go.(over)
22. A few friends came ..... last night, which was a pleasant surprise.(round)
23. Although I shampooed the carpet, the wine stain just wouldn't come .....(out).
24. She came ..... a lot of money when her aunt died.(into)
25. Come ..... - hurry up! You should have finished ages ago!(on)
27. She wasn't given enough anaesthetic and came ..... during the operation, which was very frightening.(to)
3. The computer has brought ..... more changes in my life than any other invention. (about)
4. The band are bringing ..... a new album in the new year.(out)
5. I was brought ..... in the North.(up)
6. She brought ..... the deal even though nobody thought she was capable of doing it.(off)
7. She brought her children ..... on her own after the divorce.(up)
8. Someone who is always unhappy might bring you .....(down)
9. If you're coming tonight, could you bring ..... some CDs.(over)
10. The weather brought my cold .....(on)
11. The footballer was brought ..... from behind. (down)
12. She gave ..... smoking when her doctor told her that she would fall ill if she didn't.(up)
12. The robber went to the police station and gave himself .....(in)
13. He gave his homework ..... to the teacher on the very last day.(in)
14. The teacher gave the homework ..... to the students after she'd corrected it.(back)

المبتداء:

The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya

الخبر هو كل الكلمات التي تتبع الرابط، و هي الكلمات التي تحدد و تعطينا معلومات مفيدة عن المبتداء. لكن لايمكن أن يعطينا الخبر جملة مفيدة لوحده مهما تعددت كلماته من دون المبتداء

حتى يسهل الخبر فإننا نرسم خطين مستقيمين أو متعرجين تحت كلمات الخبر.

مثال

The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya is an excellent example of the impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

الخبر

an excellent example of the impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

الروابط كلمات محددة يجب أن يكون أحدها داخل الجملة. ويقع الرابط في الجملة دائماً بين المبتداء و الخبر. وفيم يلي قائمة بالروابط التي تظهر في الجملة الإنجليزية. و في الباب الرابع سنتناول كل من هذه الروابط بشئ من التفصيل.

- am, is, are, was, were
- do, did
- have, has, had,
- have been, has been
- can, could, will, should, would
- may, might, ought, must

يلعب فيها الرابط دوراً أساسياً في فهم تركيب في صياغة الجملة وتركيبها. في هذا الباب سنركز على الروابط و أنواعها و إستخدامها. ماهي الروابط؟

حتى يسهل تميز الرابط في الجملة فإننا نرسم دائرة حول الرابط.

## الباب الأول

### الفصل السادس

#### الروابط

تنص قاعدة المبتداء -الرابط - الخبر HcN على وجود علاقات بنية تركيبية موحدة للجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية، تتكون من ثلاث أجزاء.

- Heading - المبتداء
- Connection - الرابط
- News - الخبر

هذه التركيبية ، الموحدة سمينها قاعدة

المبتداء-الرابط-الخبر

أو قاعدة

Heading-Connection-News  
H-c-N

المبتداء هو كل الكلمات التي تسبق الرابط، مع ملاحظة أن المبتداء لايمكن أن يعطينا جملة مفيدة لوحده مهما تعددت كلماته. ويتكون المبتداء من عدد من التركيبات المنطقية البسيطة مثل تركيبات الأسماء و المسميات و الضمائر، والصفات و التفاصيل. مع ملاحظة أن الأفعال لايمكن أن تظهر في المبتداء. ولكنها تظهر في الخبر فقط.

حتى يسهل تميز المبتداء في الجملة فإننا نرسم خط مستقيم تحت كلمات المبتداء.

مثال

The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya is an excellent example of the impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

أنواع الروابط

تنقسم الروابط الى المجموعات التالية من حيث نوع الخبر الذي يأتي بعدها، بينما قد تختلف عناصر المجموعة الواحدة قليلاً حسب نوع المبتداء الذي يسبقها:-

1. المجموعة الأولى: {am, is, are, was, were}  
وتسمى مجموعة الصفات ، لأن الخبر بعدها دائماً صفة الشيء نفسه، أو صفاته . يجب عليك مراجعة الفصل الثالث الخاص بالصفات و أنواعها حتي تستطيع أن تفهم هذه المجموعة.

مثال

هذه السيارة كبيرة This car **is** big.  
هذا كرسي This **is** a chair.  
أنهم طلاب They **are** students.  
هو يدرس الآن He **is** studying now.  
كانو يلعبون Ther **were** playing.  
الكرسي مكسور The chair **is** broken.  
كانو مكسورين They **were** broken.

لاحظ انه في كل الحالات السابقة، أن المبتداء يكون دائماً صفة للمبتداء. وفي الفصل السابع نقدم لك تفاصيل هذه المجموعة.

2. المجموعة الثانية: { do, does, did }

و تسمى مجموعة العادات و الحقائق ، لأن الخبر بعدها دائماً يدل علي حقيقة عن المتداء غير قابلة للنقاش أو حدث وقع في الماضي أو عادة يتعود المبتداء عليها كل فترة من الزمن

مثال

They (**do**) pray every day.  
أنهم يصلون كل يوم

They (**did**) go to school yesterday.  
أنهم ذهبو للمدرسة بالأمس

لاحظ أننا وضعنا الرابط do، did بين قوسين ، هنا لأن الرابط هنا يحذف تادياً، في جملة الأثبات بينما يكون موجوداً في صيغة النفي و الإستفهام مثله مثل بقية الروابط الأخرى.

ونسمى عملية تحديد المبتداء، الرابط و الخبر، بعملية التحليل الأولى للجملة. و ذلك بوضع دائرة حول الرابط و من تم خط مستقيم تحت المبتداء، و خط متعرج أو مستقيمين تحت الخبر. و هي عملية تشبه الى حد ما عملية الإعراب في قواعد اللغة العربية.

مثال

1. Mohammed **is** fat.

مبتداء من نوع إسم Mohammed  
رابط **is**  
خبر من نوع صفة fat

2. Mohammed **was** late yesterday for the party.

مبتداء من نوع إسم Mohammed  
رابط **was**  
خبر يحتوي على العديد من التفاصيل  
صفة late  
متي؟ yesterday  
عن ماذا؟ for the party

3. Mohammed and his rich family **were** late yesterday for the party.

مبتداء Mohammed and his rich family  
رابط **were**  
خبر يحتوي على العديد من التفاصيل  
صفة late  
متي؟ yesterday  
عن ماذا؟ for the party

لاحظ ان المبتداء أيضا يحتوي على تفاصيل و معلومات ، أن محمد و عائلته و عرفنا أيضا أن محمد عائلته غنية أيضاً. أي ان المبتداء يتكون من أسم (محمد) و مسمى (عائلة) و ضمير و صفة .

We **have** eaten our breakfast.

أنا أكلنا طعامنا و أنهينا من ذلك

في الفصل العاشر نقدم لك تفاصيل هذه المجموعة ، كما أننا سنشرح الفرق بين الأحداث المكتملة تماماً و الأحداث أكتملت في زمن معين.

4. المجموعة الرابعة: مجموعة الأحداث التي لاتزال تحدث منذ أ و لمدة من الزمن.

{ have been, has been, had been }

ويدل الرابط على أن الحدث قد بدا في الماضي و لايزال يحدث منذ زمن . والخبر مع هذه الروابط يكون دائما صفة أستمرار الفعل Verb+ing لذا يجب عليك مراجعة الصفة المشتقة من الفعل في الفصل الثالث الخاص بالصفات و أنواعها حتي تستطيع أن تفهم هذه المجموعة.

مثال

They **have been** studying English for 3 years.

أنهم مازالو يدرسون الإنجليزية لمدة ثلاث سنوات

They **have been** studying English since April.

أنهم مازالو يدرسون الإنجليزية منذ شهر إبريل

لاحظ انه في كلتا الحالتين، لايزال الحدث مستمر منذ فترة أو لمد من الزمن، في الفصل الحادي عشر نقدم لك تفاصيل هذه المجموعة.

5. المجموعة الخامسة و تسمى الإلزام و الإلتزام

can, could, will, should, would

may, might, ought, must

هذه المجموعة من الروابط تستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث قد تكون وقعت في الماضي أو يجب أن تقع أو ان يحتمل حدوثها في المستقبل و تختلف في نسبة درجات حدوثها، بدرجات متفاوتة من نسبة الحدوث و الإلزام و الإلتزام.

نسبة الألزام

الرابط **must** تعني نسبة عالية من نسبة إحتمال حدوث الخبر للمبتداء، وإن خيار عدم حدوثه قليلة جداً. و إذا خوطب بها شخص تعني لهجة صارمة غير قابلة للنقاش.

حذف الرابط do ، did تأديباً، ماذا يقصد بذلك ؟

لو أتهمني شخص بأنني لا أصلي و العياذ بالله، فأنني أزجره و أوأكد أنني من المصلين، فهنا أستخدم الرابط do و أقول للشخص بلهجة حادة،

I **do** pray every day .

لو أتهم مدير المدرسة إبنني بأنه لم يحل الواجب و كنت متأكداً أن إبنني قد حل الواجب ، فهنا أستخدم الرابط did و أرد على المدير بلهجة حادة، مؤكدة أن إبنني قد

He **did** go to school yesterday .

لاحظ ان استخدام الرابط do ، did هنا في كلا الحالتين، فيه غلظة و زجر و نهر و أقلها نوع من التأكيد العنيف. لذلك نحذف الرابط في الجمل العادية التي تخلو من التعنيف و التأكيد.

مثال

They (**do**) pray every day.

أنهم يصلون كل يوم (عبارة فيها زجر و تأكيد)

They pray every day.

أنهم يصلون كل يوم (عبارة إخبارية عادية حذف منها الرابط، لكننا نتعامل مهه و كأنه موجود في جمل النفي و الاستفهام)

في الفصل الثامن و التاسع نقدم لك تفاصيل هذه المجموعة ، كما أننا سنشرح بالتفصيل التغيرات التي تنطرا على الجملة نتيجة حذف الرابط.

3. المجموعة الثالثة : { have, has, had }

و تسمى مجموعة "قد فعلت" ويدل الرابط على أن الحدث قد أكتمل أو أنه كان قد أ كتمل . والخبر مع هذه الروابط يكون دائما صفة مشتقة من الفعل. لذا يجب عليك مراجعة الصفة المشتقة من الفعل في الفصل الثالث الخاص بالصفات و أنواعها حتي تستطيع أن تفهم هذه المجموعة.

مثال

They **have** gone to school.

أنهم قد ذهبو للمدرسة و أكتمل ذهابهم

It **can** rain this morning. قد تمطر صباحاً

He **could** come.

مسموح له أن يحضر، قد يحضر

You **could** be late. قد تتأخر

ومن أهم ما يميز هذه المجموعة، هو أنه إذا كان المبتداء You أي ان الجملة أو امر مباشرة. فأن المبتداء و الرابط يحذف من الجملة.

You must go now. = go now!

You should listen to me. = Listen to me!

6. المجموعة السادسة { that }  
و تسمى مجموعة رابط "نقل المشاعر و الأفكار"

يستخدم الرابط that في تركيب عبارات نقل الكلام و المشاعر و الأفكار وهي عبارات و جمل تستخدم عندما ينقل شخص كلام شخص آخر. أو الأخبار عن موافقته أو معارضته على موضوع ما ، أو يخبر عن مشاعره و أفكاره

وتتكون عبارة نقل الكلام و المشاعر و الأفكار من صدر العبارة و رابط that، وذيل العبارة.

مثال

Mohammed says that he is sick.

Lana said that she was coming then.

صدر عبارة نقل الكلام و المشاعر و الأفكار  
Mohammed says,  
Lana said

ذيل عبارة نقل الكلام و المشاعر و الأفكار

He is sick.

He was coming then.

Muslims **must** pray.

You **must** do your homework.

من الأخطاء التي يعاني منها المدرسين، أن الطلاب الجدد في تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية يستخدمون كلمة **must** كثيراً معهم، و هي طريقة غير مهذبة و كأنها أوامر عسكرية. مثل ان يقول الطالب للمعلم

You **must** explain this.

وهذا أقصى درجات الإوامر، و تستخدم عادة في إصدار الأوامر من رئيس الى موظفيه أو من قائد الى جنوده، أو الإخبار عن حدث متأكدين 100% عن حدوثه، فإذا عمل أحدهم عمل غبي جعلك تتأكد من غبائه تستطيع أن تقول

You **must** be crazy.

لذا ننصح الطلاب بالحرص عند استخدام هذا الرابط في حديثهم.

الرابط **would, ought, should** تعني نسبة احتمال حدوث الخبر للمبتداء عالية نوعاً ما ، لا تصل لدرجة الرابط **must** لكنها عالية. و إذا خاطب بها شخص تعني لهجة ناصحة أو حازمة فيها نوع من الأمر البسيط.

He **should** be home by now.

من المحتمل جداً أن يكون في المنزل الآن.

You **ought** visit your family.

ينبغي عليك زيارة عائلتك.

في هذه الأمثلة نبرة الزامية، نوعاً ما.

الروابط **may, migt** تعني نسبة احتمال حدوث الخبر للمبتداء بنسبة في حدود 50% ، و إذا خاطب بها شخص تعني لهجة اقتراح دون إلزام.

It **may** rain this morning. قد تمطر صباحاً

He **might** come. قد يحضر

You **may** come late. بإمكانك أن تأتي متأخر

لاحظ اللهجة هنا رقيقة ، فيها اقتراح.

الروابط **can, could** تعني نسبة احتمال حدوث الخبر للمبتداء بنسبة في حدود غير معروفة ، و إذا خاطب بها شخص تعني انه مسموح له فعل ذلك .

الرابط يتكون من كلمتين فأنا نقدم الكلمة الأولى من المبتداء فقط.

? الخبر المبتداء الرابط

Is it small ?

مثال

It is small .  
Is it small ?

They are tall .  
Are they tall ?

You should go home.  
Should you go home ?

It is broken.  
Is it broken ?

You have been sleeping all day long?  
Have you been sleeping all day long ?

لا حظ ان الجملة المثبتة و المنفية دائماً تنتهي بعلامة الوقوف نقطة "." ؛ و هي جزء من الجملة و تعتبر الجملة خاطئة من دون علامة الوقوف. وفي الجملة الإستفهامية يجب أن تنتهي بعلامة "?" للإستفهام و تعتبر الجملة الإستفهامية خاطئة من دون هذه العلامة في الكتابة طبعاً.

الإجابة على أسئلة نعم أو لا، يمكن الإجابة على أسئلة نعم أو لا، بالطريقة التالية.

الرابط + ضمير يعو على المبتداء Yes,  
not. + الرابط + ضمير يعو على المبتداء No,

ملاحظة، نستخدم أول كلمة من الرابط فقط في الإجابة.

مثال

It is small .  
Is it small ? Yes, it is.  
No, it is not.

### صيغة الجمل المنفية والأستفهام

تلعب الروابط دوراً أساسياً في عملية تحويل الجملة من الصيغة المثبتة الى المنفية وكذلك صيغة السؤال و الأستفهام.

### صيغة الجملة المنفية

كما مر معنا سابقاً، فان ترتيب الجملة هو من اليسار

. الخبر الرابط المبتداء

It is small .

ولكي ننفي الجملة، يجب ان نضع كلمة not بعد الرابط، أو نلصق كلمة n't بالرابط في بعض الحالات

مثال

It is not small .  
It isn't small .  
You should not go home.  
It is not broken.  
You have not completed your job.

### صيغة الجمل الإستفهامية أو الأسئلة

عرفنا سابقاً، ان ترتيب الجملة هو من اليسار

. الخبر الرابط المبتداء

It is small .

في اللغة الإنجليزية هناك نوعان من الجمل الإستفهامية، أو الأسئلة:

أولاً، أسئلة نعم أو لا، وهي الأسئلة التي يكون الجواب عليها بكلمة نعم أو لا.

ولكي نحول الجملة المثبتة الى صيغة الجملة الإستفهامية من نوع (نعم أو لا) فإننا نعيد ترتيب الجملة وذلك بتقديم الرابط على المبتداء، و إذا كان



**Who** is your father?

**I went to Makka last summer by bus.**

Did you go to Makka last summer?

**Where** did you go last summer?

**When** did you go to Makka?

**How** did you go to Makka last summer?

**This is my homework?**

What is this?

**I met your frined Ali?**

**Whom** did you meet?

في الفصل الخامس عشر نقدم تفاصيل تراكيب التقي و  
الاستفهام.

وفي الفصول القادمة سنقدم شرح مفصلا لكل مجموعة من  
مجموعات الروابط مع الكثير من الأمثلة و التدريبات.

**They are tall .**

**Are they tall ? Yes, they are.**

**No they are not.**

**You should** go home.

**Should** you go home ?

**Yes, I should.**

**No, I should not.**

لاحظ تغير ضمير المخاطب بضمير المتكلم

**It is broken.**

**Is it broken ? Yes, it is. No, it is not.**

**You have been** sleeping all day long?

**Have you been** sleeping all day long ?

**Yes, we have.**

**No, we have not.**

لاحظ تغير ضمير المخاطب بضمير المتكلم وكذلك  
استخدام أول كلمة من الرابط فقط في الإجابة.

Sauid Arabia is an Islamic country.

Is Sauid Arabia an Islamic country?

**Yes, it is.**

Is your mother an American.

No, she is not.

لاحظ في حالة كون المبتداء غير ضمير فأنا نستخدم  
ضمير يعود على المبتداء. لأن الهدف من إجابة هذا  
النوع من الأسئلة أن تكون الإجابة قصيرة جداً.

ثانياً، أسئلة **W**، وهي الأسئلة التي تفاصيل مثل

Why?, When, What?, Where? Who?

How? Whome?

لكي نحول الجملة المثبتة الى صيغة الجملة  
الاستفهامية من نوع ( W ) فإننا نعيد ترتيب الجملة  
وذلك بتقديم الرابط على المبتداء، وحذف المعلومة  
التي يسألنا عنها السؤال.

مثال

**Mohammed is my father.**

Is Mohammed your father?

- إذا كان المبتداء جمع و أردنا وصفهم الآن فإننا نستخدم الرابط "are"  
هذه السيارات كبيرة These cars **are** big.  
أولئك عاتتي Those **are** my family.

- إذا كان المبتداء جمع و أردنا وصفه في الماضي (كيف كان) فإننا نستخدم الرابط "were"  
These cars **were** mine.  
هذه السيارات كانت ملكي  
Those **were** my friend.  
أولئك كانوا أصدقائي

## أنواع الخبر في روابط الصفات

أولا، الإخبار عن ماذا؟، متى؟ وأين؟، وكيف؟، ومن؟

بعد مجموعة الصفات من الروابط  
{am, is, are, was, were}  
يمكن أن يكون الخبر عن :-

- ماذا (What?)
- متى (When?)
- وأين (Where?)
- كيف (How?)
- من (Who?)

مثال

Obama is the name of the President of the United States of America.

المبتداء Obama مفرد يصف اسم شخص (what) الآن، و الرابط is

لذلك في صيغة السؤال نستبدل المبتداء بنوعه

What is the name of the President of the United States of America?

مثال

Bush was the name of the President of the United States of America.

## الباب الأول

### الفصل السابع

#### روابط الصفات

am, is, are, was, were

تسمى مجموعة الروابط  
{am, is, are, was, were}

بروابط الصفات ، لأن الخبر بعدها دائما صفة الشيء نفسه، أو صفاته . يجب عليك مراجعة الفصل الثالث الخاص بالصفات و أنواعها حتي تستطيع أن تفهم هذه المجموعة.

مثال

هذه السيارة كبيرة This car **is** big.  
هذا كرسي This **is** a chair.  
أنهم طلاب They **are** students.  
هو يدرس الآن He **is** studying now.  
كانو يلعبون Ther **were** playing.  
الكرسي مكسور The chair **is** broken.  
كانو مكسورين They **were** broken.

لاحظ انه في كل الحالات السابقة، أن الخبر يكون دائما صفة للمبتداء. وفيما يلي نقدم لك تفاصيل وأنواع الخبر في هذه المجموعة.

- إذا كان المبتداء مفرد و أردنا وصفه الآن فإننا نستخدم الرابط "is"  
هذه السيارة كبيرة This car **is** big.  
ذلك أبي That **is** my father.

- إذا كان المبتداء مفرد و أردنا وصفه في الماضي (كيف كان) فإننا نستخدم الرابط "was"

هذه السيارة كانت زرقاء This car **was** blue.  
كان ذلك صديقي That **was** my friend.

10. Long sentences **are** hard for beginners.  
A Long sentence **is** hard for a beginner.
11. Ants **are** insects.  
*An ants is an insect.*
12. Soldiers **are** brave men.  
*A soldiers is a brave man.*
13. Nouns **are** words.  
*A nouns is a word.*

ثانياً ، الإخبار عن ما يحدث الآن أو عما كان يحدث عندئذ

بعد روابط الصفات من الروابط

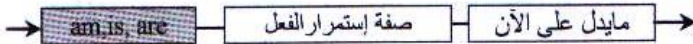
{am, is, are, was, were}

يمكن أن يكون الخبر عن صفة إستمرار حدوث الفعل ( - ingفعل ) وهي الصفات الناتجة من إضافة -ing الى الفعل والتي تعني أن حدوث الفعل مستمرا .

مثال

I **am studying** now.

أنا الآن مستمر في الدراسة



He **is working** this week.

They **are playing** at this moment.

She **is singing** today.

بعض الأفعال لايمكن أن يشتق منها صفة الإستمرار، لأنها مستمرة بطبيعتها مثل:

- أفعال الحواس, see, hear, smell, taste
- أفعال الاعتقاد, believe, think, suppose
- أفعال المشاعر, feel, love, like, hate
- أفعال الرغبات, want, wish, desire

المبتداء Bush مفرد يصف ماذا كان اسم شخص ؟، و الرابط was

لذلك في صيغة السؤال نستبدل المبتداء بنوعه

*What* **was** the name of the President of the United States of America?

مثال

1. Horses **are** animals.  
*A hourse is an animal.*
2. Balls **are** toys.  
*A ball is a toy.*
3. Bullocks **are** useful animals.  
*A Bullock is a usefull animal.*
4. Boots **are** kind of shoes.  
*A boot is a kind of shoes.*
5. Watches **are** small clocks.  
*A watch is a small a clock.*
6. Roses **are** beautiful flowers.  
*A rose is a beautiful flower.*
7. Frenchmen **are** European.  
*A Frenchman is a Europaena.*
8. Children **are** not always good.  
*A child is not always good.*
9. There **are** always tables and chairs in diningrooms.

*When I arrived at his house he was still sleeping.*

8. The boy jumped off the train while it (move).

*The boy jumped off the train while it was moving.*

9. The fire still (burn) at six O'clock this morning.

*The fire was still burning at six O'clock this morning.*

10. He (walk) across the bridge when his hat below off.

*He was walking across the bridge when his hat below off.*

11. She cut her finger while she (cut) the bread and butter.

*She cut her finger while she was cutting the bread and butter.*

12. The bus started while I (get) on.

*The bus started while I was getting on.*

13. The light went out while we (have) supper.

*The light went out while we having supper.*

14. The children (do) their homework when their father came back from the office.

*The children were doing their homework when their father came back from the office.*

15. I took another cake when you (not look) !

*I took another cake when you were not looking !*

لذلك من الخطاء ان نقول:-

I am loving you now.

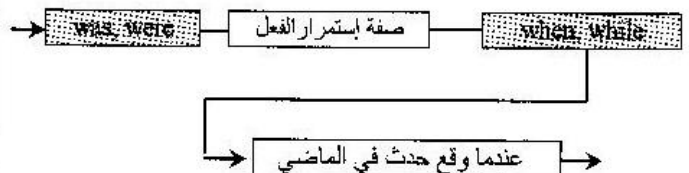
He is seen us now.

She is supposing that today.

مثال

I was sleeping when you came.

كنت مستمراً في الدراسة عندما أتيت



مثال

أعد كتابة الأفعال بين الأقواس ،

1. I (read ) a book when he came in.

*I was reading a book when he came in.*

2. The sun (shine) when we went out.

*The sun was shining when we went out.*

3. When you came in I (write).

*When you came in I was writing.*

4. I came in while he (write).

*I came in while he was writing.*

5. It (rain) this morning when I got up.

*It was raining this morning when I got up.*

6. He ( work) all day yesterday.

*He was working all day yesterday*

7. When I arrived at his house he still (sleep).

مثال

ضع المبتداء و الرابط المناسب ؟

1. .... two dogs in the garden. (There are)
2. .... a lot of people in the park yesterday. (There were)
3. .... a train coming now. (There is)
4. .... ( negative ) another train for at least two hours. (There isn't)
5. .... a few changes since you left last week. (There were)
6. .... some chocolate on this plate when I went out just now. (There is)
7. .... one for you tomorrow.(There is)
8. .... plenty of knives in the drawer. (There are)
9. .... only a footpath here last year. (There was)
10. .... no mistakes in your last exercise. (There were)
11. .... no fruit on this tree for many years. (There was)
12. .... a thunderstorm soon, I think.(There was)
13. .... four hundred children in the school this year. (There were)
14. ... an accident outside our house last night. (There was)
15. .... a lot of visitors this morning. (There was)

ثالثاً ، الإخبار عن فعل مفعول مند مدة أو لفترة محددة من الزمن

يأتي الخبر بعد روابط الصفات على هيئة صفة المفعول ( التصريف الثالث للفعل ) لاحظ أن التصريف الثالث للفعل هو صفة تعطي صيغة مفعول من الفعل مثل قتل مقتول، شرب مشروب.

مثال

He is killed. هو مقتول  
He was killed. هو كان مقتولاً

مثال

Did you break the chair? No, it (break) before I came.

هنا يريد الشخص أن يقول ان الكرسي كان مكسورا قبل مجيئه.

It was broken before I came.

مثال

No need to solve the problem because it (solve).

هنا يريد الشخص أن يقول انه لا داعي لحل المسألة لأنها محلولة

No need to solve the problem because it is already solved.

. كلمة already تعني ان الصفة حدثت مند فترة.

**المبتداء It, There**

تستخدم الروابط is, was, are, were مع المبتداء it, there

وذلك لذكر معلومة أو حقيقة....It was.....It is.....

There is .....There was.....There was ..

وذلك لذكر وجود شئ أو أشياء There were

11. .... very wet last month, and now .... windy. (It was/it is)
12. .... raining for three hours without stopping. (It is)
13. .... a long time since I saw you.(It was)
14. .... cruel to beat a dog like that.(It was)
15. Our teacher thinks ..... better to take this examination next summer.(it is)
16. .... his own fault that he missed the volley- ball match.(It was)
17. ... past four O'clock when they arrived.(It was)
18. .... my constant wish to visit Europe since I was a boy. (It was)
19. .... wrong of you not to have answered his last letter. (It was)
20. .... here that I first met him.(It was)

### صيغة الأسئلة و الإستفهام

أولاً، الإستفهام عن المبتداء و يكون باستبدال المبتداء بكلمة الإستفهام المناسبة.

- ماذا (What?)
- متي (When?)
- وأين (Where?)
- كيف (How?)
- من (Who?)
- أي (Which?)

مثال

ضع الكلمة المناسبة في الفراغ ؟

1. .... is your name? (what)

16. .... some more work for you tomorrow. (There is)
17. .... a lot more snow since yesterday. (There is)
18. .... ( negative) enough time to finish it tomorrow. (There is not)
19. .... no pictures in this dictionary. (There is)
20. Another football match next Saturday. (There is)

مثال

ضع المبتداء و الرابط المناسب ؟

1. .... a pity (that) she is so stupid. (It is)
2. .... fine tomorrow , I think. (It is)
3. .... a shame to spend all this money. (It is)
4. .... stupid not go yesterday.(It was)
5. .... not very far to walk.(It is)
6. .... a great day when he passes his examination . (It was)
7. .... nice having you to tea last yesterday. (It was)
8. .... wonderful to see you again next week. (It is)
9. .... possible (that) he doesn't understand English . (It is)
10. .... strange (that) he doesn't understand English.( It is)

new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

أولاً، حدد الرابط ثم قدمه على المبتداء

*Is the youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya an excellent example of the impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world?*

5. Better knowledge of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe was very important to the project success.

حدد الرابط ثم قدمه على المبتداء

*Was better knowledge of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe very important to the project success?*

في مثل هذه الجملة تتجلى قوة قاعدة المبتداء و الرابط والخبر، وطريقة تحليل المبتداء والخبر الى مكوناته الأساسية

طريقة الإجابة على أسئلة نعم أو لا كتابياً

مثال

1. Mohammed **is** your name.

*Is Mohammed your name? Yes, it is.*

*No, it isn't.*

*No, it is not.*

لاحظ تفاصيل الإجابة، استبدال المبتداء بضمير يعود عليه وكذلك وعلامات الترقيم، وطبعاً النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

2. .... is that pretty girl? (*who*)
3. .... is your telephone number? (*what*)
4. Here are the books! .... is yours? (*which*)
5. .... is coming to tea? (*who*)
6. .... is yours, the orange or the banana? (*which*)
7. .... colour is it? (*what*)
8. .... is the name of your baker? (*what*)
9. .... is his shop, the one at the end of the road, or the one near the post office? (*which*)
10. .... is the answer to my questions? (*what*)
11. .... are you learning now? (*what*)

ثانياً، الإستفهام عن الصفة وفي هذه الحالة يكون الجواب بصيغة "نعم" أو "لا"، وفي هذه الحالة نقدم الرابط على المبتداء

مثال

أسئل عن الصفات في الجمل أسئلة نعم أو لا؟

1. Mohammed **is** your name.  
*Is Mohammed your name?*
2. Lana **is** that pretty girl.  
*Is Lana that pretty girl?*
3. 874-1230 **is** your telephone number.  
*Is 874-1230 your telephone number?*
4. The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya **is** an excellent example of the impact of

*No, it isn't.*

مثال

هذا سؤال كلاسيكي، دائماً يتكرر و يخطئ فيه الطلاب.

3. Better knowledge of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe was very important to the project success.

*Was better knowledge of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe very important to the project success?*

*Yes, it was.*

*No, it was not.*

*No, it wasn't.*

ثالثاً، أسئلة طلب التأكيد و الموافقة، مثل أليس كذلك؟

ويتكون هذا النوع من الأسئلة من ثلاث أجزاء رئيسية:

- الجملة الرئيسية
- فاصلة
- سؤال التأكيد من نوع نعم أو لا
- جواب سؤال التأكيد

مثال

Tha chair is broken, isn't it? Yes, it is.

- الجملة الرئيسية Tha chair is broken
- فاصلة
- سؤال التأكيد isn't it?
- جواب التأكيد Yes, it is.

Lana is that pretty girl.

Is Lana that pretty girl? No

.....

- a. she is not.
- b. , she is n't.
- c. she isn't.
- d. , she isn't.

الجواب الصحيح ( D )

مثال

874-1230 is your telephone number.

Is 874-1230 your telephone number?

Yes, it is.

No, it is not.

No, it isn't.

2. The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Eygpt and Libya is an excellent example of the impct of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

*Is the youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Eygpt and Libya an excellent example of the impct of new technologies such as Facebook on the world?*

*Yes, it is.*

*No, it is not.*



2. I (sit) on a chair and (eat) banana.  
*I am sitting on a chair and eating banana.*
3. It (rain) now.  
*It is raining now.*
4. Mother (cook) some food in the kitchen at present.  
*Mother is cooking some food in the kitchen at present.*
5. The baby (cry) because it is hungry now.  
*The baby is crying because it is hungry now.*
6. I (spend) this weekend in Alexandria.  
*I am spending this weekend in Alexandria.*
7. "Where are you?" "I (sit) in the kitchen."  
*"Where are you?" "I am sitting in the kitchen."*
8. "Where are you (go) now?" "I (go) to the theatre".  
*"Where are you going now?" "I am going to the theatre".*

مثال

أكمل الجمل التالية؟

1. I \_\_\_ hungry. (am)
2. All of you \_\_\_\_\_ invited to my house. (are)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ the champions, my friend. (are)
4. Jose \_\_\_\_\_ a hot-tempered fellow. (is)
5. Alex and Arsenc \_\_\_\_\_ always fighting. (are)

مثال

The chair isn't broken, is it? Yes, it is.

The chair isn't الجملة الرئيسية -

broken

فاصلة -

is it? سؤال التأكيد -

Yes, it is. جواب التأكيد -

- ملاحظة، سؤال التأكيد يكون عكس الجملة الرئيسية من حيث النفي و الإثبات

مثال

These books aren't yours, are they?

الجملة الرئيسية منفية، فيكون سؤال التأكيد مثبت

These books are yours, aren't they?

الجملة الرئيسية مثبتة، فيكون سؤال التأكيد منفي

- جواب التأكيد يكون مثل جواب سؤال نعم أو لا، بنفس التشكيك.

مثال

These books aren't yours, are they?

Yes, they are.

No, they aren't.

These books are yours, aren't they?

Yes, they are.

No, they aren't.

مثال

أعد كتابة الأفعال بين الأقواس ،

1. We now (learn) English.

*We now are learning English.*

6. The truth \_\_\_ out there.(is)
7. This information \_\_\_\_\_ not so reliable.(is)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you out of your mind? (are)
- 10 Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ sure exactly what happened here last night.(is)
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ hungry, so we ate.(were)
10. He \_\_\_\_\_ in the army for seven years.(was)
11. Suzanne \_\_\_\_\_ a beauty queen when she was younger.(was)
12. Ling and Long \_\_\_\_\_ in here together yesterday. (were)
13. It \_\_\_\_\_ a dark and stormy night.(was)
- 6 The Missouri Kid \_\_\_\_\_ a cold, heartless killer.(was)
- 9 It \_\_\_\_\_ enough to make your stomach turn. (was)

حذف الرابط do ، did تادياً، ماذا يقصد بذلك ؟

لو أراد شخص ان يؤكد لحيبته أنه يحبها بكل تأكيد، ( أي  
أحبك بعنف شديد ) فإنه يقول لها

I do love you.

لو أتهمني شخص بأنني لا أصلي و العياد بالله، فأنتي  
أزجره و أوكد أنني من المصلين، فهنا أستخدم الرابط do  
و أقول للشخص بلهجة حادة،

I do pray everyday .

لو أتهم مدير المدرسة إبنني بأنه لا يحل الواجب و كنت  
متأكداً أن إبنني يحل الواجب، ، فهنا أستخدم الرابط does  
و أرد على المدير بلهجة حادة، مؤكدة  
أن إبنني يحل الواجب

He does complete his homework

لاحظ ان استخدام الرابط do ، does هنا في كلا  
الحالتين، فيه تأكيد شديد أو غلظة و زجر و نهر و أقلها  
نوع من التأكيد العنيف. لذلك تحذف الرابط في الجمل  
العادية التي تخلو من التعنيف و التأكيد.

ملاحظة، عندما يستخدم معظم الأمريكيين الرابط do,  
does في الجملة المثبتة، عادة مايتبعونها بسبة أو إهانة  
تعبير عن سخطهم من المخاطب.

I do know my job, dummy.

She does love me, .....

مثال

They (do) pray everyday.

أنهم يصلون كل يوم (عبارة فيها زجر و تأكيد)

They pray everyday.

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الثامن

#### روابط العادات و الحقائق

## do, does

تسمي مجموعة الروابط { do, does, }  
بمجموعة العادات و الحقائق ، لأن الخبر  
بعدها دائما فعل يدل علي عادة يتعود عليها  
المبتداء أو حقيقة عن المتداء غير قابلة للنقاش.

They **do** pray every day.

أنهم يصلون كل يوم، بالتأكيد

He **does** go to school every week.

أنه يذهب للمدرسة كل أسبوع، بالتأكيد

- إذا كان المبتداء he, she, it أو مايعود عليها  
فإننا نستخدم الرابط does
- إذا كان المبتداء I, you, we, they أو مايعود  
عليها فإننا نستخدم الرابط do

لاحظ أنه في معظم الأحيان يحذف الرابط do,  
does في جملة الأثبات إذا لم يكن هناك حاجة  
للتأكيد، أو الزجر ، ونقول هنا أن الرابط  
محذوف تادياً، بينما يظل الرابط موجوداً في  
صيغة النفي و الإستفهام مثله مثل بقية الروابط  
الأخرى.

You **know** your job.

ملاحظة مهمة، عندما يحذف الرابط، does ، نضع ال s في نهاية الفعل:

He (does) drink coffee everyday.

He drinks coffee everyday.

She (does) love her job.

She loves her job.

The sun (does) rise from the East.

The sun rises from the East.

أما إذا كان الفعل منتهي بأحد الأحرف التالية:

s, z, f, sh, ch, o, x

فأنا نضع es في نهاية الفعل

Passes, washes, watches, judges, goes, kisses,  
teaches, pushes, mixes, fixes

و إذا كان الفعل منتهي بحرف y يسبقه حرف غير متحرك  
(أي غير a, e, i, o, u) فإننا نستبدل ال y بحرف i ثم  
نضع es

Fly flies, try tries, cry cries, study studies

### صيغة النفي

حسب قاعدة HeN تنفي الجملة بإدخال not على الرابط  
ويمكن اختصار الرابط مع not كما يلي:-

does not = doesn't ، do not = don't

He **does not** drink coffee everyday.

He **doesn't** drink coffee everyday.

أنهم يصلون كل يوم (عبارة إخبارية عادية  
حذف منها الرابط، لكننا نتعامل معه و كأنه  
موجود في جمل النفي و الاستفهام)

الخبر بعد الرابط do, does

يكون الخبر بعد الرابط do, does فعل بصيغة  
العادة ( التصريف الأول) ليبدل على عادة  
تتكرر، كل يوم، كل ساعة، كل شهر، كل عام،  
دائماً، غالباً، أحياناً. كما أنه يستخدم أيضاً ليبدل  
على حقيقة لا تتبدل و لا تتغير، مثل إشراق  
الشمس من الشرق.

مثال

الأمثلة التالية ، يستخدم فيها الرابط do, does  
بصيغة التأكيد والزجر، لذلك يظهر الرابط do,  
does، نحن نضعه بين قوسين لنبين للطالب أنه  
يمكن ان يحذف إذا لم يكن هناك حاجة لتأكيد أو  
الزجر

I (do) **go** to school everyday.

She sometimes (does) **like** coffee.

Birds (do) **fly**.

I (do) **love** you.

You (do) **know** your job.

الأمثلة التالية ، ليس فيها تأكيد ولا زجر، لذلك  
حذف الرابط do, does، لانه لم يكن هناك  
حاجة لتأكيد أو الزجر

I **go** to school everyday.

She sometimes **likes** coffee.

Birds **fly**.

I **love** you.

5. Sally said she \_\_\_ want it anymore. (B)
6. Mr. Hill \_\_\_ live in New York. He lives in Boston. (B)
7. Rice \_\_\_ grow in cold climates. (B)
8. They like coffee, they \_\_\_ like tea. (A)
9. We are new here. We \_\_\_ know him. (A)
10. Harry has bad breath because he \_\_\_ brush his teeth very often. (B)
11. We are rich so we \_\_\_ have to work. (A)
12. Dave speaks English, French, and German, but he \_\_\_ speak Italian. (B)
13. They \_\_\_ sell that brand anymore. (A)
14. It is really a cheap restaurant, it \_\_\_ cost much to eat there. (B)
15. I have a television, but I \_\_\_ watch it often. (A)
16. That kind of earthquake \_\_\_ happen often. (B)
17. We live close to the sea, but we \_\_\_ go often. (A)
18. I love sumo, but I \_\_\_ like boxing. (A)
19. You \_\_\_ like me very much, do you? (A)

She **does not** love her job.

She **doesn't** love her job.

The sun **does not** rise from the West.

The sun **doesn't** rise from the West.

I **do not** go to school everyday.

I **don't** go to school everyday.

Dogs **do not** fly.

Dogs **don't** fly.

I **do not** love her.

I **don't** love her.

You do not know your job.

مثال

ضع الرابط المناسب في الفراغ؟

{ A: don't or B: doesn't }

1. Tom \_\_\_ like chocolate ice cream. (B)
2. I \_\_\_ understand, do you? (A)
3. Dr. Watson \_\_\_ smoke, does he? (B)
4. We \_\_\_ like classical music very much. (A)

11. I \_\_\_ to the cinema at least once a week. (*go*)
12. They never \_\_\_ tea in the morning. (*drink*)
13. We both \_\_\_ to the radio in the morning. (*listen*)
14. He \_\_\_ a big wedding. (*wants*)
15. George \_\_\_ too much so he's getting fat. (*eats*)
16. The earth \_\_\_ round the sun, doesn't it? (*goes*)
17. The shops in England \_\_\_ at 9:00 in the morning. (*open*)
18. The post office \_\_\_ at 5:30 pm. (*closes*)
19. Jackie \_\_\_ two children now. (*has*)
20. Mr. Smith \_\_\_ too much. He always has a cigarette in his mouth. (*smokes*)
21. When the phone \_\_\_, please answer it. (*rings*)

### صيغة الأسئلة و الإستفهام

أولاً، الإستفهام بأسئلة يكون جوابها بصيغة "نعم" أو "لا"

20. My son \_\_\_ like skiing. He likes snowboarding now. (B)
21. We \_\_\_ have time to do that on the way home. (A)

مثال

ضع الفعل المناسب في الفراغ؟

1. She \_\_\_ four languages. (*speaks*)
2. Jane is a teacher. She \_\_\_ French. (*teaches*)
3. When the kettle \_\_\_, will you make some tea? (*boils*)
4. I always \_\_\_ the window at night because it is cold. (*close*)
5. Those shoes \_\_\_ too much. (*cost*)
6. The food in Japan is expensive. It \_\_\_ a lot to live there. (*costs*)
7. His job is great because he \_\_\_ a lot of people. (*meets*)
8. He always \_\_\_ his car on Sundays. (*washes*)
9. My watch is broken and it \_\_\_ to be fixed again. (*needs*)
10. I \_\_\_ to watch movies. (*love*)

*She (does) speak four languages.*

*Does she speak four languages?*

2. Jane is a teacher. She teaches French.

*She (does) teach French.*

*Does she teach French?*

3. I always close the window at night because it is cold.

*I always (do) close the window at night because it is cold.*

*Do I always close the window at night because it is cold?*

4. Those shoes cost too much.

*Those shoes (do) cost too much.*

*Do those shoes cost too much?*

5. He always washes his car on Sundays.

*He always (does) wash his car on Sundays.*

*Does he always wash his car on Sundays?*

6. I love to watch movies.

*I (do) love to watch movies.*

*Do I love to watch movies?*

7. I go to the cinema at least once a week.

*I (do) go to the cinema at least once a week.*

*Do I go to the cinema at least once a week?*

8. We both listen to the radio in the morning.

*We both (do) listen to the radio in the morning.*

*Do we both listen to the radio in the morning?*

9. He wants a big wedding.

*He does want a big wedding.*

*Does he want a big wedding?*

10. George eats too much so he's getting fat.

حسب قاعدة HcN في هذه الحالة نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، إذا كان الرابط محذوف نعيده الى مكانه الصحيح ثم نقدم الرابط على الخبر

مثال

I like coffee.

الرابط محذوف، نعيد الرابط الى مكانه

I (do) like coffee.

نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في نهاية الجملة.

Do I like coffee?

مثال

We both listen to the radio in the morning.

الرابط محذوف، نعيد الرابط الى مكانه

We both (do) listen to the radio in the morning.

نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في نهاية الجملة.

Do we both listen to the radio in the morning?

مثال

أسئل عن الجمل بأسئلة من نوع نعم أو لا؟

تذكر أن طريقة الحل هو إعادة الرابط المحذوف ثم تقديمه على المبتداء، تذكر أيضاً، أنه عندما يعود الرابط does اي الجملة، فإننا نحذف ال S من الفعل

1. She speaks four languages.

*The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya (does) prove the great impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.*

*Does the youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya prove the great impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world?*

17. Better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe enable the petroleum companies to find more oil.

*Better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe (do) enable the petroleum companies to find more oil.*

*Do better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe enable the petroleum companies to find more oil?*

في مثل هذه الجملة تتجلى قوة قاعدة المبتداء و الرابط و الخبر.

طريقة الإجابة على أسئلة نعم أو لا كتابياً

مثال

Ali likes coffee.

Does Ali like coffee? Yes, he does.

No, he doesn't.

*George (does) eat too much so he's getting fat.*

*Does George eat too much?*

11. The earth goes round the sun.

*The earth (does) go round the sun.*

*Does the earth go round the sun?.*

12. The shops in England open at 9:00 in the morning.

*The shops in England (do) open at 9:00 in the morning.*

*Do the shops in England open at 9:00 in the morning?*

13. The post office closes at 5:30 pm.

*The post office (does) close at 5:30 pm.*

*Does the post office close at 5:30 pm?*

14. Jackie has two children now.

ملاحظة has هنا بمعنى يملك أو لديه فهي ليست

رابط هنا، الرابط هو does و عندما نحذف الـ

من تصبح has

*Jackie (does) have two children now.*

*Does Jackie have two children now?*

15. Mr. Smith smokes too much. He

always has a cigarette in his mouth.

*Mr. Smith does smoke too much. He always has a cigarette in his mouth.*

*Does Mr. Smith smoke too much. ?*

16. The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya proves the great impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.



No, it does not.

No, it doesn't.

مثال

Better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe (do) enable the petroleum companies to find more oil.

*Do better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe enable the petroleum companies to find more oil?*

*Yes, they do.*

*No, they do not.*

*No, they don't.*

ثانياً، أسئلة طلب التأكيد و الموافقة، مثل أليس كذلك؟

ويتكون هذا النوع من الأسئلة من ثلاث أجزاء رئيسية:

- الجملة الرئيسية
- فاصلة
- سؤال التأكيد من نوع نعم أو لا
- جواب سؤال التأكيد، ويكون مثل جواب سؤال نعم أو لا، بنفس التشكيل.

مثال

The post office closes at 5:30 pm, *doesn't it?* *Yes, it does.*

*No, it doesn't.*

لاحظ تفاصيل الإجابة، استبدال المبتداء بضمير يعود عليه وكذلك وعلامات الترقيم الفاصلة، وطبعاً النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

مثال

هذا سؤال كلاسيكي، دائماً يتكرر و يخطئ فيه الطلاب.

I likes coffee.

Do I like coffee? Yes,

A. I do

B. I does.

C. You do

D. you do

الجواب الصحيح ( D ) ، يجب تغير ضمير المتكلم ، الى المخاطب. و لاحظ ان ان الإضافة في نصف الجملة، لذلك C خطأ لأن بدايتها حرف كبير.

مثال

The youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Eyypt and Libya proves the impct of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

Does the youth revelation early this year in Tunisia, Eyypt and Libya prove the impct of new technologies such as Facebook on the world?

Yes, it does.

- كيف (How?)
- من (Who?)
- أي (Which?)

طريقة تحويل الجملة المثبتة إلى سؤال بكلمات الاستفهام:-

18. وضع الرابط إذا كان محذوف

19. تغيير الجملة إلى سؤال بصيغة نعم أو لا وذلك بتقديم

الرابط على المبتداء

20. وضع كلمة الإستفهام المناسبة، أمام الرابط

21. حذف ما يستفهم عنه

22. تغيير مايلزم من الضمائر

مثال

1. I mean "you are stupid!".  
I (do) mean "you are stupid!"  
Do you mean I am stupid?  
What do you mean I am stupid?  
What do you mean?

2. I live in Makka.  
I (do) live in Makka.  
Do you live in Makka?  
Where do you live?

3. He goes to school by bus.  
He (does) go to school by bus.  
Does he go to school by bus?  
How does he go to school?

4. She likes BMW.  
She does likes BMW.  
Does she like BMW?  
Which car does she like?

تفاصيل مدى تكرار حدوث الحدث

الجملة الرئيسية

The post office closes at 5:30 pm

فاصلة

سؤال التأكيد *doesn't it?*

جواب التأكيد Yes, it does.

No, it doesn't.

مثال

The post office does not close at 5:30

pm, *do it? Yes, it does.*

*No, it doesn't.*

الجملة الرئيسية

The post office does not close at 5:30  
pm

فاصلة

سؤال التأكيد *does it?*

جواب التأكيد Yes, it does.

No, it doesn't.

ملاحظة، سؤال التأكيد يكون عكس الجملة

الرئيسية من حيث النفي و الإثبات

مثال

These people do not work, do they?

الجملة الرئيسية منفية، فيكون سؤال التأكيد مثبت

These people work hard, don't they?

الجملة الرئيسية مثبتة، فيكون سؤال التأكيد منفي

ثالثاً، الإستفهام بكلمات الاستفهام ا.

• ماذا (What?)

• متي (When?)

• وأين (Where?)

You **do** come to work now!

إذهب الى العمل الآن! أمر

You **do not** come to work now!

لا تذهب الى العمل الآن! نهي

• ولأن المبتداء، في صيغة الأمر يكون دائماً you ، أنت أو أنتم ، لذا يحذف في معظم الأوقات

You **do** go to school!

Do go to school!

إذهب الى المدرسة! أمر

You **do not** go to school!

Do not go to school!

لا تذهب الى المدرسة! نهي

You **do** come to work now!

Do come to work now?

إذهب الى العمل الآن! أمر

You **do not** come to work now!

Do not come to work now!

لا تذهب الى العمل الآن! نهي

• ولأن الرابط، يكون دائماً do ، ، لذا فإنه يحذف في صيغة الأمر و يبقى في صيغة النهي

You **do** go to school!

Go to school!

You **do not** go to school!

Do not go school.

You **do** come to work now!

و لعل أهم ما يميز هذا الرابط هو وجود تفاصيل تدل على

علامات و درجات العادة وهو ما يدل على مدى درجة و تكرار هذه العادة. و يحمل كل من هذه التفاصيل على درجة تدل على نسبة تكراره ، مثلاً عبارة دائماً always تكون نسبة حدوثها (90-100%) ، بينما عبارة أبداً never لها نسبة احتمال (صفر%) و فيما يلي قائمة بهذه التفاصيل مع درجاتها:-

never	( صفر% )
hardly ever	( 1-3% )
rarely	( أقل من 5% )
seldom	( 5-10% )
occasionally	( 10-20% )
sometimes,	( 20-30% )
generally,	( 40-50% )
usually,	( 50-60% )
frequently	( 60-70% )
nearly always	( 70-80% )
often	( 80-90% )
always.	( 90-100% )
ever	( ولو مرة واحدة، تستخدم في السؤال )

لاحظ ان الهدف من الأرقام و النسب فقط إعطائك فكرة مبسطة عن مدى تكرار هذا لحدث، ومنه نستنتج أن generally أكثر حدوثاً من rarely

إذا لم يذكر درجة تكرار الحدث في الجملة، هذا يعني أحياناً، انها حقيقة أو شبه مسلمة بها.

### صيغة الأمر والنهي

• يستخدم الرابط do في صيغة الأمر و النهي ويكون المبتداء دائماً you

You **do** go to school!

إذهب الى المدرسة! أمر

You **do not** go to school!

لا تذهب الى المدرسة! نهي

ضع الفعل المناسب مع تفاصيل التكرار حسب نسبة  
الحدوث المعطاة بين الأقواس؟

1. She \_\_\_ four languages. ( 100%)  
*She speaks four languages.*  
لاينكر درجة التكرار مع الحقيقة،
2. Jane is a teacher. She \_\_\_ French.( 50%)  
*Jane is a teacher. She sometimes teaches French.*
3. I \_\_\_ the window at night because it is cold.  
(100%)  
*I always close the window at night because it is cold.*
4. Those shoes \_\_\_ too much. (100%)  
*Those shoes cost too much.*  
لاينكر درجة التكرار مع الحقيقة،
5. The food in Japan is expensive. It \_\_\_ a lot  
to live there. (80%)  
*The food in Japan is expensive. It often costs a lot to  
live there.*
6. His job is great because he \_\_\_ a lot of  
people.( 70%)  
*His job is great because he frequently meets a lot of  
inresting people.*
7. He \_\_\_ his car on Sundays. (25%)  
*He sometime washes his car on Sundays.*
8. I \_\_\_ to watch movies.(2%)  
*I hardly ever love to watch movies.*
9. I \_\_\_ to the cinema at least once a week.  
(once a week)  
*I usually go to the cinema at least once a week.*

Come to work now!

Don't do not come to work now

Do not come to work now.

مثال

خاطب زميلك بصيغة الأمر والنهي لكي يفعل أو  
لكي لايفعل أي من الأفعال التالية؟

1. Talk to his neighbour, whisper, talk  
so loudly.  
*Do not talk to your neighbor!*  
*Do not talk so loudly!*
2. Play with his pen, pencil, books, tie.  
*Play with your pen!*  
*Do not play with your pencil!*
3. Push his neighbor , kick his friend.  
*Push your neighbor!*  
*Do not kick your friend!*
4. Bite his pencil, nails, lips.  
*Do not bite your nails!*  
*Do not bite your lips!*
5. Copy from his friend's book.  
*Copy from your friend's book!*  
*Do not copy from your friend's book!*
6. Look at the ceiling , out of the  
window.  
*Look at the ceiling!*  
*Do not look out of the window!*

مثال

## مثال

أعد كتابة الأفعال بين الأقواس ،

1. We now (learn) English.  
*We now are learning English.*
2. She (go) to school every day.  
*She goes to school every day.*
3. We now (learn) English.  
*We now are learning English.*
4. The sun always (shine) in India.  
*The sun always shines in India.*
5. I (sit) on a chair and (eat) banana.  
*I am sitting on a chair and eating banana.*
6. Bad students never (work) hard.  
*Bad students never work hard.*
7. It rains in winter. it (rain) now.  
*It rains in winter; it is raining now.*
8. I ( walk up) at seven and (have) breakfast at half past.  
*I walk up at seven and have breakfast at half past.*
9. He generally (sign ) in English but today he (sign) in French  
*He generally signs in English but today he is signing in French.*
10. The teacher (point) at the blackboard when he (want) to explain something.

10. They \_\_\_ tea in the morning. ( 0%)  
*They never drink tea in the morning.*
11. We both \_\_\_ to the radio in the morning.(55%)  
*We both gereally listen to the radio in the morning.*
12. She \_\_\_ a big wedding.( 100%)  
*She wants a big wedding.*  
لاينكر درجة التكرار مع الحقيقة
13. George \_\_\_ too much so he's getting fat. (90%)  
*George always eats too much so he's getting fat.*
14. The earth \_\_\_ round the sun, doesn't it? (100%)  
*The earth goes round the sun, doesn't it?*
15. The shops in England \_\_\_ at 9:00 in the morning. ( 55%)  
*The shops in England generally open at 9:00 in the morning.*
16. The post office \_\_\_ at 5:30 pm. (100%)  
*The post office always close at 5:30 pm.*
17. Jackie \_\_\_ two children now.( 100%)  
*Jackie has two children now.*
18. Mr. Smith \_\_\_ too much. He always has a cigarette in his mouth.(100%)  
*Mr. Smith smoke too much.*

"Where are you going now"? "I am going to the theatre"  
 "I am going tonight also, but I do not go very often . " I  
 go every week, but tonight I am going for the second  
 time in three days".

## مثال

أعد كتابة الأفعال بين الأقواس ،

7. Ships (travel) from Southampton to new  
 York in four or five days.

*Ships travel from Southampton to new York in four or  
 five days.*

8. John (travel) to England tomorrow.

*John is traveling to England tomorrow.*

9. On my way to work I generally (meet) many  
 children who (go) to school .

*On my way to work I generally meet many children  
 who are going to school .*

10. Look, a man (run) after the tram . He (want )  
 to catch it.

*Look, a man is running after the tram . He wants to  
 catch it.*

11. It (be) very cold now. ? I (think) it ( snow)  
 outside !

*It is very cold now.? I think it is snowing outside !*

12. The sun (warm) the air and ( give ) us light.

*The sun warms the air and gives us light.*

13. " What you (read) when you are on  
 holiday?" " I (read) detective stories . Now I  
 (read) *the shut door* by Ivor Lock."

*The teacher points at the blackboard when  
 he wants to explain something.*

11. Mother (cook) some food in the  
 kitchen at present; she always (cook)  
 in the morning.

*Mother is cooking some food in the kitchen  
 at present; she always cooks in the  
 morning.*

12. I always (meet) you on the corner of  
 this street.

*I always meet you on the corner of this street.*

13. The baby (cry) because it is hungry  
 now.

*The baby is crying because it is hungry now.*

14. I (spend) this week -end in  
 Alexandria . I (go) there nearly every  
 week.

*I am spending this weekend in Alexandria .  
 I go there nearly every week.*

15. "Where are you?" "I (sit) in the  
 kitchen. "What are you (do) here"? "I  
 (help) my mother."

*"Where are you?" "I am sitting in the kitchen.  
 "What are you doing there"? "I am helping my  
 mother."*

16. "Where are you (go) now"? "I  
 (go) to the theatre" " I (go) tonight also,  
 but I (not go) very often . " I (go) every  
 week, but tonight I (go) for the second  
 time in three days".

19. "What music you (play) next?" Sheila (sing) a song by Schubert; she (sing) it very well. "  
*"What music are you playing next?" Sheila is sing a song by Schubert; she sings it very well. "*

20. Wood (float) on water, but iron (not float).  
*Wood floats on water, but iron does not float.*

21. "? You (understand) STEP now? "  
*"Do you understand STEP now? "*

مثال

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية بصيغة المفرد؟

1. They sit at the window and watch the traffic.

*He sits at the window and watches the traffic.*

2. They wash their hands and dry them on a towel.

*He washes his hands and dries them on a towel.*

3. They hit their dog with a stick when they are angry with it.

*He hits his dog with a stick when he is angry with it.*

4. Bird build their nests in the summer and fly to the south in the winter.

*A bird builds its nests in the summer and flies to the south in the winter.*

5. The children play all the morning and sleep, in the afternoon.

*The child plays all the morning and sleeps in the afternoon.*

*" What do you read when you are on holiday?" " I read detective stories . Now I am reading the shut door by Ivor Lock."*

14. " You (hear) anything?" " I (listen) hard but I can't hear anything.

*"Do you hear anything?" " I am listening hard but I can't hear anything."*

15. " I (see) that you (wear) your best clothes . ? you (go) to a party ? " No, I (go) to a wedding . " And who is the unhappy man who (throw) away his freedom? You must tell him I (feel) sorry for him." He (speak ) to you now ! "

*" I see that you are wearing your best clothes . Are you goin to a party ? " No, I am going to a wedding . " And who is the unhappy man who is throwing away his freedom? You must tell him I feel sorry for him." He is speaking to you now !*

16. "? You ( speak) French ? " " I only (use) a foreign language when I (travel ) abroad.

*"Do you speak French ? " " I only use a foreign language when I am traveling abroad."*

17. My friends (work) very hard. John (study) for an examination now.

*My friends work very hard. John is studying for an examination now.*

18. Joan (swim) very well, but she (not dive)  
*Joan swims very well, but she does not dive.*

## أعد كتابة الأفعال بين الأقواس ،

1. She (go) to school every day.  
*She goes to school every day.*
2. We now (learn) English.  
*We now are learning English.*
3. The sun always (shine) in Bahrain.  
*The sun always shines in Bahrain.*
4. I (sit) on a chair and (eat) banana.  
*I am sitting on a chair and eating banana.*
5. Bad students never (work) hard.  
*Bad students never work hard.*
6. It (rain) in winter. it (rain) now.  
*It rains in winter; it is raining now.*
7. I ( walk up) at seven and (have) breakfast at half past.  
*I walk up at seven and have breakfast at half past.*
8. He generally (sign ) in English but today he (sign) in French.  
*He generally signs in English but today he is signing in French.*
9. The teacher (point) at the blackboard when he (want) to explain something.  
*The teacher points at the blackboard when he wants to explain something.*
10. Mother (cook) some food in the kitchen at present; she always (cook) in the morning.
6. My friends like meat, but do not like fish.  
*My friend likes meat, but does not like fish.*
7. They live in small houses which have only three rooms.  
*He lives in small house which has only three rooms.*
8. His brothers work hard all day, and want to rest in the evening.  
*His brother work hard all day, and wants to rest in the evening.*
9. They have breakfast at eight O'clock and eat their lunch at half-past one.  
*He has breakfast at eight O'clock and eats his lunch at half- past one.*
10. They went to buy some toys, because their sons have a birthday tomorrow.  
*He went to buy some toys, because his son has a birthday tomorrow.*
11. Theses boys say that they always listen carefully , but do not always understand their teachers because they speak too quickly and choose very different words.  
*This boy says that he always listens carefully, but does not always understand his teachers because they speak too quickly and choose very different words.*

مثال



*Mother is cooking some food in the kitchen at present; she always cooks in the morning.*

11. I always (meet) you on the corner of this street.

*I always meet you on the corner of this street.*

12. The baby (cry) because it is hungry now.

*The baby is crying because it is hungry now.*

13. I (spend) this weekend in Alexandria . I (go) there nearly every week.

*I am spending this weekend in Alexandria. I go there nearly every week.*

14. "Where are you?" "I (sit) in the kitchen. "What are you (do) there"? "I (help) my mother."

*"Where are you?" "I am sitting in the kitchen.*

*"What are you doing here"? "I am helping my mother."*

15. "Where are you (go) now"? "I (go) to the theatre" " I (go) tonight also, but I (not go) very often . " I (go) every week, but tonight I (go) for the second time in three days".

*"Where are you going now"? "I am going to the theatre" . " I am going tonight also, but I do not go very often . " I go every week, but tonight I am going for the second time in three days".*

بينما يظل الرابط موجوداً في صيغة النفي و الإستفهام  
مثله مثل بقية الروابط الأخرى.

لو أراد شخص ان يؤكد لحبيبه أنه كان يحبها بكل تأكيد،  
أي كنت أحبك بعنف شديد ) فإنه يقول لها

I **did** love you.

لو أتهمني شخص بأنني لم أصلي و العياد بالله  
بالأمس، فأنتي أزجره و أوكد أنني صليت بالأمس،  
فهنا استخدم الرابط did و أقول للشخص بلهجة  
حادّة،

I **did** pray yesterday .

لو أتهم مدير المدرسة إبنني بأنه لم يحل الواجب و  
كنت متأكداً أن إبنني حل الواجب، ، فهنا استخدم  
الرابط did و أرد على المدير بلهجة حادة، مؤكدة  
أن إبنني يحل الواجب

He **did** complete his homework  
yesterday.

لاحظ ان استخدام الرابط did هنا فيه تأكيد شديد أو  
غلظة و زجر و نهر و أقلها نوع من التأكيد العنيف.  
لذلك نحذف الرابط في الجمل العادية التي تخلو من  
التعنيف و التأكيد.

ملاحظة، عندما يستخدم معظم الأمريكيين الرابط did  
في الجملة المثبتة، عادة مايتبعونها بسبة أو إهانة  
تعبير عن سخطهم من المخاطب.

I **did** get the job, dummy.

She **did** go out with me, .....

الخبر بعد الرابط **did**

يكون الخبر بعد الرابط did فعل بصيغة العادة (   
التصريف الأول) ليبدل على حدث حدث في الماضي

## الباب الأول

### الفصل التاسع

#### رابط الماضي did

يسمى الرابط { did } برابط الحدث الماضي ،  
لأن الخبر بعده دائماً فعل يدل علي حدث أحدثه  
المبتداء في الفترة الماضية، التي عادة ماتكون  
محددة في تفاصيل الخبر باستخدام تفاصيل  
علامات زمن حدوث الحدث في الماضي مثل

yesterday, last week, last month, last  
year, ago, early this year.

مثال

I **did** go t to school yesterday.

ذهب المدرسة بالأمس، بالأمس، بالتأكد

They **did** go to Dubai last year.

ذهبوا الى دبي العام الماضي، بالتأكد

The youth revolution early this year in  
Tunisia, Egypt and Libya **did** prove the  
great impact of new technologies such as  
Facebook on the world.

حذف الرابط did تادياً، من جملة الإثبات

كما مر معنا سابقاً، مع الرابط do, does، ففي  
معظم الأحيان يحذف الرابط did في جملة  
الإثبات إذا لم يكن هناك حاجة للتأكيد، أو  
الزجر ، ونقول هنا أن الرابط محذوف تادياً.

حسب قاعدة HcN تنفي الجملة بإدخال not على  
الرابط did not

ويمكن إختصار الرابط مع not كما يلي:-

did not = didn't

ملاحظة، في حالة انفي يوجد الرابط و يكون افعال في  
التصريف الأول أو الصيغة الأولى.

He **did not** drink coffee yesterday.

He **didn't** drink coffee yesterday.

She **did not** love her job then.

She **didn't** love her job then.

I **did not** see the sun yesterday.

I **didn't** see the sun yesterday.

مثال

ضع الرابط المناسب في الفراغ؟

{ A: don't or B: didn't }

1. Tom \_\_\_ like chocolate ice cream  
yesterday. (B)
2. I \_\_\_ understand, do you? (A)
3. Dr. Watson \_\_\_ smoke, did he? (B)
4. We \_\_\_ like classical music very much.  
(A)
5. She \_\_\_ want it last week. (B)
6. Mr. Hill \_\_\_ live in New York three  
years ago. (B)

وعادة ما يحتوي الخبر على تفاصيل علامات  
زمن حدوث الحدث في الماضي مثل

yesterday, last week, last month, last  
year, ago, early this year.

أو يكون وقت حدوث الحدث معوم أو مفهوم  
ضمننا من الجملة

مثال

الأمثلة التالية ، يستخدم فيها الرابط did بصيغة  
التأكيد والزجر، لذلك يظهر الرابط did، نحن  
نضعه بين قوسين لنبين للطالب أنه يمكن ان  
يحذف إذا لم يكن هناك حاجة لتأكيد أو الزجر

I (did) **understand** your point yesterday.

She (did) **like** my solution last year.

Aramco (did) **discover** oil 80 years ago.

I (did) **love** you but not anymore.

You (did) **know** your job then.

يحذف الرابط did من الجملة المثبتة ويستبدل  
الفعل بالتصريف الثاني، أما في حالة وجود  
الرابط للتأكيد، أو في جملة النفي و الإستفهام،  
يظل افعال في حالة التصريف الأول.

I **understood** your point yesterday.

She **liked** my solution last year.

Aramco **discovered** oil 80 years ago.

I **loved** you but not anymore.

You **knew** your job then.

صيغة النفي

18. I love sumo, but I \_\_\_ like boxing. (A)
19. You \_\_\_ like me very much, do you?  
(A)
20. My son \_\_\_ like skiing. He liked snowboarding back then. (B)
21. We \_\_\_ have time to do that on the way home. (A)

مثال

ضع الفعل المناسب في الفراغ؟

A: Hi, Mary. I \_\_\_ (see/نفي) you at school last Monday.

الجواب : *didn't see*

B: Hello, Bob. I \_\_\_ (come/نفي) on Monday. I wasn't \_\_\_ (feel) well, so I \_\_\_ (decide) to go to the doctor.

الجواب *didn't come, feeling, decided*

A: Oh! \_\_\_ it serious?

الجواب *was*

B: No, the doctor \_\_\_ (examine) me and \_\_\_ (tell) me I \_\_\_ (have) the flu. He \_\_\_ (prescribe) some medicine and \_\_\_ (tell) me to go home and rest.

الجواب:

*examined, told, had, prescribed, told*

7. Rice \_\_\_ grow last year because of the cold climates. (B)
8. They like coffee, they \_\_\_ like tea. (A)
9. We are new here. We \_\_\_ know him. (A)
10. Harry had bad breath because he \_\_\_ brush his teeth this morning. (B)
11. We are rich so we \_\_\_ have to work. (A)
12. Early European spoke English, French, and German, but they \_\_\_ speak Arabic. (B)
13. They \_\_\_ sell that brand anymore. (A)
14. It was really a cheap restaurant, it \_\_\_ cost much to eat there. (B)
15. I have a television, but I \_\_\_ watch it often. (A)
16. That kind of earthquake \_\_\_ happen last century. (B)
17. We live close to the sea, but we \_\_\_ go often. (A)

أولاً، الإستفهام بأسئلة يكون جوابها بصيغة "نعم"  
أو "لا"،

حسب قاعدة HcN في هذه الحالة نقدم الرابط على  
المبتداء، إذا كان الرابط محذوف نعيده الى مكانه  
الصحيح ثم نعيد الفعل الى صيغته الأولى، ثم نقدم  
الرابط على الخبر

مثال

I went to New York two months ago.  
الرابط محذوف، نعيد الرابط الى مكانه، و نعيد الفعل  
الى صيغته الأولى

I (**did**) go to New York two months ago.  
نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في  
نهاية الجملة.

Did I go to New York two months ago?

مثال

We both enjoyed the movie last weekend.  
الرابط محذوف، نعيد الرابط الى مكانه و نعيد الفعل  
الى صيغته الأولى

We both (**did**) enjoy the movie last  
weekend.

نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في  
نهاية الجملة.

Did we both listen enjoy the movie last  
weekend.

ملاحظة

A: \_\_\_ you \_\_\_ (stay) home all day  
last Monday?

الجواب: *Did, stay*

B: No, only in the morning. I \_\_\_  
(have) to work in the afternoon, and  
guess what?

الجواب: *had*

A: What?

B: When a friend \_\_\_ (drive) me  
home, he \_\_\_ (crash) his car. He \_\_\_  
(see/نفي) the red light.

الجواب: *drove, crushed, didn't see*

A: \_\_\_ anyone \_\_\_ (get) hurt?

B: Thank God, nobody \_\_\_ (do) .

الجواب: *Did, get, did*

A: I'm happy to hear that. Well,  
Mary, I have to rush now. While I  
\_\_\_ (listen) to your story, I \_\_\_  
(remember) that my wife \_\_\_ (ask)  
me to go to the mechanic to get our  
car. See you later. Take care.

الجواب:

*was listening, remembered, asked*

B: You too. Bye.

صيغة الأسئلة و الإستفهام

في اللغة الإنجليزية يقال:

5) My mother slept in the van last night.

*My mother did sleep in the van last night.*

*Did my mother sleep in the van last night?*

6) The boys removed the mudguards of their bicycles.

*The boys did remove the mudguards of their bicycles.*

*Did the boys remove the mudguards of their bicycles?*

7) Lana called her aunt last week.

*Lana did call her aunt last week.*

*Did Lana call her aunt last week?*

8) He made a big mistake this morning.

*He did make a big mistake this morning.*

*Did he make a big mistake this morning?*

طريقة الإجابة على أسئلة نعم أو لا كتابياً

مثال

The manger liked results last week.

Did the manger liked results last week?

Yes, he did.

No, he didn't.

لاحظ تفاصيل الإجابة، استبدال المبتداء بضمير يعود عليه وكذلك وعلامات الترقيم الفاصلة، وطبعاً النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

مثال

هذا سؤال كلاسيكي، دائماً يتكرر و يخطئ فيه الطلاب.

I liked her.

I did my home work yesterday.

الرابط did هنا محذوف، وكلمة did هنا هي ماضي الفعل do وتصبح الجملة

I did do my homework.

ويكون السؤال

Did you do your homework?

مثال

أسئل عن الجمل بأسئلة من نوع نعم أو لا؟

تذكر أن طريقة الحل هو إعادة الرابط المحذوف ثم تقديمه على المبتداء، تذكر أيضاً، أنه عندما يعود الرابط did الي الجملة، فإن الفعل الرئيسي يعود الي الصيغة الأولى

1) Susan went to England by plane last night.

*Susan did go to England by plane last night.*

*Did Susan go to England by plane last night?*

2) They visited a farm two weeks ago.

*They did visit a farm two weeks ago.*

*Did they visit a farm two weeks ago?*

3) Jenny and Peggy helped their brother.

*Jenny and Peggy did help their brother.*

*Did Jenny and Peggy help their brother?*

4) She designed this wonderful skirt.

*She did design this wonderful skirt.*

*Did she design this wonderful skirt?*

*Did better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe enable the petroleum companies to find more oil?*

*Yes, they did.*

*No, they did not.*

*No, they didn't.*

ثانياً، أسئلة طلب التأكيد و الموافقة، مثل اليس كذلك؟

وهي نوع من الأسئلة، التي يعطينا المتحدث خبراً، ثم يطلب منا تأكيد الخبر إما بالنفي أو الإثبات، ويتكون هذا النوع من الأسئلة من ثلاث أجزاء رئيسية:

- الجملة الرئيسية
- فاصلة
- سؤال التأكيد من نوع نعم أو لا
- جواب سؤال التأكيد، ويكون مثل جواب سؤال نعم أو لا، بنفس التشكيلة.

#### سؤال التأكيد

سؤال التأكيد يكون عكس الجملة الرئيسية من حيث النفي أو الإثبات أي أنه:-

- إذا كانت الجملة الرئيسية مثبتة، كان سؤال التأكيد منفي، كما في المثال التالي:

مثال

The post office closed at 5:30 pm, *didn't it?*

*Yes, it did.*

*No, it didn't.*

Did I like her? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. I did
- B. I do
- C. You did
- D. you did

الجواب الصحيح ( D ) ، يجب تغير ضمير المتكلم ، الى المخاطب. و لاحظ ان ان الإضافة في نصف الجملة، لذلك C خطأ لأن بدايتها حرف كبير.

مثال

The youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya proved the impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

*Did the youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya prove the impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world?*

*Yes, it did.*

*No, it did not.*

*No, it didn't.*

مثال

Better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe (do) enabled the petroleum companies to find more oil.

- ماذا (What?)
- متي (When?)
- وأين (Where?)
- كيف (How?)
- من (Who?)
- أي (Which?)

طريقة تحويل الجملة المثبتة إلى سؤال بكلمات الاستفهام:-

- وضع الرابط إذا كان محذوف
- تغيير الجملة إلى سؤال بصيغة نعم أو لا وذلك بتقديم الرابط على المبتداء
- وضع كلمة الإستفهام المناسبة، أمام الرابط
- حذف ما يستفهم عنه
- تغيير ما يلزم من الضمائر

مثال

1. I meant "you are stupid!".  
I (did) mean "you are stupid!"  
Did you mean I am stupid?  
What did you mean I am stupid?  
What did you mean?

2. I lived in Makka.  
I (did) live in Makka.  
Did you live in Makka?  
Where did you live?

3. He went to school by bus.  
He (did) go to school by bus.  
Did he go to school by bus?  
How did he go to school?

4. She liked BMW.  
She did like BMW.

الجملة الرئيسية

The post office closed at 5:30 pm

فاصلة

سؤال التأكيد *didn't it?*

جواب التأكيد Yes, it did.

No, it didn't.

- إذا كانت الجملة الرئيسية منفية، كان سؤال التأكيد مثبت، كما في المثال التالي:

مثال

The post office did not close at 5:30 pm, *did it?* Yes, it did.

No, it didn't.

الجملة الرئيسية

The post office did not close at 5:30 pm,

فاصلة

سؤال التأكيد *did it?*

جواب التأكيد Yes, it did.

No, it didn't.

مثال

These people did not work, did they?

الجملة الرئيسية منفية، فيكون سؤال التأكيد مثبت

These people worked hard, didn't they?

الجملة الرئيسية مثبتة، فيكون سؤال التأكيد منفي

ثالثاً، الإستفهام بكلمات الإستفهام ا.



2. It begins to rain.
3. That pudding smells nice.
4. You cut your fingers.
5. You fine your bag .
6. She comes early
7. You wear a lovely dress .
8. I lie on the bed
9. I say " No" .
10. He' teacher English.
11. Someone steals the money.
12. The river flows to the sea.

## مثال

أدخل بعض تفاصيل الماضي، مثل

yesterday, last week, ago, ...

مع تغيير مايلزم تغييره ؟

13. We ring the bell.

*We rang the bell last night.*

14. I know his name.

*I knew his name then.*

15. You ride a bicycle.

*You road a bicycle last night.*

16. You lie to me .

*You lied to me, yesterday.*

17. The boy throws a bell.

*The boy threw a bell.*

18. The prisoner runs away.

*The prisoner ran away last month.*

19. The girl catches it.

Did she like BMW?

Which car did she like?

أهم علاماته

و لعل أهم مايميز هذا الرابط هو وجود تفاصيل تدل على الزمن الماضي، مثل

yesterday, last week, last month, last year, ago, early this year.

## مثال

في كل من جمل المثال التالي

1. حول الجملة الى الماضي، وأستخدم الرابط did , و أدخل بعض تفاصيل الماضي، مثل yesterday, last week, ago, ...
2. أ حذف الرابط did و غير مايلزم أنفي الجملة
3. أسأل بصيغة نعم أم لا
4. أجب على سؤال نعم أم لا
5. أسأل سؤال تأكيد ، مرة بالنفي و مرة بالإثبات
6. أجب على سؤال التأكيد

الطريقة:

I break a cup .

*I did break a cup yesterday.*

*I broke a cup yesterday.*

*I did not break a cup yesterday.*

*Did I break a cup yesterday?*

*Yes, you did.*

*I did not break a cup, did I?*

*No, you didn't.*

الان كرر نفس الخطوات على العبارات التالية:-

1. He does his work well.

- We buy meat.
- You hear a noise.
- He feeds his horse.
- The little boy stand on a chair
- She loses her way.
- He leaves at six
- We swim in the sea.
- The plane files high.
- She understands everything.
- He tries to help them.
- The wind blows strongly.
- The soldier fight the enemy
- We go out every day.
- She wants coffee for breakfast.
- The picture hangs on the wall
- He sells foreign stamps.
- Her knee hurts her.
- The room holds 50 people.
- I use my car every day.
- He sees the film again.
- We keep our handkerchiefs in the drawer.
- He thinks about it.
- They meet outside the cinema
- They fall ill.
- He always pays the bill
- He plays football every week.
- He smokes a pipe after supper
- They write to you.
- She shuts the door softly.
- He reads the paper before the goes to bed.
- The artist draws a picture.
- He sits at the head of the table.
- She lets them pay later.

*The girl caught it.*

20. I put the book on the table.

*I put the book on the table.*

21. They have a car.

*They had a car yesterday.*

22. Mother makes a cup of tea.

*Mother made a cup of tea last night.*

23. We walk up at seven.

*We woke up at seven.*

ملاحظة، عيك مراجعة قائمة الأفعال و حفظ  
الصيغة الثانية و أكمل حل المثال.

- She takes a plate from the cupboard
- Your dog bites me.
- She spends too much money.
- It costs a lot of money.
- She tells us a story.
- You hide the key.
- The red light means "stop" .
- The river freezes in the winter
- The little boy falls down.
- They drink tea yesterday.
- They build a house.
- I choose a book.
- The sick man gets better.
- the servant sweeps the room
- I eat my lunch quickly.
- Flowers grow in my garden.
- The servant lights the fire every morning.

9. I ( no play) the violin since I was a little boy.

*I did not play the violin since I was a little boy.*

10. They (visit) Dammam a few days ago.

*They visited Dammam a few days ago.*

11. My brother (not write) to me for months.

*My brother did not write to me for months.*

12. I ( not see) you since we met a year ago.

*I did not see you since we met a year ago.*

13. My youngest brother (get) a new job a week ago.

*My youngest brother got a new job a week ago.*

14. I (buy) one like it a month ago.

*I bought one like it a month ago.*

مثال

أعد كتابة الأفعال بين الأقواس ،

1. Columbus (discover) American more than 400 years ago.

*Columbus discovered American more than 400 years ago.*

2. I ( not see) you for more than a week.

*I did not see you for more than a week.*

3. Since when (you know ) him?

*Since when did you know him?*

4. They (come) here a month ago.

*They came here a month ago.*

5. He (not speak) to me for over three weeks.

*He did not speak to me for over three weeks.*

6. How long ago (you arrive) here?

*How long ago did you arrive here?*

7. We (finish) it supper half an hour ago.

*We finished it supper half an hour ago.*

8. She (not have) a holiday for four years.

*She did not have a holiday for four years.*

علامات تفاصيل الزمن

ولعل أهم ما يميز هذا الرابط هو تفاصيل

since	أي أن الحدث قد حدث منذ مدة تاريخ
for	أي أن الحدث قد حدث لمدة من الزمن
just	أي أن الحدث قد حدث منذ لحظة وجيزة
already	أي أن الحدث قد حدث منذ فترة
yet	حتى الآن، تستخدم في النفي والإستفهام

مثال

I (have) gone to school.

لقد ذهبت الى المدرسة. (لم أحدد الوقت)، لذلك نعتبره ان الحدث قد حدث، و أصبح مفعولاً

Mr. Hamed (has) studied English for 3 years.

لقد درس السيد حامد اللغة الإنجليزية لمدة ثلاث أعوام. (لم نحدد الوقت)،

Adel and his family (have) lived on this street since 1920.

لقد عاش عادل وعائلته في هذا الشارع منذ عام 1920. لاحظ اننا في هذه الحالة غير متأكدين ان كان لا يزال يعيش هناك أم لا، نعرف أنه قد عاش هناك منذ ذلك الزمن

I (have) just seen two car accidents here.

لقد رأيت حادثين للسيارات هنا من فترة وجيزة فقط.

الباب الأول

الفصل العاشر

رابط

قد فعلت have, has

يكثر استعمال الروابط { have, has, had } كثيراً في اللغة الإنجليزية و يأتي الخبر بعدها بصور وتعبيرات عديدة مختلفة،

أولاً، الخبر بعد { have, has } وتعبير "لقد فعلت"

يأتي الخبر صفة بصيغة المفعول بعد الرابط { have, has } ليخبرنا عن حدث ما أنه قد حدث من دون تحديد دقيق لزمن حدوثه، ويكون الخبر فعلاً بصيغة المفعول أي ان الفعل قد تم فعله و أصبح مفعولاً أي أنه حدث. وتستخدم هذه الصيغة للإخبار عن حدث وقع في الماضي دون تحديد دقيق لوقت حدوث الفعل، ويمكننا أن نقول منذ كذا، و لمدة كذا، أما إذا تم تحديد زمن حدوث الفعل في الماضي فإننا نستخدم الرابط did

مثال

لقد ذهبت إلى نيويورك منذ عامين.  
لقد سكنت في نيويورك لمدة ثلاث أعوام.  
لقد وصلت هذه اللحظة إلى نيويورك.  
هل قد وصلت إلى نيويورك؟

Do I have two houses?  
I did not have time.  
He has had that house for two years.

مثال

has , have هنا بمعنى يأكل، و ليست رابط

I have lunch at 12 O'clock.  
Do you have lunch every day?  
I had dinner last night.  
She hasn't had dinner tonight.  
Did you have dinner last night?

• كلمة has to , have to تأتي بمعنى يجب علي

وهي، تختلف عن الرابط have، لأنها فعل و تعامل  
معاملة الفعل. تأتي مع الرابط do, did الذان  
يحذفان في جملة الإثبات و بظهرين في جملة النفي  
و السؤال.

مثال

1. I don't have to get up so early every morning.
2. He told me he didn't have to work any more.
3. Why do you have to give him so much money.
4. I'm afraid I have to go now.
5. Do they have to travel with us?
6. I don't have to sleep there, do I ?
7. You don't have to do what your sister tells you

الفرق بين الرابط has – have , did

The youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya has already proven the great impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

ملاحظات هامة

- هذا الرابط لا يحدف أبدا
- كلمة has , have التي تأتي بمعنى يملك أو بمعنى يأكل، تختلف عن الرابط have، لأنها فعل و تعامل معاملة الفعل. تأتي مع الرابط do, did الذان يحذفان في جملة الإثبات و يظهرين في جملة النفي و السؤال. وأحيانا يستخدم البريطانيون كلمة got مع have، has لتبيان الفرق بين الرابط ، وبين كلمة يملك

مثال

has , have هنا بمعنى يملك، و ليست رابط  
I have two houses.  
She does not have two houses.  
Do I have two houses?  
I did not have time.  
He has had that house for two years.

مثال

يستخدم البريطانيون got للتفريق بين الرابط have, has وبين كلمة have بمعنى يملك ولا تستخدم في النفي و السؤال (لماذا؟)  
لأن في صيغة السؤال و النفي يظهر الرابط did, do فلم يعد هناك حاجة لوجودها

has , have هنا بمعنى يملك، و ليست رابط  
I have got two houses.  
She does not have two houses.

لاحظ وجود علامات الزمن

yesterday, last week

الرابط **have, has**

She has lived in Canada.

She has lived in Canada **for 10 years.**

She has lived in Canada **since 1990.**

She has **just** lived in Canada.

لاحظ وجود علامات الزمن since, for, just

### صيغة النفي

حسب قاعدة HeN تنفي الجملة بإدخال not على

الرابط : have not, has not

ويمكن إختصار الرابط مع not كما يلي:-

have not = haven't = 've not

has not = hasn't. = 's not

لاحظ، أنه إذا كان الرابط مختصر، لا يمكن إختصار

not

He **has not** drunk his coffee yet.

They **haven't** eaten their breakfast.

مثال

أنفي الجمل التالية، وأكملها بالتفصيل المناسب، since,

? for

1. I have seen you ...

(a) Christmas (b) three days

*I haven't seen you since Christmas.*

*I haven't seen you for three days.*

2. We've been here ...

يكون الخبر بعد الرابط did فعل بصيغة الفعل الأولى ( التصريف الأول) ليبدل على حدث حدث في الماضي ، وعادة ما يحتوي الخبر على تفاصيل علامات زمن محددة تحدد حدوث الحدث في الماضي مثل

yesterday, last week, last month, last year, ago, early this year.

بينما يكون الخبر بعد الرابط have-has صفة المفعول ( التصريف الثالث) ليبدل على حدث قد حدث في الماضي ، وقد يحتوي الخبر على تفاصيل وعلامات الزمن المستخدمة مثل

Since, fore, just, already, yet

مثال

الرابط **did**

They (did) live in Canada last year.

They lived in Canada last year.

لاحظ وجود علامات الزمن last year

الرابط **have, has**

They have lived in Canada.

They have lived in Canada **for 10 years.**

They have lived in Canada **since 1990.**

They have **just** lived in Canada.

They have **already** lived in Canada.

مثال

الرابط **did**

She (did) went to the mall yesterday.

She went to the mall last week..

8. I have eaten any meat .....

- (a) over a day (b) Tuesday

9. Everybody has written to me .....

- (a) Many weeks (b) my birthday

*Nobody has written to me for many weeks.*

*Nobody has written to me since my birthday.*

لاحظ تغير everybody الى Nobody في النفي

10. You have sent me some money ....

- (a) last Saturday (b) the last fortnight

*You haven't sent me any money since last Saturday.*

*You haven't sent me any money for the last fortnight.*

لاحظ تغير some الى any في النفي

11. She has worn the same old dress ....

- (a) at least a month (b) the beginning of the month

*She has worn the same old dress for at least a month.*

*She has worn the same old dress since the beginning of the month.*

12. I have spoken Spanish

- (a) 1950 (b) ten years

*I haven't spoken Spanish since 1950.*

*I haven't spoken Spanish for ten years.*

13. I have ridden a bicycle .....

- (a) many many years  
(b) my childhood

- (a) an hour and a half (b) January

*We've not been here for an hour and a half.*

*We've not been here since January.*

3. She has spoken to me .....

- (a) More than two years (b) last week

*She hasn't spoken to me for more than two years.*

*She hasn't spoken to me since last week.*

4. They have lived in this street ....

- (a) 1919 (b) a long time  
(c) the last ten years

*They haven't lived in this street since 1919.*

*They haven't lived in this street for a long time.*

*They haven't lived in this street for the last ten years.*

5. I have had time to do it .....

- (a) a week (b) last Monday

*I haven't had time to do it for a week.*

*I haven't had time to do it since last Monday.*

6. We have bought new ones ...

- (a) a week (b) ages (c) then

*We haven't bought new ones for a week.*

*We haven't bought new ones for ages.*

*We haven't bought new ones since then.*

7. There has been a famine .....

- (a) centuries (b) the Middle ages

*There has not been a famine for centuries.*

*There hasn't been a famine since the Middle ages.*

مثال

أسئل عن الجمل بأسئلة من نوع نعم أو لا؟

تذكر أن طريقة الحل تقديم الرابط على المبتداء،

1) I haven't seen you since Christmas.

*Have I seen you since Christmas?*

2) It has rained here for more than month.

*Has it rained here for more than month?*

3) I haven't ridden a bicycle since my childhood.

*Have you ridden a bicycle since your childhood?*

*Have ridden a bicycle since my childhood?*

4) King Arthur, the king of nowhere, has not spoken Spanish since 1750.

*Has King Arthur, the king of nowhere, spoken Spanish since 1750?*

5) The youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya **has** already proven the great impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

*Has the youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya already proven the great impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.*

طريقة الإجابة على أسئلة نعم أو لا كتابياً

*I haven't ridden a bicycle for many many years.  
I haven't ridden a bicycle since my childhood.*

14. It has rained here .....

(a) more than month (b) March

*It hasn't rained here for more than month.*

*It hasn't rained here since March.*

صيغة الأسئلة و الإستفهام

أولاً، الإستفهام بأسئلة يكون جوابها بصيغة "نعم" أو "لا"،

حسب قاعدة HCN في هذه الحالة نقدم الرابط على المبتداء،

مثال

She has lived in Canada.

She **(has)** lived in Canada.

نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في نهاية الجملة.

**Has** she lived in Canada?

مثال

We both **(have)** enjoy the movie.

نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في نهاية الجملة.

Have we both listen enjoy the movie.



*Has the youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya proven the impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world?*

*Yes, it has.*

*No, it has not.*

*No, it hasn't.*

مثال

Better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe have enabled the petroleum companies to find more oil.

*Have better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe enabled the petroleum companies to find more oil?*

*Yes, they have.*

*No, they do have.*

*No, they haven't.*

ثانياً، أسئلة طلب التأكيد و الموافقة، مثل أليس كذلك؟

ويتكون هذا النوع من الأسئلة من ثلاث أجزاء رئيسية:

• الجملة الرئيسية

مثال

I haven't seen you since Christmas.

*Have I seen you since Christmas?*

*Yes, you have.*

*No, you haven't.*

لاحظ تفاصيل الإجابة، استبدال المبتداء بضمير يعود عليه وكذلك وعلامات الترقيم الفاصلة، و طبعاً النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

مثال

هذا سؤال كلاسيكي، دائماً يتكرر و يخطئ فيه الطلاب.

Have you ridden a bicycle since my childhood? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

A. I have

B. You have.

C. You Have

D. you have

الجواب الصحيح ( D ) ، يجب تغير ضمير المتكلم ، الى المخاطب. و لاحظ ان ان الإضافة في نصف الجملة، لذلك C خطأ لأن بدايتها حرف كبير.

مثال

The youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya has proven the impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

أسئل عن الجمل بأسئلة من نوع نعم أو لا ؟

تذكر أن طريقة الحل تقديم الرابط على المبتداء،

6) I haven't seen you since Christmas.

*Have I seen you since Christmas?*

7) It has rained here for more than month.

*Has it rained here for more than month?*

8) I haven't ridden a bicycle since my childhood.

*Have you ridden a bicycle since your childhood?*

*Have ridden a bicycle since my childhood?*

9) King Arthur, the king of nowhere, has not spoken Spanish since 1750.

*Has King Arthur, the king of nowhere, spoken Spanish since 1750?*

10) The youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya **has** already proven the great impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

*Has the youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya already proven the great impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.*

طريقة الإجابة على أسئلة نعم أو لا كتابياً

مثال

● فاصلة

● سؤال التأكيد من نوع نعم أو لا

● جواب سؤال التأكيد، ويكون مثل

جواب سؤال نعم أو لا، بنفس التشكيلة.

مثال

I haven't seen you since Christmas, *have I?*

*Yes, you have.*

*No, you haven't.*

الجملة الرئيسية

I haven't seen you since Christmas

، فاصلة

سؤال التأكيد *have I?*

جواب التأكيد *Yes, you have.*

*No, you haven't.*

مثال

I have seen you since Christmas, *haven't I?*

*Yes, you haven't.*

*No, you have.*

الجملة الرئيسية

I haven't seen you since Christmas

، فاصلة

سؤال التأكيد *haven't I?*

جواب التأكيد *Yes, you haven't.*

*No, you have.*

ملاحظة، سؤال التأكيد يكون عكس الجملة

الرئيسية من حيث النفي و الإثبات

مثال

of new technologies such as Facebook on the world?

Yes, it has.

No, it has not.

No, it hasn't.

مثال

Better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe have enabled the petroleum companies to find more oil.

*Have better knowledge and understanding of the Earth's shell and technological advances—for example, a Japanese drill ship equipped with six miles (ten kilometers) of drilling pipe enabled the petroleum companies to find more oil?*

Yes, they have.

No, they do have.

No, they haven't.

ثانياً، أسئلة طلب التأكيد و الموافقة، مثل اليس كذلك؟

ويتكون هذا النوع من الأسئلة من ثلاث أجزاء رئيسية:

- الجملة الرئيسية
- فاصلة
- سؤال التأكيد من نوع نعم أو لا
- جواب سؤال التأكيد، ويكون مثل جواب سؤال نعم أو لا، بنفس التشكيلة.

I haven't seen you since Christmas.

*Have I seen you since Christmas?*

Yes, you have.

No, you haven't.

لاحظ تفاصيل الإجابة، إستبدال المبتداء بضمير يعود عليه وكذلك وعلامات الترقيم الفاصلة، وطبعاً النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

مثال

هذا سؤال كلاسيكي، دائماً يتكرر و يخطئ فيه الطلاب.

Have you ridden a bicycle since my childhood? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

- E. I have
- F. You have.
- G. You Have
- H. you have

الجواب الصحيح ( D ) ، يجب تغير ضمير المتكلم ، الى المخاطب. و لاحظ ان ان الإضافة في نصف الجملة، لذلك C خطأ لأن بدايتها حرف كبير.

مثال

The youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya has proven the impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

*Has the youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya proven the impact*

*Do you have any like this?*

10. Have you a dog?

*Do you have a dog?*

11. I'm sorry, I haven't time to do it.

*I'm sorry, I do not have time to do it.*

12. Have you the tickets ?

*Do you have the tickets ?*

13. He has plenty in his shop.

*He does not have plenty in his shop.*

*Does he have plenty on his shop.*

14. She has got some lovely flowers in her garden.

*She does not have any lovely flowers in her garden?*

*Does she have any lovely flowers in her garden?*

15. Have they your address ?

*Do they have your address ?*

16. We have some new photos to show you.

*Do you have some new photos to show me?.*

17. The cat hasn't anything to eat.

*The cat does not have anything to eat.*

*Does the cat have anything to eat?*

18. Have you someone to help you?

*Do you have anyone to help you?*

19. I've plenty of time now.

*I do not have plenty of time now.*

*Do I have plenty of time now?*

مثال

I haven't seen you since Christmas, *have I?*

*Yes, you have.*

*No, you haven't.*

الجملة الرئيسية

I haven't seen you since Christmas

فاصلة

سؤال التأكيد *have I?*

جواب التأكيد *Yes, you have.*

*No, you haven't.*

مثال

I have seen you since Christmas, *haven't I?*

*Yes, you haven't.*

*No, you have.*

الجملة الرئيسية

I haven't seen you since Christmas

فاصلة

سؤال التأكيد *haven't I?*

جواب التأكيد *Yes, you haven't.*

*No, you have.*

ملاحظة، سؤال التأكيد يكون عكس الجملة

الرئيسية من حيث النفي و الإثبات

مثال

أعد صياغة ك من الجمل التالية بصيغة النفي و

صيغة السؤال:-

8. I have some more at home.

*I do not have any more at home.*

*Do you have any more at home?*

9. He hadn't any like this.

*He did not have any like this?*

- They (left, have left ) a few minutes ago.

1 (الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة ago في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط did  
left = did leave

- She (has not been, was not) employed since she left school.<sub>1</sub>

(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة since في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط have, has

- They (finalized, have finalized ) the contract last week.<sub>1</sub>

(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة last week في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط did  
finalized = did finalize

- The film (hasn't started, didn't start ) yet.<sub>1</sub>

(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة yet في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط have, has

- I (have finished, finished ) the project last night.<sub>2</sub>

(الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)  
مع علامة last night في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط did  
Finished = did finish

- Look! someone (left, has left) their handbag in the room.<sub>2</sub>

(الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)  
وقوع الحدث في الماضي غير محدد، نستعمل الرابط have, has

- I can't get into my house because I (lost, have lost) my keys.<sub>2</sub>

(الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)

20. Have you everything you want?

*Do you have everything you want?*

21. I hadn't any money on me.

*I did not have money on me.  
Did you have any money on you?*

22. I haven't any now.

*I do not have any now?  
Do you have any now?*

23. He asked me for some chocolate, but I hadn't any.

*He asked me for some chocolate, but I did not have any.*

24. I've enough money to buy two.

*I do not have enough money to buy two.  
Do you have enough money to buy two?*

25. Has he a job now ?

*Does he have a job now?*

26. What have you to show me ?

*What do you have to show me ?*

27. Haven't they anything better to do?

*Don't they have anything better thing to do?*

مثال

أكمل الجملة بأختيار الكلمة الصحيحة من بين الأقواس؟

- I (haven't seen, didn't see ) her since last year. <sub>1</sub> (الجواب ، الخيار الأول)

مع علامة since في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط have, has

- I (haven't had, didn't have) breakfast before leaving home this morning.<sub>1</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة *before* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*
- My stereo (stopped, has stopped) working last night.<sub>1</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة *yesterday* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *did*
- I (didn't have, haven't had) a holiday for ages.<sub>2</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)  
مع علامة *for ages* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*
- We (haven't gone, didn't go ) out on Saturday night.<sub>2</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)  
مع الماضي المحدد في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*
- I (bought, have bought) it last week.<sub>1</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة *last week* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *did*
- I (learnt, have learnt) to water-ski in 1993.<sub>1</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع الماضي المحدد في الجملة، نستعمل الرابط *did*
- She (made, have made) an absolute fortune last year.<sub>1</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة *last year* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *did*

وقوع الحدث في الماضي غير محدد، نستعمل الرابط  
*have, has*

- I (have given, gave) up smoking last year.<sub>2</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)  
مع علامة *last year* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *did*  
*Gave = did give*
- I (haven't heard, didn't hear) from her lately.<sub>1</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة *lately* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*
- I ( saw, have seen) just Meg and Brian at the party.<sub>2</sub> (الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)  
مع علامة *just* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*
- I (new, have known) them since my schooldays.<sub>2</sub> (الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)  
مع علامة *since* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*
- He (hasn't arrived, didn't arrive) yet.<sub>1</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الأول)  
مع علامة *yet* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*
- They (didn't sign, haven't signed) the contract yet.<sub>2</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)  
مع علامة *yet* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*
- He (died, has died) during the war. <sub>2</sub>  
(الجواب ، الخيار الثاني)  
مع علامة *during* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*

- No one (has managed, managed) to do it **yet**.<sub>2</sub>

( الجواب ، الخيار الثاني )

مع علامة *yet* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *have, has*

- I (finished, have finished ) the exam in time **yesterday**.<sub>1</sub>

( الجواب ، الخيار الأول )

مع علامة *yesterday* في الجملة ، نستعمل الرابط *did*

- صفة مازالت مستمرة من صفات المفعول (أي صفة ماقول بالمبتداء)

My heart **has been** broken for 3 years.  
قلبي مازال مكسوراً منذ ثلاث أعوام.

أي ان الخبر في الحالات الثلاث يخبرنا عن صفة مازالت مستمرة من صفات امبتداء، أو صفة فعل المبتداء، أو صفة ما فعل بالمبتداء.

### علاماته

في تقاصي الخبر عادة ماتستخدم كلمة since, for

مثال

**He has been** fat since 1990.  
أنه مازال بدينياً منذ عام 1990.

**Adel and his family have been** living on this street since 1920.

مازال عادل وعائلته مقيمين في هذا الشارع منذ عام 1920. لاحظ الخبر صفة إستمرار الفعل

The youth revolution early this year in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya **has been** proving the great impact of new technologies such as Facebook on the world.

### ملاحظات هامة

- هذا الرابط لا يحدف أبداً
- كلمة has , have التي تأتي بمعنى يملك أو بمعنى يأكل، تختلف عن الرابط have been ، لانها فعل و تعامل معاملة الفعل.

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الحادي عشر

#### رابط " مازلت "....

#### have been, has been

يسمي الرابط { have been, has been } بروابط "مازلت...."، لأن الخبر بعدها يخبرنا عن صفة مازالت مستمرة من صفات المبتداء، و عادة ما يأتي في الخبر الصفات المشتقة من الأفعال التي تدل على ثبات الحالة، مثل sitting, standing, waiting, laying, learning, living, sleeping, resting,

مثال

- صفة مستمرة من صفات المبتداء
- have been** busy for the past few weeks.

أنا مازلت مشغولاً منذ بضعة أسابيع، أي أن الخبر صفة busy

- صفة مازالت مستمرة من صفات فعل المبتداء
- Mr. Hamed **has been** studying English for 3 years.

السيد حامد مازال يدرس اللغة الإنجليزية لمدة ثلاث أعوام. لاحظ الخبر صفة إستمرار الفعل، أي أن الخبر صفة إستمرار الفعل ( الفعل + ing ) studying



الرابط have been, has been

They have been living in Canada.  
They have been living in Canada **for 10 years.**  
They have been living in Canada **since 1990.**

She has been living in Canada.  
She has been living in Canada **for 10 years.**  
She has been living in Canada **since 1990.**

صيغة النفي

حسب قاعدة HcN تنفي الجملة بإدخال not على  
الرابط بين have , been

have **not** been, has **not** been

ويمكن إختصار الرابط مع not كما يلي:-

have not been = haven't been= 've not been

has not been = hasn't. been= 's not been

لاحظ، أنه إذا كان الرابط مختصر، لا يمكن إختصار

not

He **has not** been drinking coffee.

They **haven't been** eating out.

They'ven't been eating out. خطأ

مثال

أنفي الجمل التالية ، وأكملها بالتفصيل المناسب ، since,

? for

1. I have been (smoke) ...

(a) Christmas (b) three days

*I haven't been smoking since Christmas.*

*I haven't been smoking for three days.*

الفرق بين الرابط

Have, has ↔ have been, has been

• يستخدم الرابط have-has ليبدل على حدث قد حدث في الماضي من دون تحديد دقيق لوقت حدوثه ، وعادة ما يحتوي الخبر على تفاصيل وعلامات الزمن المستخدمة مثل

Since, fore, just, already, yet

• بينما يدل الرابط have been-has been عن صفة مازالت مستمرة من صفات المبتداء، أو صفة فعل المبتداء، أو صفة ما فعل بالمبتداء. وقد يحتوي الخبر على تفاصيل وعلامات الزمن المستخدمة مثل Since, for، ولكن الخبر لا يحتوي على تفاصيل وعلامات الزمن المستخدمة مثل just, already, yet

مثال

الرابط have, has

They have lived in Canada.

They have lived in Canada **for 10 years.**

They have lived in Canada **since 1990.**

They have **just** lived in Canada.

They have **already** lived in Canada.

She has lived in Canada.

She has lived in Canada **for 10 years.**

She has lived in Canada **since 1990.**

She has **just** lived in Canada.

لاحظ وجود علامات الزمن Since, for, just, already

*I haven't been eating any meat for over a day.*

*I haven't been eating any meat since Tuesday.*

9. Everybody has (write) to me .....

- (a) Many weeks (b) my birthday

*Nobody has been writing to me for many weeks.*

*Nobody has been writing to me since my birthday.*

لاحظ تغير everybody الى Nobody في النفي

10. You have (send) me some money ....

- (a) last Saturday (b) the last fortnight

*You haven't been sending me any money since last Saturday.*

*You haven't been sending me any money for the last fortnight.*

لاحظ تغير some الى any في النفي

11. She has (wear) the same old dress ....

- (a) at least a month (b) the beginning of the month

*She has not been wearing the same old dress for at least a month.*

*She has not been wearing the same old dress since the beginning of the month.*

12. I have (speak) Spanish

- (a) 1950 (b) ten years

*I haven't been speaking Spanish since 1950.*

*I haven't been speaking Spanish for ten years.*

13. I have (ride) a bicycle .....

- (a) many many years

2. We've been (talk) ...

- (a) an hour and a half (b) January

*We've not been talking for an hour and a half.*

*We've not been talking since January.*

3. She has (speak) to me .....

- (a) two years (b) last week

*She hasn't been speaking to me for two years.*

*She hasn't been speaking to me since last week.*

4. They have (live) here ....

- (a) 1919 (b) a long time  
(c) the last ten years

*They haven't been living here since 1919.*

*They haven't been living here for a long time.*

*They haven't been living here for the last ten years.*

5. I have (had) time to do it .....

- (a) a week (b) last Monday

*I haven't been having time to do it for a week.*

*I haven't been having time to do it since last Monday.*

6. We have (buy) new ones ...

- (a) a week (b) ages (c) then

*We haven't been buying new ones for a week.*

*We haven't been buying new ones for ages.*

*We haven't been buying new ones since then.*

8. I have (eat) any meat .....

- (a) over a day (b) Tuesday

*They haven't been living here since 1919.*  
*They haven't been living here for a long time.*  
*They haven't been living here for the last ten years.*

5. I have (had) time to do it .....

- (a) a week (b) last Monday

*I haven't been having time to do it for a week.*  
*I haven't been having time to do it since last Monday.*

6. We have (buy) new ones ...

- (a) a week (b) ages (c) then

*We haven't been buying new ones for a week.*  
*We haven't been buying new ones for ages.*  
*We haven't been buying new ones since then.*

8. I have (eat) any meat .....

- (a) over a day (b) Tuesday

*I haven't been eating any meat for over a day.*  
*I haven't been eating any meat since Tuesday.*

9. Everybody has (write) to me .....

- (a) Many weeks (b) my birthday

*Nobody has been writing to me for many weeks.*  
*Nobody has been writing to me since my birthday.*

لاحظ تغير everybody الى Nobody في النفي

10. You have (send) me some money ....

- (a) last Saturday (b) the last fortnight

*You haven't been sending me any money since last Saturday.*

(b) my childhood

*I haven't been riding a bicycle for many many years.*

*I haven't been riding a bicycle since my childhood.*

14. It has (rain) here .....

- (a) more than month (b) March

*It hasn't been raining here for more than month.*

*It hasn't been raining here since March.*

مثال

أنفي الجمل التالية ، وأكملها بالتفصيل المناسب،  
 ؟ since, for

1. I have been (smoke) ...

- (a) Christmas (b) three days

*I haven't been smoking since Christmas.*

*I haven't been smoking for three days.*

2. We've been (talk) ...

- (a) an hour and a half (b) January

*We've not been talking for an hour and a half.*

*We've not been talking since January.*

3. She has (speak) to me .....

- (a) two years (b) last week

*She hasn't been speaking to me for two years.*

*She hasn't been speaking to me since last week.*

4. They have (live) here ....

- (a) 1919 (b) a long time  
 (c) the last ten years

- b) Has been  
( b ) الجواب
- ..... to Rome?  
a) Did you ever go  
b) Have you ever been  
( b ) الجواب
  - ..... to the United States last year?  
a) Did you go  
b) Have you ever been  
( a ) الجواب
  - I ..... busy for the past fortnight  
a) was  
b) have been  
( a ) الجواب
  - She ..... away for the last two weeks  
a) has been  
b) was  
( b ) الجواب
  - ..... to the concert on Friday?  
a) Did you go  
b) Have you been  
( a ) الجواب
  - This is the first time I ..... here.  
a) have been  
b) was  
( a ) الجواب
  - The newspaper ..... very successful lately.  
a) hasn't been  
b) wasn't

*You haven't been sending me any money for the last fortnight.*

لاحظ تغير some الى any في النفي

11. She has (wear) the same old dress ....  
(a) at least a month (b) the beginning of the month

*She has not been wearing the same old dress for at least a month.*

*She has not been wearing the same old dress since the beginning of the month.*

12. I have (speak) Spanish  
(a) 1950 (b) ten years

*I haven't been speaking Spanish since 1950.*

*I haven't been speaking Spanish for ten years.*

13. I have (ride) a bicycle .....  
(a) many many years  
(b) my childhood

*I haven't been riding a bicycle for many many years.*

*I haven't been riding a bicycle since my childhood.*

14. It has (rain) here .....  
(a) more than month (b) March

*It hasn't been raining here for more than month.*

*It hasn't been raining here since March.*

مثال

أكمل الجمل التالية ؟

- He ..... sick.  
a) Has

6. He ( learn) English for three years, but he can't even read a newspaper yet.

*He has been learning English for three years, but....*

7. The cat (sit) in front of the fire all day.

*The cat has been sitting in front of the fire all day.*

8. " I ( look) at this picture for the last five minutes, but I can't see you in it".

*" I have been looking at this picture for the last five minutes, but I can't see you in it".*

9. You must wake her up. She (sleep) soundly for more than ten hours.

*You must wake her up. She has been sleeping soundly for more than ten hours.*

10. How long (you learn) English?

*How long have you been learning English?*

مثال

أعد كتابة الأفعال بين الأقواس ؟

11. I (look for) my pen all day, but I (not find) it yet.

*I have been looking for my pen all day, but I haven't found it yet.*

12. I (not see) you for a long time.

*I have not seen you for a long time.*

13. I (try) to learn English for years, but I (no succeed) yet.

*I have been trying to learn English for years, but I have not succeed yet.*

الجواب ( a )

- Two people ..... at the game on Saturday

- a) were arrested
- b) have been arrested

الجواب ( a )

- She hasn't ..... here for ages

- a) been
- b) gone

مثال

أعد كتابة الأفعال بين الأقواس

1. I (live) here since 1950.

*I have been living here since 1950.*

2. He (work) in this factory for ten years.

*He has been working in this factory for ten years.*

3. You (wait) long for me ?

" Yes, I ( stand) here in the rain for half an hour".

*Have you been waiting long for me?*

*" Yes, I have been standing here in the rain for half an hour".*

4. Look! That light ( burn) all night .

*Look! That light has been burning all night .*

5. Lunch is not quite ready yet, although I ( cook) all the morning .

*... , I have been cooking all the morning.*

1. I (wait) here ..... five O'clock.  
*I have been waiting here since five O'clock.*
2. I ( write) letters ..... the last two hours.  
*I have been writing letters for the last two hours.*
3. She (not wear) that dress ..... two years.  
*She has not worn that dress for two years.*
4. I (read) two novels ..... yesterday.  
*I read two novels yesterday.*  
*I have read two novels since yesterday.*
5. We (study) English .....only six months.  
*We have been studying English for only six months.*
6. " How long that fire ( burn)? " " ..... last night. "  
*"How long that fire has been burning? " " since last night. "*
7. Coal (get) dearer ..... last year.  
*Coal has been getting dearer since last year.*
8. " you (see) John lately?" " Not .... three or four days."  
*"Have you seen John lately?" " Not for three or four days."*
9. I (write) four letters ..... breakfast.  
*I have written four letters since breakfast.*
10. I'm sure that boy ( not wash) his face ..... yesterday.  
*I'm sure that boy has not washed his face since yesterday.*
14. You already (drink) three cups of tea since I (sit) here.  
*You already have drunk three cups of tea since I have sit here.*
15. I (wait) here for my friend since five O'clock, but he (not come) yet.  
*I have been waiting here for my friend since five O'clock, but he has not come yet.*
16. My watch (go) for three days and it (not stop) yet.  
*My watch has been going for three days and it has not stopped yet.*
17. That fine tree (stand) near our home ever since I was a boy. I'm glad they (not cut) it down yet.  
*That fine tree has been standing near our home ever since I was a boy. I'm glad they have not cut it down yet.*
18. They (shut up) the house and ( go away) for a holiday.  
*They have shut up the house and have gone away for a holiday.*
19. I know you ( talk) about grammar for the last half an hour, but I'm afraid I (not listen).  
*I know you have been talking about grammar for the last half an hour, but I'm afraid I have not been listening.*

مثال

أعد كتابة الأفعال بين الأقواس ، وأكملها بالتفصيل  
المناسب، since, for

11. " you (visit) your uncle recently? " "  
not .....last Monday."

*" Have you visited your uncle recently? " " not  
since last Monday."*

12. I ( stand) here ..... half an hour , but  
the bus ( not come) yet.

*I have been standing here for half an hour , but  
the bus has not come yet.*

13. How many word you (learn) ..... our  
last lesson?

*How many word you have you learnt since our  
last lesson?*

14. We (sit) on these hard seats.... nearly  
an hour.

*We have been sitting on these hard seats for  
nearly an hour.*

15. "How often you (speak) to him  
recently?" "Twice ..... last week."

*"How often have you been speaking to him  
recently?" "Twice since last week."*

الانجليزية، و في هذا النوع من الروابط تتجلى عظمة قاعدة المبتداء- الرابط - الخبر التي أتمنى أن تكون قد لاحظتها الآن.

### صيغة النفي

حسب قاعدة HcN تنفي الجملة بإدخال not على الرابط

can not, could not,  
may not, might not  
shall not, should not  
will not, would not  
must not, ought not to

ويمكن إختصار بعض هذه الروابط مع not كما يلي:-

cannot = can't  
could not = couldn't  
should not = shouldn't

ويمكن إختصار shall, will مع ال المبتداء كما يلي:-

I will = I'll  
She shall = She'll

مثال

I can swim.  
I can not swim.  
I can't swim.

You may go to school.  
You may not go to school.

You must bring your homework now.  
I must not bring my homework now.

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الثاني عشر

رابط " الإحتملات و القدرة والإلزام...."

**can, could, shall, should,  
will, would, may, might,  
must, ought to**

يسمي الرابط { can, could, shall, should }  
{ may, might, must, ought, } بروابط " الإحتملات و القدرة، " لأنها تفيد مايمكن أن يكون أو ماينبغي عمله، أو مايمكن عمله بدرجات مختلفة من الجزم و الألزام و التأكيد

مثال

Mr. Hamed can speak English.  
You shall learn to swim by summer.  
He may visit us next week.  
You must pray now.  
You ought to go home now.  
You will go home.  
You would do this.

تأمل الروابط can, shall, may, must, will, would ought... في الجمل السابقة التالية، ستجد ان خبر هذه الروابط عادة ما يكون فعل في صيغته الأولى، وفي السابق كانت هذا النوع من الجمل يشكل مصدر إزعاج لطلاب و طالبات اللغة الإنجليزية، عند تحويل الجملة الى صيغة النفي و الإثبات، و لكن بحمد الله فأن قاعدة المبتداء- الرابط - الخبر سهلت التعامل مع جميع تركيبات اللغة



صيغة الأسئلة و الإستفهام

أولاً، الإستفهام بأسئلة يكون جوابها بصيغة "نعم" أو "لا"،

حسب قاعدة HcN في هذه الحالة تقدم الرابط على المبتداء، لاحظ ان الرابط يتكون من ك

مثال

She can live in Canada.

She (can) live in Canada.

نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في نهاية الجملة.

Can she live in Canada?

مثال

We both (will) enjoy the movie.

نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في نهاية الجملة.

Will we both listen enjoy the movie?

استخدام الروابط

• الرابط can يستخدم في أربع حالات

1. في صيغة السؤال، إذا كان المبتداء يمثل

السؤال صيغة طلب الأذن بأسلوب مؤدب

Can I borrow your car?

2. في صيغة الخطاب، إذا كان المبتداء you تكون الجملة بمعنى الأذن و السماح، بأسلوب خالي من الرسمية، كالحديث مع زملائك في الصف و أصدقائك المقربين

You can come late tomorrow.

تستطيع أن تأتي متأخراً يوم الغد

3. في صيغة الإخبار، يكون معنى can يستطيع

He can speak English.

هو يستطيع أن يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية

4. في صيغة الإخبار المنفية مع كلمة be، بمعنى الإستحالة

This can't be true.

من المستحيل أن يكون هذا صحيحاً

• الرابط could يستخدم في أربع حالات

3. في صيغة السؤال، إذا كان المبتداء يمثل السؤال

صيغة طلب الأذن بأسلوب مؤدب

Could I borrow your car?

4. في صيغة الخطاب، إذا كان المبتداء you تكون الجملة بمعنى الإقتراح

You could talk to your boss.

أقترح عليك أن تتحدث الى رئيسك في العمل.

3. في صيغة الإخبار، يكون الإخبار عن حدث نسبة حدوثه 50%

Where is Khalid? He could be at home..

من المحتمل أن يكون في المنزل

5. في صيغة الإخبار المنفية مع كلمة be، بمعنى الإستحالة

This couldn't be true.

- إذا كان المبتداء I ، we فإن الجملة تكون  
بمعنى الالتزام أو ما ينبغي علينا فعله،

I should go home now.

ينبغي على الذهاب الى المنزل الآن

We should not be late tomorrow.

ينبغي علينا ان لا نأتي متأخرين يوم الغد.

- في صيغة الإخبار، تمثل الجملة خبر نسبة احتمال  
حدوثه 90% تقريبا

He should come tomorrow.

قد يأتي يوم الغد (احتمال 90%)

• الرابط would يستخدم في ثلاث حالات

- في صيغة السؤال، إذا كان المبتداء you ، فإن  
الجملة تستخدم لطلب الشيء بطريقة مؤدبة،

Would you please give me your pen?

- في صيغة الإخبار، مع كلمة rather، تعني تفضيل  
شيء على آخر

I would rather stay home than visit him.

أنا أفضل البقاء في المنزل علي زيارته

- في صيغة الإخبار، تأتي مع كلمة like على شكل  
أسلوب مؤدب لكلمة want

I would like a cup of coffee, please.

أريد كوب من القهوة، لو سمحت (أسلوب مؤدب)

ملاحظة، استخدام كلمة want فيها نوع من الإلحاح و  
الغلظة، لذلك تستخدم كلمة would like بدلاً عنها.

• الرابط will يستخدم في حالة واحدة

- في صيغة الإخبار، تمثل الجملة خبر سوف يحدث في  
المستقبل بنسبة 100%

من المستحيل أن يكون هذا صحيحاً

• الرابط may يستخدم في ثلاث حالات

6. في صيغة السؤال، إذا كان المبتداء I ،

we يمثل السؤال صيغة طلب الأذن  
بأسلوب مؤدب

May I borrow your car

7. في صيغة الخطاب، إذا كان المبتداء you

تكون الجملة بمعنى الأذن و السماح،  
بأسلوب فيه نوع من الرسمية، كالحديث مع  
المعلم و الوالدين

You may come late tomorrow.

يمكنك أن تأتي متأخراً يوم الغد

8. في صيغة الإخبار، تمثل الجملة خبر نسبة

إحتمال حدوثه 50% تقريبا

He may come late tomorrow.

قد يأتي متأخراً يوم الغد (احتمال 50%)

• الرابط might يستخدم في حالتين

- في صيغة السؤال، إذا كان المبتداء I ، we

يمثل السؤال صيغة طلب الأذن بأسلوب مؤدب  
ملاحظة، هذه الصيغة لا تستخدم كثيراً

Might I borrow your car?

9. في صيغة الإخبار، تمثل الجملة خبر نسبة

إحتمال حدوثه 50% تقريبا

He might come late tomorrow.

قد يأتي متأخراً يوم الغد (احتمال 50%)

• الرابط should يستخدم في ثلاث حالات

من الرئيس الى الموظفين لذلك فإنه يجب الحذر عند استخدام هذا الرابط، ومن الأخطاء الفظيعة الشائعة التي يرتكبها الطلاب العرب عند التحدث هو استخدام الرابط must مع معلمهم، فتجد الطالب يقول

You **must** help me with my homework.

لا تقل هذا لمعلمك الأجنبي أبداً ، لأنه قلة أدب

مثال

إملا الفراغ بأحد الروابط التالية، ثم أعد صياغة الجملة ؟

- a) could, b) can, c) shall, c) should, d) must  
e) may, f) might, g) ought to, h) will, i) would  
ملاحظة، أحد الإجابات الصحيحة معطى آخر الجملة

1. She ..... understand everything. (a)
2. He ..... speaks French. (b)
3. You ....come this morning. (e)
4. We ..... see as far as the mountains.(a)
5. You .... have another one tomorrow.(c)
6. You ..... look out of the window.(b)
7. Eric..... understand what you say. (b)
8. You ..... leave this room now!. (d)
9. He ..... have to stay longer.(h)
10. You..... have to read this book again.(h)
11. He ..... take it away.(d).
12. You ..... begin before 5 O'clock.(g)
13. You... have to wait for me tomorrow.(h)
14. You ..... do it without help.(g)

مثال

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية بصيغة النفي ؟

He will come home at 10.

من المؤكد، أنه سوف يعود للمنزل الساعة العاشرة.

• الرابط shall يستخدم في حالتين

- إذا كان المبتداء I، we ثممثل الجملة  
خير سوف يحدث في المستقبل

I shall come at 12:00.

We shall arrive soon.

في صيغة السؤال، إذا كان المبتداء ، فإن الجملة  
تستخدم لطلب الشيء بطريقة مؤدبة.

Shall I dance with you?

مممكن أرقص معاك ؟

• الرابط ought to يستخدم في ثلاث حالتين

- يأتي الرابط في الجملة بمعنى الإلزام أو النصح  
بما ينبغي فعله،

I **ought to** go home now.

ينبغي على الذهاب الى المنزل الآن

You **ought to** study hard tonight.

أنصحك، أن تدرس بجد هذه الليلة..

- في صيغة الإخبار، ثممثل توقع أو خبر نسبة  
إحتمال حدوثه %90 تقريبا

He **ought to** come tomorrow.

أتوقع قدومه يوم الغد.

• الرابط must يستخدم في ثلاث حالتين

يستخدم هذا الرابط لإصدار الأوامر الغير قابلة  
للتقاش مثل الأوامر العسكرية و كذلك اصدار الأوامر

2. You will have to come again.  
Will you have to come again?
3. They must leave before dinner.  
*Must they leave before dinner?*
4. She must wash up all the glasses.  
*Must she wash up all the glasses?*
5. We shall have to leave earlier than usual.  
*Shall we have to leave earlier than usual?*
6. You must answer at once.  
*Must you answer at once ?*
7. You'll have to bring your own ink with you.  
*Will I have to bring my ink with me?*  
*Will you have to bring your ink with you?*
8. You must eat them all.  
*Must you eat them all?*
9. I shall have to buy a new one.  
*Shall I have to buy a new one?*
10. They must learn the whole poem.  
*Must they learn the whole poem?*
11. She must wear a hat.  
*Must she wear that hat?*
12. You must do the whole exercise again.  
*Must you do the whole exercise again?*

مثال

تذكر إثبات النفي، يصبح نفياً، و نفي النفي يصبح إثبات

1. Can you drink tea?  
*No, I cannot.*
2. Mustn't you eat fish ?  
*Yes, I mustn't.*
3. Ought you to have any coffee?  
*No, I ought to not.*
4. Can you stay up late ?  
*No, I cannot.*
5. Will you have another cigarette?  
*No, I will not.*
6. Couldn't he telephone ?  
*Yes, I could not.*
7. Mustn't you go out so late at night ?  
*Yes, I mustn't.*
8. Can you speak Czech ?  
*No, I cannot.*
9. Ought he to work so hard ?  
*No, he ought to not.*

مثال

أعد صياغة جمل الأمر التالية بصيغة السؤال ؟

1. I must get there before eight.  
*Must I get there before eight?*

2. He can play chess.  
**(a)** this afternoon.  
(b) when he was young.
3. We can do this exercise  
**(a)** next week.  
(b) last week.
4. She can cook very well  
**(a)** with more practice.  
(b) when I knew her.
5. I can go early  
**(a)** if he lets me;  
(b) every day last summer.
6. I can go swimming:  
**(a)** when it warmer;  
(b) whenever I liked.
7. We can't find it;  
**(a)** until tomorrow;  
(b) when we looked for it
8. John can stay up late;  
**(a)** tonight;  
(b) even when he was a small boy.
9. I can meet you  
**(a)** on Saturday;  
(b) whenever I liked.
10. We can speak English  
**(a)** soon ;  
(b) when we were in London  
(b) from the top of the hill.

مثال

في المثال السابق غير مايلزم حتى يمكنك استخدام الخيار الآخر؟

استبدل كلمة **must** بكلمة أقل شدة و غلظة، تخيل أنك تحدث أو تخاطب معلمك بهذه العبارات ؟ ملاحظة، أحد الإجابات الصحيحة معطى آخر الجملة

1. He must pay me back before Christmas. (*ought to*)
2. They must brush their own shoes. (*should*)
3. We must change our clothes for dinner. (*could*)
4. You must put all the eggs in one basket. (*may*)
5. You must give it back to me before you go. (*might*)
6. You must listen to this talk on the radio. (*can*)
7. We must wait a long time for our holidays. (*may*)
8. We must take a cooking stove. (*should*)

مثال

أختار التفاصيل الصحيحة لأكمال الجملة؟

ملاحظة، الجواب الصحيح وضعنا تحته خط

1. He can leave it here  
**(a)** for an hour.  
(b) wherever he wanted to

confirm, deny, estimate, explain, mention, persuade, propose, remark, repeat, reply, report, reveal, state, suggest, warn, swear, threaten, advise, beg, demand, insist, recommend, request, suggest, describe, discuss, beg, instruct, invite, warn.

## 2. أفعال العقل والمشاعر

know, remember, doubt, fear, feel, remember, think, decide, expect, guarantee, hope, learn, realize, remember, wonder

وقد يحتوي صدر عبارة نقل الكلام والمشاعر والأفكار على تفاصيل كثيرة لكنك ستدرك أن الجزء الأهم من الموضوع غير موجود، لذلك صدر عبارة نقل الكلام وأن طالت فإنها غير مكتملة

The rich man in North America last summer said.

هذه جملة بها مبتداء و رابط did محذوف والكثير من التفاصيل لكنها غير مكتملة المعنى لأنها صدر عبارة نقل الكلام. فلا يكتمل معناها إلا بوجود نيل عبارة نقل الكلام.

ثانياً، نيل عبارة نقل الكلام والمشاعر والأفكار

نيل عبارة نقل الكلام والأفكار والمشاعر يمثل الجزء المنقول من الأقول والأفكار والمشاعر.

He said that he does not like coffee.  
He said "I will not go to school."

كل العبارات التي تحتها خطين هي عبارات منقولة، أم منقولة نقلاً حرفياً مثل الجملة الثانية أو تكون عبارة عن إعادة صياغة العبارة المنقولة على لسان الناقل للجملة.

لذلك فإن هناك نوعين من أنواع نيل عبارة نقل الأقوال والأفكار والمشاعر وذلك حسب نوعية النقل. فهناك نقل حرفي (يسمى أحياناً مباشراً) أو يكون إعادة صياغة ويسمى غير مباشر.

1. النقل الحرفي، (المباشر)، وفيه ينقل لنا الحديث بالنص كما قاله المتحدث، ويضعه الكاتب

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الثالث عشر الرابط that

#### رابط نقل

#### الكلام والمشاعر والأفكار

يستخدم الرابط that في تركيب عبارات نقل الكلام والمشاعر والأفكار وهي عبارات وجملة تستخدم عندما ينقل شخص كلام شخص آخر. أو الأخبار عن موافقته أو معارضته على موضوع ما، أو يخبر عن مشاعره وأفكاره

وتتكون عبارة نقل الكلام والمشاعر والأفكار من صدر العبارة و رابط that، وذيل العبارة.

مثال

Mohammed says that he is sick.

Lana said that she was coming then.

صدر عبارة نقل الكلام والمشاعر والأفكار  
Mohammed says,  
Lana said

ذيل عبارة نقل الكلام والمشاعر والأفكار

He is sick.<sup>1</sup>  
He was coming then.

أولاً، صدر عبارة نقل الكلام والمشاعر والأفكار

هي جملة غير مكتملة المعنى، تتكون من مبتداء، و رابط do، did محذوفين عادة، متبوعاً بأحد الأفعال التالية:

1. أفعال اللسان أو أفعال القول

say, ask, add, admit, agree, announce, answer, argue, claim, comment, complain,

أولاً، إذا كان رابط صدر العبارة ' is , will, may ، فإن الرابط في ذيل العبارة لا يتغير. ' do

"She is smart"

He (do) says that she is smart.

He is saying that she is smart.

"I want some food"

He says he wants some food.

"I went to school"

They will say that they went to school.

We may say that they went to school.

ملاحظة، سنقوم بشرح تغير الضمائر لاحقاً

ثانياً، إذا كان رابط صدر العبارة ' did, have, has ، فإن رابط ذيل العبارة ' would, could, might يتغير بعد إعادة صياغة العبارة حسب القواعد التالية:

تغير الروابط في ذيل عبارة نقل الكلام	
في النص المنقول	في إعادة الصياغة
am/is	was
are	were
do	did
can	could
shall	should
must	Had to
did	
have/has	had
had	
will	would
was/were	
has been	had been
had been	

"She is smart" (is → was )

He said that she was smart.

بين مزدوجين حتى نعرف أن هذا هو النص المنقول دون تغير أو تبديل

Mohammed says "I do n't like coffee".

He said "I will not go to school".

في حالة أن ينقل لنا المتحدث حديث شخص آخر نقلاً حرفياً، فإن الحديث المنقول يوضع بين مزدوجين، ويجب أن يتكون من جملة أو أكثر..

2. النقل بأعادة صياغة الحديث أو الأفكار أو المشاعر على لسان المتحدث ، (غير مباشر) ، وفيه ينقل لنا الحديث بنوع من التعديل لرابط صدر العبارة بذيلها.

I do not like coffe.

نقل حرفي "I do not like coffee". He said

He said that he did not like coffee"

في هذه الحالة قام المتحدث بإعادة صياغة النص المنقول على لسانه و قام بتغير ميلزم من ضمائر و روابط، لذلك لم يضع الكلام المنقول بين مزدوجين، ونسمي عملية تغير الكلام المنقول بعملية إعادة صياغة الكلام المنقول.

إعادة صياغة الأقوال و الأفكار المنقولة على شكل جملة مثبتة

إذا كانت الأقوال و الأفكار المنقولة عبارة عن جملة مثبتة فإن إعادة صياغتها يلزم تغيرات بسيطة في الجملة المنقولة مثل تغير الرابط ، تغير الضمائر و كذلك تغير علامات و تفاصيل الزمن. هذه التغيرات تتبع قوانين بسيطة عادة ماتكون موضع سؤال في إمتحانات اللغة الإنجليزية،

1. إعادة صياغة الرابط

يتأثر صياغة الرابط في الجملة النقولة أي في ذيل عبارة نقل الأقوال و الأفكار و المشاعر بالرابط في صدر العبارة التي عادة ما يكون محذوف do أو did

He says ( محذوف do الرابط )

He said ( محذوف did الرابط )

لأن الضمير لا يعود على المتحدث، نحن نغير فقط الضمائر التي تعود على المتحدث فقط.

#### 4. تغير علامات و تفاصيل الزمن

تغير تفاصيل الزمن في ذيل عبارة نقل الكلام	
في إعادة الصياغة	في ذيل عبارة نقل الكلام
this (evening)	that (evening)
today this day	that day
these (days)	those (days)
now	then
(a week) ago	(a week) before
last weekend	the weekend before the previous weekend
here	there
next (week)	the following (week)
tomorrow	the next day the following day
soon	In a short time

مثال

Mohammed says "I like **this**".  
Mohammed says he likes **that**.

He says "I will come **today**".  
He said he would come **that day**.

She says "I will mee you **here**".  
She says she will mee you **there**.

إعادة صياغة الأقوال و الأفكار المنقولة على شكل أوامر أو نواهي مثل أفعل أو لاتفعل

إذا كانت الأقوال و الأفكار المنقولة عبارة عن أوامر أو نواهي علي صورة أفعل أو لاتفعل ، فأنن نقلها على صورة المصدر to do, not to do

"Go to school!"  
I told him to go to school.  
I asked him to go to school.  
I requested him to go to school.

He has said that she was smart.  
He might say that she was smart.  
He would say that she was smart.

"I **want** some food" ( do → did)  
He said he **wanted** some food.

"I **went** to school" (did → had )  
They said that they **had gone** to school.

#### 3. إعادة صياغة الضمائر

من الواضح أنه عند إعادة صياغة الحديث فإنه يجب علينا تغير جميع ضمائر المتكلم الى ضمائر الغائب. ملاحظة الضمائر الواجب إعادة صياغتها هي الضمائر التي تعود على المتحدث فقط أما الضمائر التي لاتعود على المتحدث فأنها تترك كما هي في النص المنقول.

تغير الضمائر في ذيل عبارة نقل الكلام	
في إعادة الصياغة	في النص المنقول
I	He or she
we	they
my	His or her
mine	His or hers
our	their
me	Him or her
ours	theirs

"She is **my** wife" (my → his )  
He said that she was **his** wife.

"We want **our** food" ( our → their)  
They said he wanted **their** food.

"I **went** to her school"  
He said that he had gone to her school.

لاحظ عدم تغير الضمير her لماذا؟



6. Pick it up! ( He ordered )

*He ordered then to pick it up.*

7. Don't drop it ! ( Tell)

*He asked us to drop it.*

8. Look Out! ( I told)

*I told you to look out.*

9. Open the door! ( I asked)

*I asked him to open the door.*

11. Sing a song! ( They asked)

*The asked me to sing a song.*

12. Come in! ( He ordered)

*He ordered us to come in.*

13. Clean the blackboard! ( He asked)

*He asked me to clean the blackboard.*

14. Put it on the table! ( I told)

*I told you to put it on te table.*

15. Don't speak until you are spoken to!  
( I told)

*I told you not to speak until you are spoken to.*

مثال

أنقل العبارات التالية الى شخص آخر مستخدماً ما بين الأقواس ؟

1. We are very late.(He says)

*He says that we are very late.*

2. I want to speak to you. (He says).

*He says that he wants to speak to me.*

*He says that he wants to speak to us.*

3. We have finished our work (They say).

*The says that they have finished their work.*

4. He is ready to come with us. (He has told me)

*He has told me, he was ready to come with us.*

“Do not be late!”

I told him not to be late.

I asked him not to be late.

I requested him not to be late.

إعادة صياغة الأقوال و الأفكار المنقولة على شكل أسئلة و تساؤلات من نوع الأسئلة تكون إجابتها بصيغة "نعم" أو "لا"،

إذا كانت الأقوال المنقولة أسئلة و تساؤلات من نوع الأسئلة تكون إجابتها بصيغة "نعم" أو "لا" ، فأنتنا ننقلها و نضع كلمة if أو whether بين صدر و ذيل العبارة.

“Are you happy?”

I asked him if he was happy.

She wanted to know whether he was happy or not.

We are wondering if you are happy or not.

مثال

أنقل الأوامر التالية مستخدماً ما بين الأقواس ؟

1. Come here. ( I asked)

*I asked him to come there.*

2. Copy the words into your notebooks !  
(ask)

*The teacher asked us to copy the words into our notebooks.*

3. Don't do it again ( tell).

*I told her not to do it again.*

5. Write quickly! ( we asked).

*We asked him to write it quickly.*

6. Sit down ! ( we asked)

*We asked him to sit down.*

I've told him that they are waiting outside.

مثال

أنقل العبارات التالية الى شخص آخر مستخدما كلمة  
said, told في صدر عبارة نقل الكلام؟

1. I am ill.  
*He said that he was ill.*
2. I met him last year.  
*He said that he had met him the year before.*
3. They will be here soon.  
*They said that they would be there in a short time.*
4. She has finished now.  
*He said that she had finished then.*
5. I am living in London.  
*He said that he was living in London.*
6. I can come next week.  
*He told us that he could not come the following week.*
7. I don't know what he'll say.  
*He told us that he didn't know what he'll say.*
8. Wait till I come.  
*She asked him to wait till she come.*
9. I think she is married.  
*He told us that he think sthat she was married.*
10. I fell downstairs.  
*He said that he had fallen down the stair.*
11. I'll have it on the table.  
*The said that they would have it on the table.*
12. I'm sorry I'm late.  
*He said that he was sorry he was late.*
13. I am very stupid.

5. They do not know you. ( I have explain)

*I have explain to them that they do not know you.*

6. She had done homework well (the teacher will tell her)

*The teacher will tell her that she had done homework well.*

7. We are living in another house now ( they tells me)

*They tells me that they are living in another house now.*

8. I have been shopping all the morning (she says)

*She says that she has been shopping all the morning.*

9. She has written me a long letter. (He tells me)

*He tells me that she has written me a long letter.*

10. We have not heard the news (they say)

*They say that they have not heard the news.*

11. I like oranges better than bananas ( she has explained )

*She has explained that she like oranges better than bananas.*

12. He is sitting over there ( I've told you)

*I've told you he is sitting over there.*

13. You are not working hard enough ( our teacher says)

*Our teacher says that we are not working hard enough.*

14. You have been very quick. (they will tell me)

*They will tell me that I have been very quick.*

15. They are waiting outside. (I've told him)

1. Where are you going ? ( He asked me ....)

*He asked me where I am going.*

2. How did you do that ? ( they wanted to know ....)

*They wanted to know how I did that.*

3. Who will come to the pictures with me ?

*She asked me who would come to the movie with me.*

4. Why are you so sad?

*They were wondering why I am so sad.*

5. What is the matter?

ملاحظة: حالة خاصة، تعود المتحدثون باللغة الإنجليزية أن لا يغيرو ترتيب الجملة هذه عند نقلها

*They asked me what is the matter.*

6. Which book are you taking?

*He wanted to know which book I am taking.*

7. Who showed you my work?

*I wonder who had shown you my work.*

8. When did they tell you that?

*I asked him when they had told him that.*

9. Why was she not eaten anything?

*I need to know why she had not eaten anything.*

10. What is the time?

*I asked you what the time was.*

11. How do you know that?

*I asked him how he knew that.*

*He told us that he was very stupid.*

14. She is quite charming but hasn't much sense .

*They said that She was quite charming but didn't have much sense. .*

15. The clock will never work again if you try to open it.

*I said that the clock would never work again if you tried to open it.*

16. I'll come as soon as I can.

*They said they that they would come as soon as they could.*

17. I was very ill yesterday.

*He said that he was very ill the day before.*

18. I have never been here before.

*He told us that he had never been there before.*

19. I haven't done my homework.

*He said that he had'n't done his homework.*

20. You may have to stay in bed for a week.

*The doctor told me that I may have to stay in bed for few weeks.*

21. She will be here in half an hour if she isn't late.

*I thought, that she would be there in half an hour if she wasn't late.*

22. That is last time I saw him.

*He said that was the last time he had seen him.*

23. I shall try to be in time today. I'm sorry I forgot to come yesterday.

*She said that she should try to be in time that day. She also said that she was sorry she had forgotten to come the day before.*

مثال

مثال

أنقل الأسئلة التالية إلى شخص آخر مستخدماً كلمة صدر عبارة نقل الكلام المعطاة بين الأقواس أو صدر عبارة من عندك ؟

Is it raining very heavily ?

*She asked me if it was raining heavily.*

Do you sleep in the afternoons?

*He wanted to know if I slept in the afternoons.*

Must the door be kept shut?

*He asked if the door must had been shut.*

Was the train very full?

*He wanted to know if the train had been very full.*

Have the children put away their toys?

*She asked whether the children had put away their toys.*

عبارة أنقل الأسئلة التالية الى شخص آخر صدر  
نقل الكلام مناسبة من عندك ؟

Are you enjoying yourself?

*He wanted to know if I was enjoying myself.*

Did you see the match yesterday?

*He asked whether I had seen the match the daybefore.*

Have you seen my new hat?

*He asked me if I had seen his new hat?*

Do I look all right?

*He asked whether he looked all right.*

Are the grapes sour?

*She was questioning whether the grapes were sour.*

Is it time to go?

*He asked if it was time to go.*

Will the taxi be here at eight O'clock?

*He wanted to know if the taxi would be there at eight O'clock.*

Can you hear a noise?

*He asked if I could hear a noise.*

Are my shoes cleaned yet?

*He wanted to know if his shoes were cleaned then.*

May I use your telephone?

*He was wondering if he might use my telephone.*

on the table, at the door, by the window

2. تفاصيل وقوع الحدث, **Adverbs** ، وهي معلومات تفصيلية تبين كيفية حدوث الحدث (الحال) و الزمان الذي وقع فيه الحدث ومدى تكرار الحدث ، كلمات تصف تفاصيل حدوث الفعل، زمانه و حاله و مدى تكراره

مثال

Ahmed returned quickly

عاد أحمد مسرعاً، لاحظ ان مسرعاً تصف طريقة عودة أحمد و ليس أحمد.

### حروف الجر Proposition

هي كلمة تعطي ما بعدها تفصيلات زمانية أو مكانية، أو معنوية ، تستخدم مع الأسماء و المسميات فتسمى جار و مجرور و تدخل على الأفعال فتغير معنى الفعل

وفيما يلي قائمة بأهم حروف الجر

at ,by, for, from, in, inside, into, of, off, on, out, outside, till, to,toward, under, until, up, upon, with,without, about, after, along, among, before, behind, between, in front of, next to, down, during,except, past, round, since, through, throughout, above, across, over, against, below, besides, like, near, beyond, covering, despite, inside, inspite of, opposite, according to, because of, by way of, in addition to, in front of, in place of, in regard to, in spite of, instead of, on account of, out of

مثال

يوضح هذا المثال إستخدامات حروف الجر

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الرابع عشر

#### معلومات تفصيلية

في معظم الأحيان يحتاج الكاتب و المتحدث إعطاء معلومات تفصيلية عن المبتداء و الخبر. مثلاً "ذهب محمد"، نعلم هنا أن محمد قد ذهب لكننا لا ندرى متى؟ وإلى أين؟ و كيف؟ و مع من؟ ، تأمل المثال التالي و دقة المعلومات المعطاة ، هذه المعلومات تسمى المعلومات التفصيلية، حيث ان المعلومة الرئيسية ان "محمد ذهب" و هو المبتداء و الخبر، و كل المعلومات الأخرى تفصيلية.

مثال

- ذهب محمد.
- ذهب محمد مسرعاً. (كيف؟)
- ذهب محمد إلى المدرسة مسرعاً. (أين؟ كيف؟)
- ذهب محمد مع زميلة إلى المدرسة مسرعاً. (أين؟ كيف؟ مع من؟)
- ذهب محمد ليلة البارحة مع زميلة إلى المدرسة مسرعاً. (متي؟ أين؟ كيف؟ مع من؟)
- ذهب محمد بالسيارة ليلة البارحة مع زميلة إلى المدرسة مسرعاً. (ماهي المواصلات التي استخدمها؟ متى؟ أين؟ كيف؟ مع من؟)

كل الكلمات التي تحتها خط في المثال السابق تسمى معلومات تفصيلية.

#### المعلومات التفصيلية

المعلومات التفصيلية هي كلمة أو مجموعة كلمات تعطي تفصيلات زمانية أو مكانية، أو أحوال ، أو الترتيب ، أو مدى تكرار المبتداء أو الخبر. هذه المعلومات تجعل الجملة أكثر إفادة للقارئ أو المستمع. و يمكن تقسيم المعلومات التفصيلية إلى مجموعتين رئيسيتين.

1. الجار و المجرور **Propositions**. وهي حرف الجر و ما بعده. مثل

استخدام حروف الجر في تفصيلات الزمان

- نستخدم at لتحديد وقت زمني محدد مثل الساعة الرابعة والنصف

The train is due **at 12:15 p.m.**

- نستخدم on لتحديد الأيام والتواريخ مثل يوم الأربعاء ، في تاريخ 12 مارس 2010.

My brother is coming **on Monday**.  
We're having a party **on March first**

- نستخدم on إذا كان الزمان غير محدد ، أثناء اليوم ، أو الشهر أو السنة أو الفصل

She likes to jog **in the morning**.  
It's too cold **in winter** to run outside.  
He started the job **in 1971**.  
He's going to quit **in August**.

- نستخدم for بمعنى لمدة و يكون المجرور فترة زمنية مقاسة بالثواني ، الدقائق ، الساعات ، الأيام ، الأسابيع ، الشهور ، العقود و غير ذلك.

He held his breath **for seven minutes**.  
She's lived there **for seven years**.  
They fought **for seven centuries**.

- نستخدم بمعنى مند و يكون المجرور حدث أو زمن محدد ، أو تاريخ

He's worked here **since 1970**.  
She's been sitting here **since 2:30**

استخدام حروف الجر في تفصيلات المكان

- نستخدم at لتحديد وقت مكان محدد ، كرقم منزل ، أو رقم مبني

I can sit **before the desk** or in front of the desk.

My manager can sit **on the desk** or **behind the desk**.

Her legs are **under the desk** or **beneath the desk**.

She can stand **beside the desk** (meaning **next to the desk**), **before the desk**, **between the desk and me**, or even **on the desk** (if she's really crazy).

She's very clumsy. Sometimes she bumps **into the desk** or trys to walk **through the desk** (and stuff would fall **off the desk**).

She can pass her hands **over the desk** or rest her elbows **upon the desk**.

She often looks **across the desk** and speaks **of the desk** or **concerning the desk** as if there were nothing else **like the desk**.

I think she thinks of nothing **except the desk**.

Sometimes we wonder **about the desk**, what's **in the desk**, what she paid **for the desk**, and if she could live **without the desk**.

I can walk **toward the desk**, **to the desk**, **around the desk**, **by the desk**, and even **past the desk** while he sits **at the desk** or leans **against the desk**

All of this happens, of course, **in time**: **during the meeting**, **before the meeting**, **until the meeting**, **throughout the meeting**, **after the meeting**.

We're moving toward the light.

This is a big step towards the project's completion.

لاحظ ان لهما نفس المعنى يمكنك استخدام أي منهما حسب رغبتك، دون أن يتغير معنى الجملة

حروف الجر المرافقة أو المتلازمة

بعض الأسماء و المسميات و الصفات و الأفعال يأتي بعدها حروف جر، فتعطيها تفصيلا و تربطها بما بعدها

مثال

أهم الأسماء و المسميات المتلازمة مع حروف الجر

approval of  
awareness of  
belief in  
concern for  
confusion about  
desire for  
fondness for  
grasp of  
hatred of  
hope for  
interest in  
love of  
need for  
participation in  
reason for  
respect for  
success in  
understanding of

مثال

أهم الصفات المتلازمة مع حروف الجر

I live at 107 Kings Road in London.

• نستخدم on لتحديد لتحديد الشوارع ، و الأحياء

Her house is on Kings Road.

لاحظ هنا دقة التفاصيل أقل، من الجملة السابقة.

• نستخدم in لتحديد وقت مكان منطقة و اسعة مثل مدينة، قرية، ولاية ، إقليم ، دولة، قارة.

She lives in Makkah.

Maka is in the Western Province.

Maka is in Saudi Arabia.

مثال

مواضع مهمة ، و حروف الجر المستخدمة لها،

IN ( the) bed\*  
the bedroom  
the car  
(the) class\*  
the library\*  
school\*

AT class\*  
home  
the library\*  
the office  
school\*  
work

ON the bed\*  
the ceiling  
the floor  
the horse  
the plane  
the train

\* تعني أن هذه الكلمات تأخذ حروف جر أخرى  
استخدام حروف الجر في تفصيلات الحركة

• نستخدم towrd, towards, to لوصف الحركة في إتجاه المكان

They were driving to work together.

She's going to the dentist's office this morning.

*with* a person

- **differ**  
*from* an unlike thing,  
*with* a person
- **live**  
*at* an address,  
*in* a house or city,  
*on* a street,  
*with* other people

حذف حروف الجر في بعض الجمل لعدم الحاجة لها

- She met ~~up with~~ the new coach in the hallway.
- The book fell off ~~of~~ the desk.
- He threw the book out ~~of~~ the window.
- She wouldn't let the cat inside ~~of~~ the house.
- Where did they go ~~to~~?
- Put the lamp in back of the couch.  
[use "behind" instead]
- Where is your college ~~at~~?

الكلمات التالية لا تستخدم معها حروف الجر مطلقاً

home, downtown, uptown, inside, outside, downstairs, upstairs,

afraid of  
angry at  
aware of  
capable of  
careless about  
familiar with  
fond of  
happy about  
interested in  
jealous of  
made of  
married to  
proud of  
similar to  
sorry for  
sure of  
tired of  
worried about

مثال

أهم الأفعال المتلازمة مع حروف الجر و تأثير حروف الجر عليها ، يسمى الفعل الذي يتغير معناه حسب حرف الجر الذي يتبعه، **a phrasal verb** ، وهذا المصطلح يعني الأفعال السماعية ، وهي الأفعال التي أستخدم الناس حروف الجر معها و تناقها الناس عن طريق السماع جيل بعد جيل

مثال

- **agree**  
*to* a proposal,  
*with* a person,  
*on* a price,  
*in* principle
- **argue**  
*about* a matter,  
*with* a person,  
*for* a proposition  
*against* a proposition
- **compare**  
*to* show likenesses,  
*with* to show differences
- **correspond**  
*to* a thing,



مثال

I'm looking ..... my keys. Has anyone found them? (for)

They dream ..... moving to South Africa. (of)

This song was written ..... Madonna. (by)

You can look the word ..... in a dictionary. (up)

I can't come to the party. Don't wait ..... me. (for)

She had problems ..... reading the instructions. (in)

The police car chased the robbers .....the streets. (through)

My friend is good ..... playing volleyball. (at)

She complains ..... bullying. (about)

They are afraid ..... losing the match. (of)

She doesn't feel ..... working on the computer. (like)

We are looking forward ..... going out at the weekend. (to)

Laura dreams ..... living on a small island. (of)

Andrew apologized ..... being late. (for)

Do you agree ..... staying in a foreign country? (with)

The girls insisted ..... going out with Kerry. (on)

He went upstairs

She went home.

They both went outside.

مثال

حاول ان تتعرف لماذا استخدمت حروف الجر في النص التالي

I'm Peter and I live in Germany. In summer I like to travel to Italy, because of the weather and the people there.

Last summer I took a plane from Munich to Rome. From the airport we went to our hotel by bus. We stopped at a small restaurant for a quick meal.

The driver parked the bus behind the restaurant. Nobody could find the bus and the driver, so we waited outside the restaurant for one hour.

The driver was walking through the small park near the restaurant which we did not know. So we were very angry with him.

But my holidays were great. We sat round campfires and went dancing till the early mornings.

مثال

إملاء الفراغ بحرف جر مناسب

I'm tired ..... waiting for you. (of)

He hasn't smoked ..... ages. (for)

Nina is good ..... running. (at)

He sometimes quarrels \_\_\_\_\_ the neighbour. (with)

I think there is a salesman \_\_\_\_\_ the door. (at)

Her next birthday will be \_\_\_\_\_ a Sunday. (on)

Even the new drug could not cure him \_\_\_\_\_ his illness. (from)

He was given a ten-year prison sentence \_\_\_\_\_ armed robbery. (for)

The cat likes to rub its head \_\_\_\_\_ my legs. (against)

The store was robbed because there was no guard \_\_\_\_\_ duty. (on)

My father has a car \_\_\_\_\_ yours. (like)

His sister holds a degree \_\_\_\_\_ physics \_\_\_\_\_ Oxford. (in)

The new factory is expected to come online \_\_\_\_\_ May. (in)

If you go \_\_\_\_\_ a river you go towards its source. (up)

Many of us eat \_\_\_\_\_ fork and spoon. (with)

The mob stoned her \_\_\_\_\_ death. (to)

مثال

إملاء الفراغ بحرف جر مناسب بأحد أحرف  
الجر التالية

about, across, after, along, among,  
behind, beside, off, since, through,  
under, without.

Edward thinks ..... climbing trees this afternoon. (of)

مثال

إملاء الفراغ بحرف جر مناسب

She is doing a degree course \_\_\_\_\_ a university. (at)

His trousers were washed \_\_\_\_\_ the washing machine. (in)

We had to climb slowly \_\_\_\_\_ the hill. (up)

His house looks \_\_\_\_\_ a temple. (like)

How many \_\_\_\_\_ the members will join the trip? (of)

Don't lean that ladder \_\_\_\_\_ the wall. (against)

I don't usually feel tired \_\_\_\_\_ the morning. (in)

Have you heard anything \_\_\_\_\_ him yet? (about)

My house is quite \_\_\_\_\_ to your school. (near)

Put this \_\_\_\_\_ your drawer and do not let anyone see it. (in)

A university is where you study \_\_\_\_\_ a degree. (for)

Which of these roads will lead \_\_\_\_\_ the church? (to)

We are not allowed to talk \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves. (among)

He has completed this degree course \_\_\_\_\_ too much trouble. (without)

There is only one bridge \_\_\_\_\_ this river. (across)

Do you believe in life \_\_\_\_\_ death? (after)

## Adverb وقوع الحدث تفاصيل

تفاصيل وقوع الحدث Adverbs ، هي معلومات تفصيلية تبين كيفية حدوث الحدث (الحال) و الزمان الذي وقع فيه الحدث ومدى تكرار الحدث

### تفاصيل كيفية حدوث الحدث (الحال)

كيفية حدوث الحدث معلومات تفصيلية مهمة، قد يكون وقوع الحدث سريعاً، أو بطيء، أو عادياً، أو هادئاً، الى غير ذلك. و يمكن تسمية هذا النوع من التفاصيل بالحال و هو الذي يعرف بأنه صفة كيفية حدوث الفعل. و يشترك هذا النوع من التفاصيل من الصفات و ذلك بوضع by في نهاية الصفة.

### مثال

perfect	كامل	perfectly	بطريقة كاملة
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء
careful	حذر	carefully	بحذر
regular	عادي	regularly	بطريقة عادية
nice	طيب	nicely	بطيبة
terrible	رديء	terribly	بطريقة رديئة
heavy	ثقل	heavily	بثقل
good	حسن	well	بحسن
hard	صعب	hard	بصعوبة

هناك بعض الصفات يتشابه الصفة و الحال فيها مثل far, hard, long

The referee ordered two players \_\_\_\_\_ the field. (off)

I could see her \_\_\_\_\_ the window. (through)

He sings whenever he is \_\_\_\_\_ the influence of alcohol. (under)

We have not met \_\_\_\_\_ early last year. (since)

She came up and sat \_\_\_\_\_ me. (behind)

Police want to know all \_\_\_\_\_ it and are calling for witnesses. (about)

Innocent civilians were \_\_\_\_\_ the casualties. (among)

Please shut the door \_\_\_\_\_ you. (after)

How long can you survive \_\_\_\_\_ light or heating? (without)

Who is looking \_\_\_\_\_ you when your parents are not in? (after)

She was carrying her handbag \_\_\_\_\_ her arm. (under)

We parked the car \_\_\_\_\_ the fence. (behind)

He had to push his way \_\_\_\_\_ the crowd to get in. (through)

The robbers jumped \_\_\_\_\_ the train while it was still moving. (across)

We enjoy driving \_\_\_\_\_ the highway. (along)

Books were scattered \_\_\_\_\_ the room. (across)

She talks **nicely**.

هو تتكلم بطيبة، هنا نحن نصف طريقة كلام الفتاة ، و لانصف الفتاة، قد تكون شريرة

You are a **terrible** writer.

أنت كاتب سيء، لاحظ أننا هنا نصف الشخص

You write **terribly**.

أنت تكتب بطريقة سيئة، هنا نحن نصف طريقة كتابتك ، و لانصفك بإنك كاتب سيء

She is a **good** person.

أنها شخص جيد، لاحظ أننا هنا نصف الشخص

She behaves **well**.

لاحظ في هذا المثال لم نطبق القاعدة، لا، الحال من هذه الكلمة لايشق من الصفة، بل هو كلمة أخرى، إنها تتصرف بشكل جيد.

She is a **hard** worker.

أنها عاملة متفانية، لاحظ أننا هنا نصف الشخص

She study **hard**.

لاحظ في هذا المثال لم نطبق القاعدة، لا، الحال من هذه الكلمة يشبه الصفة، ، إنها تذاكر بتفاني.

مثال

إملاء الفراغ بالتفاصيل المناسبة، مستخدماً الكلمات المعطاة بين الأقواس

He read **(slow)** but **(clear)**.

*He read **slowly** but **clearly**.*

Look! He is draiving **(danger)**.

*Look! He is draiving **dangerously**.*

The aireplane start moving **(slow)**.

*The aireplane start moving **slowly**.*

She spoke **(harsh)** to him.

*She spoke **harshly** to him.*

The car stopped **(suddenly)**.

*The car stopped **suddenly**.*

هناك بعض الصفات تختلف الأحوال عن الصفات  
إختلافاً تاماً مثل ( good, well ) ،

مثال

حدد نوع ماتحتة خط هل هو صفة ، أم حال ؟

I don't live **far** away from here. صفة

Where I live isn't **far** from here. صفة

She worked quite **hard**. حال

She found the work quite **hard**. صفة

مثال

This is a **perfect** solution.

هذا هو الحل الكامل، لاحظ أننا هنا نصف الحل

He solved the problem **perectly**.

لقد حل المسألة بطريقة كاملة، هنا نحن نصف طريقة الحل و ليس الحل

She is a **quite** person.

هي شخصية هادئة، لاحظ أننا هنا نصف البنت

She works **quietly**.

هي تعمل بطريقة هادئة، هنا نحن نصف طريقة عملها و لانصف البنت

He is a **carful** driver.

هو سائق حذر، لاحظ أننا هنا نصف السائق

He drives **carfully**.

هو يسوق بحذر، هنا نحن نصف طريقة سياقته و لانصف السائق

He is a **regular** visitor.

هو زائر منتظم، لاحظ أننا هنا نصف الشخص

He visits us **regularly**.

هو يزورنا بانتظام، هنا نحن نصف طريقة زيارته بأها بانتظام ، و لانصف الشخص

She is a **nice** girl.

هي فتاة طيبة، لاحظ أننا هنا نصف الفتاة

yesterday, lastweek, last month, last year. ago,

تفاصيل تدل على حدوث الحدث الآن ، وهو مستمر في الحدوث

Now, at this moment,

تفاصيل تدل على حدوث الحدث في المستقبل ،

Tomorrow, next day, next year, next month

مثال

I went to school yesterday.

I will do my homework tomorrow.

تفاصيل مكان حدوث الحدث

تفاصيل تدل على المكان الذي حدث فيه الحدث،  
مثل here, there

مثال

I live here.

You work there.

تفاصيل مدى تكرار حدوث الحدث

يسمى هذا النوع من التفاصيل ، علامات درجة العادة وهو ما يدل على مدى درجة و تكرار هذه العادة. و يحمل كل من هذه التفاصيل على درجة تدل على نسبة تكراره ، مثلاً عبارة دائما always تكون نسبة حدوثها (90-100%) ، بينما عبارة أبداً never لها نسبة احتمال (صفر%) و سندرست تأثير هذه العلامات على الجملة عندما نتحدث عن الروابط في الجملة، ومن أهم هذه التفاصيل

never	( صفر% )
hardly ever	( 3-1% )
rarely	( أقل من 5% )
seldom	( 10-5% )

He played music (good).

*He played music well.*

The engine was running (noice).

*The engine was running noiceily.*

Jack runs (quick) but (steady).

*Jack run quickly but steadily.*

درجات الصفة مع الأحوال

مر معنا سابقاً، أن درجة الصفة هي كلمات توجد قبل الصفة لتبين درجة الصفة و كميتها مثل very, a little, so, too, some, abit

مثال

الحال                      الصفة                      درجة الصفة

very	easy	easily
a little	carful	carefully
so	loud	loudly
too	hard	hard
a bit	heavy	heavily

مثال

Look! He is draiving very dangerously.

The aireplane start moving a bit slowly.

Jack run very quickly but so steadyly.

تفاصيل زمن حدوث الحدث

يسمى هذا النوع من التفاصيل ، علامات زمن حدوث الحدث ، و تلعب هذه العلامات دور بارز في صيغة الفعل المستخدم. و سندرست تأثير هذه العلامات على الجملة عندما نتحدث عن الروابط في الجملة.

تفاصيل تدل على حدوث الحدث في الماضي

**Sometimes** he stays late in the office to complete his work.

في بعض الأحيان تتأخر في المكتب لأنها عملها

The proposal is not **generally** acceptable to the public.

الخطة المقترحة، ليست مقبولة عموماً من الشعب

It is **usually** the man who proposes marriage.

من المعتاد، ان يتقدم الزوج لطلب الزواج من المرأة.

While overseas, he **frequently** phoned home.

عندما يكون مسافراً، فإنه غالباً ما يتصل بعائلته و أهله في الوطن.

She's not **nearly** always right although she thinks she's always right.

هي لم تكن قريبة من الصواب دائماً، رغم إعتقادها بأنها على صواب دائماً.

He has **often** forgotten her books.

هو ينسى كتبه بطريقة شبه دائمة

We **always** go to school by bus.

هو دائماً ما يستخدم الباص للذهاب الى المدرسة.

Does he **ever** come to play chess?

هل لعب الشطرنج و لو مرة و احده ؟

تفاصيل تأكيد الحدث، و التقليل من شأن الحدث

occasionally ( %20-10 )

sometimes, ( %30-20 )

generally, ( %50-40 )

usually, ( %60-50 )

frequently ( %70-60 )

nearly always ( %80-70 )

often ( %90-80 )

always. ( %100-90 )

ever ( ولو مرة واحدة، تستخدم في السؤال )

لاحظ ان الهدف من الأرقام و النسب فقط إعطائك فكرة مبسطة عن مدى تكرار هذا لحدث، ومنه نستنتج أن generally أكثر حدوثاً من rarely

و هذا النوع من التفاصيل يستخدم عندما نتحدث عن العادات و الأحداث المتكررة الوقوع، فتعطينا هذه التفاصيل مدى تكرار هذا الحدث.

و لعل أهم ما يميز هذا النوع من التفاصيل هو أنها تقع دائماً في المبتداء، و سندرس هذا بنوع من التفاصيل عندما نتحدث عن الرابط do , does

مثال

He will **never** have finished in time.

يستحيل ان يكون قد انتهى على الوقت

Sue **hardly ever** wore lipstick.

من شبه النادر ان تضع أحمر الشفايف

Jane is **rarely** late for work.

من النادر ان تكون جين متأخرة على العمل

Peter **seldom** eat lunch with us.

من غير المعتاد ان يأكل بيتر غداءه معنا

We only write to each other very **occasionally**.

نحن نتبادل الرسائل في المناسبات

من المؤكد و الواضح أنني أرفض حضور إجتماعات أعضاء هيئة التدريس.

They **heartily** endorsed the new restaurant.

لقد دعموا المطعم الجديد بقلوبهم.

I **so** wanted to go with them.

كنت أرغب في الذهاب مهم بدرجة عالية.

عبارات التقليل من شأن الحدث

وهي عبارات تفصيلية تفيد تأكيد تقلل من شأن الحدث، و تظهر هذه العبارات دائما في المبتداء.

kind of	بشكل ما
sort of	نوعا ما
Mildly	قليل ما
to some extent	الى حد ما
almost	و أوشك على الحدوث ، تقريبا
all but	أوشك
only	فقط

مثال

I **kind of** like this college.

أنا أحب هذه الجامعة بشكل ما (أو نوعا ما).

Joe **sort of** felt betrayed by his sister.

أحس جو بخذلان أخته بنوع ما. أو أحس جو بنوع من خذلان أخته

His mother **mildly** disapproved his actions.

لاتوافق قليلاً ما و الدته على أفعاله.

We can improve on this **to some extent**.

يمكننا تحسين ذلك الى حد ما.

وهي عبارات تفصيلية تفيد تأكيد الحدث، او تفخيمه او التقليل من شأنه، و تظهر هذه العبارات دائما في المبتداء.

عبارات تأكيد الحدث

really	في الواقع
literally	بالمعنى الحرفي
simply	بكل بساطة
for sure	بكل تأكيد
completely	جملة و تفصيلاً
obviously	بالتأكيد
heartly	من القلب
so	لدرجة عالية

مثال

I **really** don't believe him.

أنا في الواقع لا أصدقه

He **literally** wrecked his mother's car.

لقد حطم سيارة والدته بالمعنى الحرفي. ( أي أنه و كأنه قم بتكسير السيارة بمطرقة كبيرة)، أي بكا ماتحمل كلمة تحطيم من معنى

She **simply** ignored me.

لقد تجاهلته بكل بساطة

They're going to be late, **for sure**.

من المؤكد انهم سيتأخرون.

The teacher **completely** rejected her proposal.

لقد رفض المعلم مقترحاتها جملة و تفصيلاً

I **absolutely** refuse to attend any more faculty meetings.

تظهر عبارة else في التفاصيل مضافة الى  
some, any, no

some .....else  
any .....else  
no .....else  
what .....else  
where .....else  
when.....else  
who.....else  
how .....else

مثال

I have no where **else** to go.  
She knows no one **else**.  
I do not know what **else** you need.

### ترتيب التفاصيل في الجملة

بعد أن تعرفنا على العديد من أنواع التفاصيل و التفاصيل التي تعطي القارئ أو المستمع معلومات مهمة عن الحدث. السؤال هنا كم عدد التفاصيل الممكن إعطائها في جملة و احدة. الجواب ليس هناك عدد محدد من التفاصيل، لكن كثرة التفاصيل في جملة و احدة قد يكون مزعجاً للقارئ و المستمع.

مثال

حدد التفاصيل المعطاة في الجملة مع بيان نوع كلاً منها؟

The man obviously needs to solve his problem **quiltly** by Januay next year in London to be able to meet the committee requirements.

The man **obviously** needs to solve his problem **quiltly** by Januay next year in London to be able to meet the committee requirements.

تحديد الأنواع متروك للطالب أو الطالبة

ترتيب التفاصيل في خبر الجملة

The boss **almost** quit after that.

لقد أوشك الرئيس على الإستقالة.

The school was **all but** ruined by the storm.

لقد أوشكت العاصفة ان تحطم المدرسة، لكنها لم تحطمها.

I was **only** joking with you.

لقد كنا أمزح معك فقط.

تفاصيل سبب و قوع الحدث (صيغة لكي ...)

إذا أردنا تفسير سبب حدوث الفعل فإننا نستخدم عبارة لكي و صيغتها مشابهة للمصدر المشتق من الفعل و لكنها تختلف إختلافاً كبير من حيث المعنى.

صيغة لكي ..فعل + to

to go to school لكي نذهب الى المدرسة

لاحظ الفرق بين صيغة المصدر و صيغة لكي

مثال

**To go to school** is very important.

أن تذهب الى المدرسة شيء مهم ، ذهابك الى المدرسة شيء مهم.

I took the bus **to go to school**.

ركبت الباص لكي اذهب الى المدرسة، لاحظ هنا نحن نتحدث عن سبب حدوث الحدث.

عبارة else في التفاصيل



Our teacher spoke to us (in class, very rudely, this morning).

*Our teacher spoke to us very rudely in class this morning.*

I saw my friend off (at 7 o'clock, at the station, this morning).

*I saw my friend off at the station at 7 o'clock, this morning.*

He worked for our cause (all his life, passionately).

*He worked passionately all his life for our cause.*

My father was working (at his office, very hard, all day yesterday).

*My father was working very hard at his office all day yesterday.*

My sister speaks English (very well); but she writes French (badly).

*My sister speaks English very well; but she writes French badly.*

They stayed (all day, quietly, there.)

*They stayed there quietly all day.*

لاحظ تقديم تفاصيل المكان عند أفعال الحركة.

I like coffee (in the morning, very much)

*I like coffee very much in the morning.*

The train arrived (this morning, late).

*The train arrived late this morning.*

He played (at the Town Hall, last night, beautifully, in the concert).

ترتب التفاصيل في خبر الجملة حسب الترتيب التالي:

أولاً، تفاصيل كيفية حدوث الحدث (الحال)  
ثانياً، تفاصيل مكان حدوث الحدث  
ثالثاً، تفاصيل مدى تكرار حدوث الحدث  
رابعاً، تفاصيل زمن حدوث الحدث  
خامساً، تفاصيل سبب وقوع الحدث

وإذا اجتمع عبارتين أو أكثر من نفس النوع فأنها ترتب من الخاص الى العام، ( من الصغير الى الكبير)

مثال

I want to see you urgently at my office at 9:00 o'clock tomorrow to discuss your performance.

كلاهما تفاصيل زمان، لكن الساعة تأتي قبل اليوم  
مثال

أعد كتابة الجملة مع ترتيب التفاصيل المعطاة بين الأقواس ؟

She swims (to keep in shape, in the pool enthusiastically, before dawn, every morning )

*She swims enthusiastically in the pool every morning before dawn to keep in shape*

He walks ( into town, to get a newspaper, impatiently, before supper, every afternoon).

*He walks impatiently into town every afternoon before supper to get a newspaper.*

ملاحظة مهمة، مع أفعال الحركة، تأتي تفاصيل المكان بعد الفعل مباشرة

مثال

أعد كتابة الجملة مع ترتيب التفاصيل المعطاة بين الأقواس ؟

4) Mary watches TV.

*Mary hardly ever watches TV.*

5) He drives his car.

*He drives his car carefully.*

6) The children play football.

*The children play football in the garden.*

7) We went to the cinema.

*We went to the cinema yesterday.*

8) John fell off the bike.

*John almost fell off the bike.*

9) Her boyfriend will buy her some flowers.

*Her boyfriend will probably buy her some flowers.*

10) My uncle is moving to Stockholm soon.

*My uncle is definitely moving to Stockholm soon.*

مثال

ضع مزيد من التفاصيل في العبارات التالية ؟

1) Have you been to London?

*Have you ever been to London?*

2) Peter doesn't get up before seven.

*Peter doesn't usually get up before seven.*

3) Our friends must write tests.

*Our friends must often write tests.*

*He played beautifully in the concert at the Town Hall last night.*

I shall meet you (outside your office, tomorrow, at 2 O'clock).

*I shall meet you outside your office at 2 O'clock tomorrow.*

We are going (for a week, to Switzerland, on Saturday).

*We are going to Switzerland on Saturday for a week.*

Let 's go (tonight, to the pictures).

*Let 's go to the pictures tonight.*

He was born (in the year 1923, at 10,a.m., on J u,ne 14th).

*He was born at 10,a.m. on June 14th in the year 1923.*

She drinks coffee (every morning, at home).

*She drinks coffee at home every morning.*

مثال

ضع مزيد من التفاصيل في العبارات التالية ؟

1) Our friends must write a test.

*Our friends must also write a test.*

2) I was joking.

*I was only joking.*

3) Did you enjoy the flight?

*Did you realy enjoy the flight?*

*Tom is usually very friendly.*

5) I take sugar in my coffee.

*I sometimes take sugar in my coffee.*

6) Ramon and Frank are hungry.

*Ramon and Frank are often hungry.*

7) My grandmother goes for a walk in the evening.

*My grandmother always goes for a walk in the evening.*

8) Walter helps his father in the kitchen.

*Walter usually helps his father in the kitchen.*

9) They watch TV in the afternoon.

*They never watch TV in the afternoon.*

10) Christine smokes.

*Christine never smokes*

## تدريب

إملاء الفراغ بحرف جر مناسب ؟

The workers went \_\_\_ strike because they thought their wages were too low. (on)

He tried to warn his daughter \_\_\_ the dangers \_\_\_ going out alone \_\_\_ night. (from/of/at)

Although we had expected them to take a taxi, they came \_\_\_ car. (by)

4) They go swimming in the lake.

*They sometimes go swimming in the lake.*

5) The weather is bad in November.

*The weather is always bad in November.*

6) Peggy and Frank are late.

*Peggy and Frank are usually late.*

7) I have met him before.

*I have never met him before.*

8) John watches TV.

*John seldom watches TV.*

9) I was in contact with my sister.

*I was often in contact with my sister.*

10) She will love him.

*She will always love him.*

مثال

ضع مزيد من التفاصيل في العبارات التالية ؟

1) He listens to the radio.

*He often listens to the radio.*

2) They read a book.

*They sometimes read a book.*

3) Pete gets angry.

*Pete never gets angry.*

4) Tom is very friendly.

6. He walks so \_\_\_ in those boots.  
a. heavy  
**b. heavily**
7. She plays the piano \_\_\_\_.  
a. perfect  
**b. perfectly**
8. He is a \_\_\_ talker, but he never listens.  
**a. quick**  
b. quickly
9. She writes very \_\_\_\_.  
a. bad  
**b. badly**
10. There was a \_\_\_ noise last night.  
Did you hear it?  
**a. loud**  
b. loudly

مثال

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية مستخدماً عبارة  
?else

1. Do you have any other thing to say?  
*Do you have anything else to say?*
2. You must see another person.  
*You must see someone else.*
3. May I stay at some other place?  
*May I stay somewhere else?*
4. What other thing must I do?  
*What else must I do?*
5. I have some other thing to show you.

\_\_\_ today's newspaper it's stated that a new agreement will be signed \_\_\_ those two countries soon.(On/with)

I learned to ride a horse \_\_\_ the age \_\_\_ five.(at/of)

Guess what? The favorite was beaten \_\_\_ a very close race.(at)

Will you please pick up a pizza \_\_\_ dinner \_\_\_ your way home this evening? (for/on)

The fee charged \_\_\_ that lawyer \_\_\_ his services was too high. (by/for)

He submitted his application \_\_\_ December 1st, so the manager did not consider it. (on)

مثال

إملاء الفراغ

1. He's a \_\_\_ driver.  
**a. dangerous**  
b. dangerously
2. He ate his dinner very \_\_\_\_.  
a. quick  
**b. quickly**
3. She's a \_\_\_ speller.  
**a. bad**  
b. badly
4. \_\_\_ the wind changed directions.  
a. Sudden  
**b. Suddenly**
5. Please try to be more \_\_\_\_.  
**a. careful**  
b. carefully

8. I was born ..... London , but now I live .... Lynton, a small village ..... Devonshire. (in/in/of)
9. Cats like to sit .... the roof.(on)
10. Write ..... pencil. (with)
11. They went home ..... foot.(on)
12. I like to go. to the country ..... car.(by)
13. Get .... the tram here, and get out ..... the third stop. (on)
14. There are many bridges ..... Thames .(on)
15. I bought this hat ..... fifty pence.(for)
16. The train left here ..... Paris ..... midnight.(to/at)
17. This is a secret ..... you and me.(between)
18. What are you taking .....
19. A man ..... red beard went ..... out house just now.
20. Wait ..... me! Don't go .....(me/out)
21. She sat ..... her aunt and uncle.(between)
22. We walked ..... the hill ..... the wood ..... the top. (up/through/to)
23. I looked .... the window ..... the busy street. (through/at)
24. Go ..... this street, turn right ..... the post office, and then take the second turning ..... the left.(down/near/to)
25. Count ..... one ..... ten ..... your fingers.(from/to/on)

*I have something else to show you.*

6. What other place can I go to?  
*Where else can I go to?*
7. What other person is coming with you?  
*Who else is coming with you?*
8. In what other way can I do it?  
*How else can I do it?*
9. Ask some other person to lend it to you.  
*Ask someone else to lend it to you.*
10. All the other people have a green ticket.  
*Everybody else has a green ticket.*

مثال

إملاء الفراغ ؟

1. I go ..... school every day. (to)
2. My sister stays ..... home.(at)
3. The train arrived ..... waterloo ..... 6.p.m.(at)
4. Meet me ..... noon ..... Thursday.(before/on)
5. I haven't seen you.... week. (last)
6. I have been away ..... Saturday.(since)
7. *Hamlet* was written ..... Shakespeare. (by)

26. It is best to draw lines ..... a ruler.  
(with)
27. Can you push it ..... the keyhole or  
.... the door? (through/under)
28. I would give it ..... you ..... pleasure  
if it were mine. (to/for)
29. Is it far ..... here .... the station?  
(from/to)
30. No; it takes five minutes .... bus, or  
you can walk .... a quarter of an  
hour.(by/for)
31. The house is ..... fire ! (on)
32. Will you come . .... me ..... a swim  
..... the new swimming pool ....  
lunch? (to/for/at/before)
33. What are you laughing ....? (at)
34. I am looking ..... a letter I had .....  
Sheila this morning? (at/from)
35. Will you be ..... home .... six and  
seven O'clock tonight? (at/between).
36. She fell ..... the ladder when she  
was trying to climb ... an apple  
tree.(off/on)
37. The children often throw their ball  
..... the wall .... mistake.  
(against/by)
38. Switzerland lies ..... France,  
Germany and Italy. (between)
39. He lives ..... his parents not far .....  
here. (with/from)
40. Don't be angry ...me, but listen .....  
what I have to say. (with/to)
41. Who does that watch belong....? (to)
42. Children ..... four years age do not  
often go ... school. (below/to)

I have some books.  
I do not have any book.

- يتم تحويل كلمة there are some الى  
there is any

There are some books.  
There isn't any book.

- يمكن أحيانا نفي الجملة عن طريق أستبدال كلمة  
some بكلمة no و تصيح الجملة منفية من دوا  
إستخدام not

There are some books.  
There are no books.

### الصيغة الإستفهامية و الأسئلة

و هي جمل ليست إخبارية، أي ان المتحدث لا يخبرنا  
شيئ جديد، بل يطلب منا موافقته على معلومات معينة  
أو يطلب من معلومات معينة.

أولاً، صيغة أسئلة نعم أو لا ، وهي الأسئلة التي  
يكون الجواب عليها بكلمة نعم أو لا .

مثل

Did it rain yesterday?  
الجواب إما نعم أو لا .

ولكي نحول الجملة المثبتة الى صيغة الجملة  
الإستفهامية من نوع (نعم أو لا ) فإننا نعيد ترتيب  
الجملة وذلك بتقديم الرابط على المبتداء، و إذا كان  
الرابط يتكون من كلمتين ( have been ) فإننا نقدم  
الكلمة الأولى من المبتداء فقط.

الرابط	المبتداء	الخبر ؟
Is	it	small ?

مثال

It is small .  
Is it small ?

They are tall .  
Are they tall ?

You should go home.  
Should you go home ?

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الرابع عشر

### النفي و الإستفهام و الرد

عرفنا سابقاً، أن قاعدة المبتداء -الرابط - الخبر  
HeN تنص على وجود علاقات بنوية تركيبية موحدة  
للجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية، تتكون من ثلاث أجزاء.

- المبتداء - Heading
- الرابط - Connection
- الخبر - News

هذه التركيبية ، الموحدة سمينها قاعدة

المبتداء-الرابط-الخبر

أو قاعدة

Heading-Connection.

كما مر معنا سابقاً أيضا هناك ثلاث صيغ مختلفة  
للجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية ، وهي صيغة الجملة  
المثبتة، صيغة الجملة المنفية، والصيغة الإستفهامية،  
أو الأسئلة:

### صيغة الجملة المنفية

نسمي الجملة التي تكون على شكل مبتداء-رابط-خبر  
بالجملة المثبتة، ولكي نفي هذه الجملة، يجب ان نضع  
كلمة not بعد الرابط ، أو نلصق كلمة n't بالرابط  
في بعض الحالات

مثال

It is not small .  
It isn't small .  
You should not go home.  
It is not broken.  
You have not completed your job.

ملاحظات على جملة النفي

- يتم تحويل كلمة some الى any

Is it broken ? **Yes, it is. No, it is not.**

You **have been** sleeping all day long?  
**Have you been** sleeping all day long ?  
**Yes, we have.**  
**No, we have not.**

لاحظ تغير ضمير المخاطب بضمير المتكلم وكذلك استخدام أول كلمة من الرابط فقط في الإجابة.

Sauid Arabia is an Islamic country.  
 Is Sauid Arabia an Islamic country?  
**Yes, it is.**

Is your mother an American.  
 No, she is not.

• لاحظ في حالة كون المبتداء غير ضمير فأنا نستخدم ضمير يعود على المبتداء. لأن الهدف من إجابة هذا النوع من الأسئلة أن تكون الإجابة قصيرة جداً.

• لاحظ تفاصيل الإجابة، إستبدال المبتداء بضمير يعود عليه وكذلك وعلامات الترقيم الفاصلة، و طبعاً النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

مثال

هذا سؤال كلاسيكي، دائماً يتكرر و يخطئ فيه الطلاب.

Have you ridden a bicycle since your childhood? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

- A. I have  
 B. You have.  
 C. You Have  
 D. you have

الجواب الصحيح ( A ) ، يجب تغير ضمير المتكلم ، الى المخاطب. و لاحظ ان ان الإضافة في نصف الجملة، لذلك C خطأ لأن بدايتها حرف كبير.

مثال

It is broken.  
 Is it broken ?

You **have been** sleeping all day long?  
**Have you been** sleeping all day long ?

لاحظ ان الجملة المثبتة و المنفية دائماً تنتهي بعلامة الوقوف نقطة "." ؛ و هي جزء من الجملة و تعتبر الجملة خاطئة من دون علامة الوقوف

وكذلك الجملة الإستفهامية يجب أن تنتهي بعلامة "?" للإستفهام و تعتبر الجملة الإستفهامية خاطئة من دون هذه العلامة في الكتابة طبعاً.

طرق الإجابة على أسئلة نعم أو لا، يمكن الإجابة على أسئلة نعم أو لا، بطريقتين مختلفتين

الطريقة الأولى: طريقة نعم|لا المختصرة وتستخدم عادة في الكتابة، مع التركيز على علامات الترقيم و الرابط.

الطريقة الأولى للإجابة على أسئلة نعم|لا تكون على الشكل التالي:

. الرابط + ضمير يعو على المبتداء Yes,  
 + not. الرابط + ضمير يعو على المبتداء No.

ملاحظة، و إذا كان الرابط يتكون من كلمتين ( have been ) نستخدم أول كلمة من الرابط فقط في الإجابة.

مثال

It is small .  
 Is it small ? **Yes, it is.**  
**No, it is not.**

They are tall .  
 Are they tall ? **Yes, they are.**  
**No they are not.**

You **should** go home.  
**Should** you go home ?

**Yes, I should.**

**No, I should not.**

لاحظ تغير ضمير المخاطب بضمير المتكلم

It is broken.



I do not hope so. لا أُرغب في ذلك.

No, I don't hope so.

ويعبر البريطانيون عن أسفهم عن معارضة المتحدث  
بإستخدام عبارة

I am afraied so.

I am afried not.

ثانياً، صيغة أسئلة W، وهي الأسئلة عن  
التفاصيل

النوع الثاني من صيغ الأسئلة، صيغة أسئلة W وهي  
الأسئلة التي تستفهم عن معلومات دقيقة في تفاصيل  
الجملة، وتبدأ دائماً بحسب التفاصيل المراد  
الاستعلام عنها.

Why?, لماذا

When, متي

What?, ماذا

Where? أين

Who? من

How? كيف

Whom? لمن

Whose? من ملك

مثال

Mohammed went to Makka last summer  
for Omrah with his brother using his  
father car.

Why did Mohammed go to Makka?

When did Mohammed go to Makka?

Where did Mohammed go?

Who went with Mohammed?

How did Mohammed go to Makka?

Whose car was it?

صياغة الأسئلة من نوع W

لكي نحول الجملة المثبتة الى صيغة الجملة  
الإستفهامية من نوع ( W ) فإننا نعيد ترتيب الجملة  
وذلك بتقديم الرابط على المبتداء، وحذف المعلومة  
التي يسألنا عنها السؤال. ثم نبدأ السؤال بكلمة W  
المناسبة.

مثال

She has been living in Canada.

She (has been) lived in Canada.

نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في  
نهاية الجملة.

Has she lived in Canada?

مثال

✓We both (have) enjoy the movie.

نقدم الرابط على المبتداء، و نضع علامة إستفهام في  
نهاية الجملة.

Have we both listen enjoy the movie.

الطريقة الثانية: طريقة أعتقد ذلك أو أظن ذلك  
بإستخدام عبارات think so, suppose so,  
belive so, expect so, hope so, (is/am/are  
afraied so) حسب ثقة الشخص  
في الجواب، ويستخدم هذا الأسلوب عادة في  
المحادثة

الطريقة الثانية للإجابة على أسئلة نعم|لا تكون على  
الشكل

مثال

لو سألت امرأة زوجها

Do you love me?

يكون جوابه حسب تأكده

● درجة تأكد 80-90 بالمائة- نستخدم belive

I belive so. أوومن بذلك

I do not belive so. لا أوومن ذلك

No, I don't belive so.

درجة تأكد 60-80 بالمائة - نستخدم think,

suppose, expect

I think so. أعتقد ذلك

I do not think so. لأعتقد ذلك

No, I don't think so.

● درجة تأكد 30-80 بالمائة- نستخدم hope

I hope so. أُرغب بذلك

ويتكون هذا النوع من الأسئلة من ثلاث أجزاء رئيسية:

- الجملة الرئيسية
- فاصلة
- سؤال التأكيد من نوع نعم أو لا
- جواب سؤال التأكيد، ويكون مثل
- جواب سؤال نعم أو لا، بنفس التشكيلة.

مثال

I haven't seen you since Christmas, *have I?*  
Yes, you have.  
No, you haven't.

الجملة الرئيسية

I haven't seen you since Christmas ,  
*have I?* سؤال التأكيد

جواب التأكيد Yes, you have.  
جواب التأكيد No, you haven't.

مثال

I have seen you since Christmas, *haven't I?*  
Yes, you haven't.  
No, you have.  
الجملة الرئيسية

فاصلة I haven't seen you since Christmas

سؤال التأكيد *haven't I?*  
جواب التأكيد Yes, you haven't.  
جواب التأكيد No, you have.

ملاحظة، سؤال التأكيد يكون عكس الجملة الرئيسية من حيث النفي و الإثبات

مثال

ضع أسئلة تأكيد للجمل التالية ؟

1. He is French, isn't he?
2. You've torn your dress, have you?
3. We are late, aren't you?
4. You came by train, didn't you?
5. They weren't angry, were they?

**Mohammed is my father.**  
**Who is your father?**

**I went to Makka last summer by bus.**  
**Did you go to Makka last summer?**  
**Where did you go last summer?**  
**When did you go to Makka?**  
**How did you go to Makka last summer?**

**This is my homework?**  
**What is this?**

**I met your frined Ali?**  
**Whom did you meet?**

الطريقة المختصرة للإجابة على أسئلة من نوع W

أحيانا ما يحتاج المتحدث بالرد على أسئلة من نوع W مختصرة جدا فيها أحيانا نوع من الملل من الإجابة

ملاحظة، هذا الأسلوب يستخدمه الزوجين بعد سنوات طويلة من الزواج

ويكون الجواب أحد الكلمات الثلاث

non , ولا مكان Nowhere , لا شيء Nothing  
لا أحد nobody , ولا أحد Noone , ولا

مثال

حضر الزوج بعد العمل و بدأت الزوجة تسأله

Where did you go? ويرد nowhere  
Whom did you see? ويرد nobody  
What did you eat? ويرد nothing  
How much money you make? ويرد non

ملاحظة، زوجاتنا حنونين و طيبين بس شرحتها كذا  
عشان تذكرها

ثالثا، أسئلة طلب التأكيد و الموافقة، مثل أليس كذلك؟

## صيغة الرد بالموافقة أو المعارضة

من طبيعة الحوار بين البشر أن يقول شخص ما، جملة مثبتة أو منفية، ثم يرد عليه الشخص الآخر إما بالموافقة أو المعارضة. وبذلك يكون لدينا أربع حالات مختلفة:-

1. أن تكون العبارة مثبتة، ويكون الرد بالموافقة

Ahmed is late again. عبارة مثبتة  
Yes, he is. رد بالموافقة  
So, he is. رد بالموافقة  
Of course, he is. رد بالموافقة

2. أن تكون العبارة مثبتة، ويكون الرد بالمعارضة

Ahmed is late again . عبارة مثبتة  
No, he isn't رد بالمعارضة

3. أن تكون العبارة منفية، ويكون الرد بالموافقة

Ahmed is not late. عبارة مثبتة  
No, he isn't رد بالموافقة

4. أن تكون العبارة منفية، ويكون الرد بالمعارضة

Ahmed is not late. عبارة مثبتة  
Yes, he is. رد بالمعارضة

تذكر أن نفي النفي إثبات

## تدريبات

مثال

أستل عن الجمل بأسئلة من نوع نعم أو لا؟

تذكر أن طريقة الحل تقديم الرابط على المبتداء،

1) I haven't seen you since Christmas.

Have I seen you since Christmas?

6. I wasn't long, was I?
7. They have two children, don't they?
8. She has just come, hasn't she?
9. You understand it, don't you?
10. They couldn't do it, can they?
11. You'll tell us, willn't you?
12. Dinner's ready, isn't it?
13. He isn't our teacher, is he?
14. You've taken it, have you?
15. I mustn't be late, must I?
16. He can explain, can't he?
17. He can have another one, can't he?
18. We shall see you tomorrow, shalln't we?
20. They must come again, mustn't they?

ملاحظات على أسئلة التأكيد

• am

مع الرابط am المثبت نستخدم aren't I?  
I am too late, aren't I?  
مع الرابط am المثبت نستخدم am I?  
I am not late, am I?

بينما في الأفلام الكلاسيكية و الكتب التاريخية قد تجد  
I am too late, am I not?

• Let's – Let us

صيغة الأمر Let us هي Let me

Let me help you, will you?  
Let us help you, will you?  
Let's do it, shall we?

• will

مع الرابط will المثبت نستخدم won't  
You will be happy, won't you?  
You will not be happy, will you?

*Must I do it now?*

4. He is very late.  
*Is he very late?*

5. They have time to do it.  
*Do they have time to do it?*

6. You can wait here.  
*Can you wait here?*

7. I am right.  
*Am I right?*

8. We can see from here.  
*Can we see from here?*

9. He must eat it.  
*Must he eat it?*

10. They are French.  
*Are they French?*

11. You must tell him everything.  
*Must you tell him every thing?*

مثال

ضع الجمل التالية في صيغة النفي أو صيغة  
الاستفهام و السؤال؟

1. He walks to work.  
*He does not walk to work.*  
*Does he walk to work?*

2. John likes tea.

3. I do it well.  
*I do not do it well.*

4. He sells good cakes.  
*He does not sell good cake.*

5. You sleep well.  
*Do you sleep well?*

2) It has rained here for more than  
month.

*Has it rained here for more than month?*

3) I haven't ridden a bicycle since my  
childhood.

*Have you ridden a bicycle since your  
childhood?*

*Have ridden a bicycle since my childhood?*

4) King Arthur, the king of nowhere, has  
not spoken Spanish since 1750.

*Has King Arthur, the king of nowhere,  
spoken Spanish since 1750?*

5) The youth revolution early this year  
in Tunisia, Egypt and Libya **has**  
already proven the great impact of  
new technologies such as Facebook  
on the world.

*Has the youth revolution early this year in  
Tunisia, Egypt and Libya already proven  
the great impact of new technologies such  
as Facebook on the world.*

مثال

ضع الجمل التالية في صيغة النفي و صيغة  
الاستفهام و السؤال؟

1. He can read English.

*He can not read English.*  
*Can he read English.*

2. She has a brother .

*She does not have a brother.*  
*Does she have a brother?*

has ليست رابط هنا لأنها بمعنى يملك

3. I must do it now.

مثال

املا الفراغ بعبارة الإستفهام المناسبة ؟

**What, when, where, when, who,  
whome, whose, which**

1. .... is your name? (*what*)
2. .... is that pretty girl? (*who*)
3. .... is your telephone number?  
(*what*)
4. Here are the books! ..... is yours ?  
(*which*)
5. .... is coming to tea?  
(*who*)
6. .... trees grow in Saudi Arabia?  
(*what*)
7. .... is yours, the orange or the  
banana? (*which*)
8. .... colour is it ? (*what*)
9. .... makes tea sweet? (*what*)
10. .... wants a piece of bread? (*who*)
11. .... piece of bread is yours?  
(*which*)
12. .... is the name of your Doctor?  
(*what*)
13. .... is his shop, the one at the end  
of the road, or the one near the post  
office? (*which*)
14. .... understands this exercise?  
(*who*)
15. .... is you understand this  
exercises? (*how*)

6. You speak softly.  
*You do not speak softly.*
7. They play football .  
*They do not play football.*
8. It tastes good.  
*It does not taste good.*
9. He knows Arabic.  
*He does not know Arabic.*
10. I read well.  
*I do not read well.*
11. We believe him.  
*We do not belive him.*
12. He takes English lessons.  
*He does not take English leson.*
13. I keep it in my pocket.  
*I do not keep it in my pocket.*
14. They often go to the movie.  
*They do not often go to the movie.*
15. You write to them everyday.  
*You do not write to them everyday.*
16. It costs a pound.  
*It doesn't cost a pound.*
17. She feels well.  
*She doesn't feel well.*
18. She swims well.  
*She doesn't swimm well.*

10. You asked some questions.

*Did you ask any question?*

11. There are some pictures in this book.

*There is not any picture in this book.*

12. We shall have some rain.

*We shall not have any rain.*

*We shall have no rain.*

13. He told someone else.

*He did not tell anybody.*

*He told noone else.*

14. The boy has some more cake.

*The boy has no more cake.*

*The boy does not have any cake.*

15. I saw somebody at the window.

*I did not see anyone at the window.*

16. I have seen you some where before.

*I have not seen you anywhere before.*

17. She wants some more like that.

*She does not want anymore like that.*

مثال

أعد صياغة الجملة ، باستبدال **no** بكلمة **any**  
مع تغير مايلزم تغيره؟

1. I have no time to help you.

*I do not have any time to help you.*

2. There is no more sugar.

*There isn't any sugar.*

16. .... is the answer to my questions?

*(what)*

17. .... knows the answers? *(who)*

18. .... teachers you English? *(who)*

19. .... are you learning now? *(what)*

مثال

أعد صياغة الجملة بصيغة النفي و الاستفهام ؟

1. I have some books.

*I do not have any books.*

*Do you have any books?*

2. You have some.

*I do not have any.*

3. He bought some ties.

*Did he buy any tie?*

4. You saw someone there.

*Did you see anyone here?*

5. There is some news.

*There isn't any news.*

6. He has sent me some letters.

*Has he sent me any letter?*

*He has not sent me any letter.*

7. They want some paper.

*They do not want any paper.*

8. He gave you some ink.

*Did he give you any ink?*

9. You ate some apples .

*Did you eat any apple?*

15. He gave me nothing to drink.  
*He did not give me anything to drink.*

16. I'll give it to nobody else.  
*I'll not give it to anybody else.*

17. He gave me no ink, so I could  
write no more.  
*He did not give me any ink, so I could not  
write any more.*

مثال

رد على الأسئلة التالية باستخدام عبارة so؟

1. Is there time for another cup of tea?  
(think)

*I think so.*

4. I expect we shall have a good time at  
the party. (hope)

*I hope so.*

5. It seems that the train is very late .  
(afraid)

*I am afraid so.*

أي أنه موافق على ذلك كما أنه يأسف لذلك أيضا

6. I'm sure you'll soon get better .  
(hope)

*I hope so.*

7. Perhaps he will refuse to pay me.  
(not think)

*I don't think so.*

3. I can see my hat nowhere.  
*I can not see my hat anywhere.*

4. He wants no homework tonight.  
*He does not want any homework tonight.*

5. We have seen nobody we know yet.  
*We have not seen anybody we know yet.*

6. I have no more money.  
*I do not have any money.*

7. There are no apples on the tree.  
*There isn't any apple on the tree.*

8. There was nobody in the garden.  
*There was not anybody in the garden.*

9. The poor little boy has no shoes to  
wear.  
*The poor little boy does not have any shoe  
to wear.*

10. There is nowhere for you to sleep.  
*There isn't anywhere for you to sleep.*

11. The cook has put no salt in the  
cabbage.  
*The cook has not put any salt in the  
cabbage.*

12. They will do no more work.  
*There will not be any work.*

13. There was nothing left.  
*There wasn't anything left.*

14. I want no more, thank you.  
*I do not want anymore, thank you.*

*I do not think so.*

18. Is this book a good one? (believe)

*I believe so.*

18. Were you very late? (afraid)

*I am afraid so.*

20. Grammatical exercise are very dull, aren't they? (think)

*I do not think so.*

مثال

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية، بصيغة النفي المختصر؟

- (a) Nowhere ,
- (b) nothing,
- (c) nobody,
- (d) non

- Where are you going ? (a)
- How many exercise have you done today ? (d)
- Who were you taking to ? (c)
- How much did these flowers cost ? (b)
- What are you doing? (a)
- Where has she been? (a)
- Who did you meet? (c)
- Who phoned this morning? ( c )
- How many will you give me ? ( b )
- What did you say? (b)
- Who told you to put it under the table ? ( c )
- What do they want ? (b)
- Who do they want to see ? ( c )

8. We may arrive too late.

(hope)

*I hope not.*

9. Mohanned and Lamees is a good TV show ? (think)

*I do not think so.*

10. You had a very unpleasant time, I'm told. (afraid)

*I am afraid not. I had a great time.*

11. Jeddah is on the cost, isn't it ?

(believe)

*I believe so.*

12. I think it will rain tomorrow.

(afraid)

*I am afraid so.*

ملاحظة في بريطانيا يكرهوا المطر

13. You are having a holiday this year, aren't you? (suppose)

*I suppose so.*

14. I expect this case is too heavy for you (not think)

*I do not think so.*

15. It's time to go, isn't it ? (believe)

*I believe so.*

16. You haven't used this before, have you? (not think)



16. They are learning English, aren't they?
17. He has a lot of books, doesn't he?
18. She is too young, isn't she?
19. You eat very quickly, don't you?
20. We must answer the letter, mustn't he?
21. He is greedy, isn't he?
22. George has just left, hasn't he?
23. He lives at the end of the road, doesn't he?
24. He didn't come, did he?
25. You were there, weren't you?
26. I mustn't be late, must I?
27. Boys don't like to wash, do they?
28. She doesn't play tennis, does she?
29. We got home very late, didn't we?
30. She sang well, didn't she?
31. You broke the window, didn't you?
32. They didn't see you, did they?
33. That boy ran very fast, didn't he?
34. You don't like sugar, do you?
35. He can do that for you, can he?
36. I am very stupid, aren't I?
37. I am not stupi, am I?
38. She doesn't want to go, does she?

- Which of theses two books have you read ? ( d )
- How many have I give you already ? ( b )
- Who told you to do that ? ( c )
- What are you thinking about ? ( b )
- How many of these are mine ? ( d )
- Where did you go last night ? ( a )
- Which foot have you hurt ? ( d )

مثال

ضع اسئلة تأكيد للجمل التالية ؟

1. He is early this morning, isn't he?
2. We must go now, mustn't we?
3. You can swim well, can't you?
4. I was very quick, was I?
5. It could be done, couldn't it?
6. You won't be late, will you?
7. This winter hasn't been cold, has it?
8. They ought not to be here, oughtn't they?
9. You shouldn't smoke, should you?
10. He has finished, has he?
11. I am not so fat as you, am I?
12. They always work hard, don't they?
13. He speaks English well, deosn't he?
14. You can help him, can't you?
15. You teach English, don't you?

2. The clock has lost a hand! *so* ....  
*So, it has.*
  3. That music sounds pleasant . *yes* ...  
*Yes, it does.*
  4. You've got some ink on your sleeve.  
*So, I have.*
  5. I'm sure you will all learn English quickly .  
*Of course, we will.*
  6. Your book has fallen on the floor.  
*So, it has.*
  7. We must water the garden this evening .  
*Yes , we must.*
  8. Perhaps your teacher is right .  
*Of course, he is.*
  9. She ought to go home soon .  
*Yes, she ought.*
  10. They must pay us back the money .  
*Of course, they must.*
  11. He swims better than his friend .  
*Yes, he does.*
- You've spilt some coffee on your sleeve !  
*So, I have.*

39. He loves finishing, doesn't he?
40. We ought not to have listened, ought we?
41. You knew that before, didn't you?
42. He plays the violin badly, doesn't he?
43. They went out just now, didn't they?
44. You'll have some more tea, won't you?
45. You needn't stay long, do you? ~~هم~~
46. He used to live here, didn't he? ~~هم~~
47. You would like to come, wouldn't you?
48. I shan't be in your way, shall I?
49. I ought to ring him up, oughtn't I?
50. He 'll fall down, won't he?
51. You ever used to wear a hat, didn't you?
52. I'm afraid I'm a little late, aren't I?
53. He hadn't met you before, had he?
54. Come and see me tomorrow, will you?
55. Let's pretend we're not here, shall we?
56. Let me have a book, will you?
57. I'd better go, had I?

مثال

أكمل العبارات التالية بالموافقة في الجمل التالية ؟

1. Ahmed is late again . *yes* ...  
*Yes, he is.*

*No, you were not.*

13. The other boys can come tomorrow.

*Oh no, they can't.*

14. I wrote it on the blackboard last week.

*No, you didn't.*

15. Why did you write the exercise in pencil ?

*No, I didn't.*

16. I suppose we must wait for the others.

*No, we must not.*

17. You'll be late if you don't hurry.

*No, I won't.*

18. Why must I wait till the end ?

*No, you must not.*

19. You can easily beat him at chess.

*No, I can't.*

مثال

أكمل العبارات التالية بعبارات عدم الموافقة ؟

1. You can't read this !

*Yes, I can.*

2. I haven't any paper!

*Yes, you do.*

3. We don't have coffee for breakfast.

*Yes, we do.*

مثال

أكمل العبارات التالية بعبارات عدم الموافقة ؟

1. You've done this exercise before.

*No, I haven't.*

2. Don't hurry, we have plenty of time .

*No, we don't.*

3. Why are you so angry ?

*No, I am not.*

4. He has plenty of money.

*No, he doesn't.*

5. I feel sure this dog will bite me.

*Oh no, it won't.*

6. Your friend can lend you the money.

*No, he can't.*

7. You've made a mistake.

*No, I haven't.*

8. How did you break your pen ?

*No, I didn't.*

9. The door's locked.

*No, it isn't.*

10. You ought to do at least five homework's a week.

*No, I ought not.*

11. I arrived long before you.

*No, you didn't.*

12. I was here long before you.

مثال

أكمل العبارات التالية بعبارات الموافقة مع سؤال التأكيد؟

1. They won't like it.  
*No, they wont, will they.*

لاحظ عبارات الترقيم، مهمة جدا، لا يوجد علامة سؤال ؟

2. We can't cross the street here.  
*No, they can't, can they.*
3. You didn't come early enough.  
*No, I did not, did I.*
4. We aren't clever enough.  
*No, we aren't, are we.*
5. He wasn't at the party.  
*No, he wasn't, was he.*
6. It hasn't rained for weeks.  
*No, it hasn't, has it.*
7. We haven't come very far.  
*No, we haven't, have we.*
8. There isn't enough for us all.  
*No, ther isn't, is there.*
9. It's not a very big house.  
*No, it isn't, is it.*
10. You mustn't put your feet on the chair.  
*No, I mustn't, must I.*

4. He won't understand us!  
*Yes, he will.*
5. I know you don't like chocolate!  
*Yes, I do.*
6. You couldn't understand a single word!  
*Yes, I can.*
7. Why can't you write more neatly!  
*But, I do.*  
*But, I can.*
8. It wasn't me you saw.  
*Yes, it was*
9. I'm not late today!  
*Yes, you are.*
10. You can't see the blackboard from there!  
*Yes, I can.*
11. You didn't pay him for the book.  
*Yes, I did.*
12. Why didn't you tell me his name ?  
*But, I did.*
13. I'm not stupid , you know!  
*Yes, you are.*
14. Well, *you're* not very clever !  
*Yes, I am.*
15. Your mother won't like this film.

مثال

أكمل العبارات التالية بعبارات الموافقة مع سؤال التأكيد؟

1. I'm rather sleepy today.

*Yes, you are, aren't you.*

2. It rained hard last night.

*Yes, it did, didn't it.*

3. It's a very large well.

*Yes, it is, isn't it.*

4. It's a very large school.

*Yes, it is, isn't it.*

5. They swam very well.

*Yes, they did, didn't they.*

6. You must leave earlier today.

*Yes, I must, mustn't I.*

7. They gave us a lovely tea.

*Yes, they did, didn't they?*

8. I'm very good at English .

*Yes, you are, aren't you.*

9. You're getting fat.

**Yes, I am, aren't I.**

ملاحظة، حالة خاصة عند سؤال التأكيد نقلب

الربط "

10. It was very hot yesterday.

*Yes, it was, wasn't it.*

11. The apples will soon be ripe

*Yes, it will, won't it.*

مثال

Ali who is you partner was listening to music while you were sleeping.

تتكون هذه الجملة من دمج الجمل الثلاث التالية

- Ali was listening to music.
- Ali is you partner.
- You were sleeping.

لاحظ ان الجمل المدمجة تعطينا معلومات أكثر من الجمل المفردة حيث أنها تبين لنا العلاقات المختلفة بين كل جملة و الأخرى.

مثال

Both Sims and Peter were familiar with the nature of the geologic problem they were dealing with and were prepared to take risks.

### علاقات الجمل التي يمكن دمجها

في اللغة الإنجليزية، تدمج جملتين فأكثر لتوضيح العلاقات بينهما التي قد تكون

- علاقات ترتيب زمني (أن يكون الخبر في أحدها قبل، بعد، أثناء، حين ، منذ، ... الجملة الأخرى)

I called your office after I saw her.

I called your office before I saw her.

- علاقة سبب و نتيجة ( أي ان يكون الحدث في أحد الجملتين ناتج عن الأخرى)،

He went to bed because she saw sleepy.

- علاقة تضاد، (أي أن يكون حدوث الحدثين في الجملتين متضادين)

I went to bed even though I wasn't sleepy.

## الباب الأول

### الفصل الخامس عشر

#### دمج وتعاقب وتوصيل جملتين و أكثر

##### الجزء الأول : دمج الجمل

لعلك الآن قد تعرفت على التركيب الأساسية للجملة في اللغة الانجليزية، والتي سمينها في الأبواب السابقة: قاعدة المبتداء - الرابط - الخبر HcN

- المبتداء Heading -
- الرابط Connection -
- الخبر News -

من هذه التركيب البسيطة، يستطيع الكاتب أو المتحدث تركيب جمل أطول، يتم فيها دمج جملتين و أكثر، ليظهر العلاقات و الترابط بين المعلومات و التفاصيل المقدمة في الجملة.

مثال

Ali was listening to music while you were sleeping.

عند تحليلنا للجملة ( أي تحديد المبتداء و الرابط و الخبر )، نلاحظ و جود جملتين لكل منها مبتداء و رابط وخبر، مستقل، ثم نجد كلمة while التي تقوم بربط المعنى بين الجملتين،

Ali was listening to music

while

you were sleeping.

نسمي هذا النوع من الجمل، جملة مركبة من دمج جملتين، و أحيانا تدمج العديد من الجمل في جملة واحدة.

shortly before قبل ذلك بوقت قصير  
a short time before قبل ذلك بوقت قليل  
a little while before قبل ذلك ببرهة  
not long before ليس قبل ذلك بوقت كثير

مثال

I called your office shortly after I saw her.

A short time before I saw her, I called your office.

I called your office not long after I saw her.

I called your office a little while before I saw her.

• when عندما، تربط التزامن بين حدثين في جملتين مندمجتين، كما يلي:-

- أن يكون كلا الجملتين في الماضي (رابط did)

did when did  
did when was

مثال

I became sick when I ate that food.  
I became sick when I was there.

- أن يكون كلا الجملتين في الماضي ، و تكون إحدى الجملتين تصف حدث مستمراً، أثناء حدوث الجملة الثانية .

did when was

مثال

I came in when he was sleeping.

- أن يكون كلا الجملتين تتحدث عن المستقبل أو يكون أحدهما عادة تتوقع حدوثها في المستقبل.

- علاقة شرط، (أى أن يكون حدوث إحدى الجملتين شرط لحدوث الأخرى)

I will go to bed if I was sleepy.

عبارات الدمج بين جملتين

الكلمات التي تحتها خطين في المثال السابق، هي كلمات وعبارات خاصة مثل (قبل before ، بعد after ، أثناء while ، حين when ، منذ since ، ... ) نسميها الكلمات أو العبارات الخاصة بدمج الجمل أو "عبارات الدمج"، و عند تحليلنا للجملة نضع تحتها خطين.

موقع عبارات الدمج بين جملتين

عادة ماتظهر عبارات الدمج بين الجمل في الوسط بين الجملتين، كما في الأمثلة السابقة.

وإذا أراد الكاتب أو المتحدث أن يركز على الجملة الثانية ، فننا نستخدم أسلوب تقديم التفاصيل، أى نقدم عبارة الدمج مع الجملة الثانية، و نفصل بين الجملتين بعلامة الترقيم الفاصلة (،)

I called your office after I saw her.

After I saw her ، I called your office.

أولاً، عبارات الترتيب الزمني

فيما يلي نستعرض بعض الكلمات التي تستخدم لدمج جملتين مترابطتين بعلاقات زمنية، :-

• After ، before قبل و بعد زمنياً  
ومنها صيغ مختلف مختلفة تبين درجات القرب و البعد في الزمن

Shortly after بعد ذلك بلحظة  
a short time after بعد ذلك بوقت قلي  
a little while after بعد ذلك ببرهة  
not long after ليس بعد ذلك بوقت كثير  
soon after حالا بعد ذلك

I had already left by the time you cam.

• since منذ،

have since did  
have since was

مثال

I have not seen him since he left.  
She has not called me since she was 10  
years old.

ملاحظة، تستخدم أحيانا كلمة ever مع كلمة since  
للتأكيد

مثال

I have not seen him ever since he left.

• until, till حتي،

did until did  
did until was

مثال

I stayed there until you called me.

ملاحظة، تستخدم أحيانا كلمة till بدلا من كلمة until  
في الكلام العام والمحادثة، و لا تستخدم في الكتابة، رغم  
أنها أراها كثيرا في الجرائد كثيرا.

مثال

She kept trying till she solved the  
problem.

• As soon as, once حالما، ما أن يحدث الحدث  
الأول، و هو حدث متوقع حدوثه لأنها العادة، ألا و  
يحدث بعده الحدث الثاني مباشرة.

will once do  
will as soon as do

will when will  
will when do

مثال

I will come in when you will sing.  
I will be ready when you will come in.

ملاحظة، في هذا المثال كلا الجملتين قد يحدثان في  
المستقبل لكننا لانعرف عن احتمال حدوث أي منهما.

مثال

I will come in when she sings.

في هذه الجملة، هي متعودة على الغناء، و أتوقع أنها  
ستغني في المستقبل، و سوف أدخل عندما تغني.

• while, as أثناء ، أي ان تحدث إحدى الجملتين  
أثناء حدوث الجملة الأخرى، كما يلي:-

did while did  
did while was  
was while was

did as did  
did as was  
was as was

مثال

I was talking while he were sleeping.  
I was talking as they were sleeping.  
As I was walking home, I saw her.

• by the time عندما حان ذلك الوقت،

did by the time did  
was by the time did  
had (already) by the time was

مثال

He was dead by the time I went there.  
I was sick by the time you came in.



was because did  
did because was

احتمالات الروابط كثيرة على الطرفين، لكن يجب ان تلاحظ المعني

مثال

I was tired because I worked all day.

I became sick because I was not careful..

• now that بما أن، أي أن الحدث في الجملة الثانية وقع بسبب الحدث في الجملة الأولى.

\* because \*

\* احتمالات الروابط كثيرة على الطرفين، لكن يجب ان تلاحظ المعني

مثال

Now that you have finished your homework, you can play now.

You can pay me now that you have a job.

ثالثاً، عبارات علاقة التضاد

- **even though** بالرغم من، (أي أن يكون حدوث الحدثين في الجملتين متضادين)

I went to bed even though I wan't sleepy

- **while** في المقابل أو على النقيض (أي أن تكون الجملة الثانية نقيض الجملة الأولى)

Mohammed is fat while his brother is thin.

Ali is tall while his sister is short.

مثال

I will call you once it stops raining.  
I will call her as soon as I reach home.

• طالما، As long as, so long as

will as long as do  
will so long as do

مثال

I will never call her as long as she smokes.

I will work for him so long as he pays me good money.

• whenever, every time أي مرة أو كل مرة، أي ان يحدث الحدث الأول عندما يحدث الحدث الثاني، أو كلمت حدث الحدث الثاني

do whenever do  
do every time do

مثال

I say good morning whenever I meet her.  
I say good morning every time I meet her.

ثانياً، عبارات علاقة سبب و نتيجة

علاقة سبب و نتيجة ( أي ان يكون الحدث في أحد الجملتين ناتج عن الأخرى)،

He went to bed because she saw sleepy.

فيما يلي نستعرض بعض الكلمات التي تستخدم لدمج جملتين مترابطتين بعلاقة سبب و نتيجة، :-

• because لأن، أي أن الحدث في الجملة الثانية وقع بسبب الحدث في الجملة الأولى.

الشرط : it may rain tomorrow ، يفهم أيضا من الجملة أنه من المتوقع أيضا أن تمطر لانه عادة الجو عند المتحدث.

جواب الشرط : I will take the bus

معنى الجملة، سوف أركب الباص في حالة واحدة فقط وهي إذا كن هناك مطر

مثال

Only if you work hard, you will get an "A".

فقط إذا عملت بجد و إجتهد فأنتك تحصل على درجة ممتاز

- unless إلا إذا، (أى أن يكون حدوث الجملة الثانية الشرط الوحيد لعدم حدوث الجملة الأولى)

I will walk to work unless it rains.

الشرط : it may rain tomorrow ، يفهم أيضا من الجملة أنه من المتوقع أيضا أن تمطر لانه عادة الجو عند المتحدث.

جواب الشرط : I will walk to work

معنى الجملة، أمشي للعمل إلا إذا كانت تمطر (لن أمشي في حالة المطر)

مثال

Unless you work hard, you will get an "F".

إلا إذا عملت بجد و إجتهد فأنتك ستحصل على درجة "راسب"

- in case في حالة أن، تحسبا ، (أى أن يكون حدوث الجملة الأولى يكون تحسبا لحدوث الجملة الثانية)

I will be at home in case it rains.

رابعاً، عبارات الشرط

- if إذا، (أى أن تكون الجملة الثانية شرط لحدوث الجملة الأولى)

I will take the bus if it rains then.

الشرط : it may rain then ، يفهم أيضا من الجملة أنه من المتوقع أيضا أن تمطر لانه عادة الجو عند المتحدث.

جواب الشرط : I will take the bus

مثال

If you work hard, you will get an "A".

إذا عملت بجد و إجتهد فأنتك تحصل على درجة ممتاز

- even if حتى ولو، (أى أن يحدث جواب الشرط، في كلا الحالتين، سوا تحقق الشرط أم ام يتحقق)

I will walk tomorrow even if it rains.

الشرط : it may rain ، يفهم أيضا من الجملة أنه من المتوقع أيضا أن تمطر لانه عادة الجو عند المتحدث.

جواب الشرط : I will walk

معنى الجملة، سوف أمشي حتي ولو أنها كانت تمطر

مثال

Even If you work hard, you will get an "F".

حتي ولو عملت بجد فأنتك تحصل على درجة "راسب"

- only if فقط إذا، (أى أن يكون حدوث الجملة الثانية الشرط الوحيد لحدوث الجملة الأولى)

I will take the bus only if it rains.

مثال

لذلك، قررت أن أغادر الحفلة.

لكن، بقي محمد واقف في مكانه.

لاحظ ان الجملتين السابقتين، لا يفهم معناهما، دون معرفة ما قبلهما، وكذلك لاحظ كلمة "لذلك" وتأثيرها على الجملة.

مثال

كان صوت الموسيقى عاليا، لذلك، قررت أن أغادر الحفلة.

خرج الجميع مسرعين من القاعة، لكن، بقي محمد واقف في مكانه.

لاحظ ان الجملتين السابقتين، يفهم معناهما، بمعرفة ما قبلهما، وتسمى هذه الجمل بالجمال المتعاقبة.

مثال

Living conditions in Europe were terrible.

Many people did moved to Canada for a better life.

جملتين، منفصلتين لكل منهما مبتداء، و رابط وخبر.

لكن لا توجد علاقة بينهما.

Living conditions in Europe were terrible. **Therefore**, many people moved to Canada for a better life.

لاحظ، إضافة كلمة التعاقب therefore بمعنى لذلك جعلت الجملة الثانية تعقيا على الجملة الأولى. وتستخدم اللغة الإنجليزية العديد من الكلمات والعبارات التي تجعل الجملة تعقيا على ماسبقها، و نسمي هذه الكلمات "عبارات التعاقب"، وعند تحليلنا للجملة نضع سهم تحت هذه العبارات يكون اتجاهه

الشرط : it may rain tomorrow ، يفهم أيضا من الجملة أنه من المتوقع أيضا أن تمطر لأنه عادة الجو عند المتحدث.

جواب الشرط : I will be at home

معنى الجملة، سوف أبقى في المنزل تحسبا لحدوث المطر.

مثال

In case I was late, you (should) call Ali.

في حالة تأخري، اتصل بعلي.

- **whether or not** سوا كان أو لم يكن، (أى أن يحدث جواب الشرط، في كلا الحالتين، سوا تحقق الشرط أم ام يتحقق )

I will walk tomorrow whether or not it rains.

الشرط : it may rain ، يفهم أيضا من الجملة أنه من المتوقع أيضا أن تمطر لأنه عادة الجو عند المتحدث.

جواب الشرط : I will walk

معنى الجملة، سوف أمشي سوا أنها كانت تمطر أو لم تكن تمطر.

مثال

Whether or not you work hard, you will get an "F"

سواء عملت بجد أو لم تعمل فأنت تحصل على درجة "راسب"

الجزء الثاني : تعاقب الجمل

تسمى الجملة التي لا يفهم معناها إلا بمعرفة ماسبقها، جملة تعقيب.

أي أن تكون الجملة الثانية، متعارض مع ما سبقها.

وعند تحليلنا للجملتين المتعاقبتين من هذا النوع فإننا نضع سهمين متعاكسين تحت عبارات التعاقب.

مثال

Both Sims and Peter were aware the nature of the geologic problem. But, they totally ignore.

لاحظ أن الجملة الثانية تتعارض مع ما سبقها. الجملة الأولى تخبرنا أنهم يعرفون المشكلة الجيولوجية، والجملة الثانية تخبرنا أنهم أهملوها، و التعارض هنا أنه كان من الواجب أن يعملوا شيئاً، لاحظ ان التعارض هنا من وجهة نظر الكاتب أو المتحدث.

مثال

Both Sims and Peter were aware the nature of the geologic problem. Unfortunately, they were not able report it.

لاحظ أن الجملة الثانية تتعارض مع ما سبقها. الجملة الأولى تخبرنا أنهم يعرفون المشكلة الجيولوجية، والجملة الثانية تخبرنا أنهم لاسف لم يستطيعوا أن يقدموا تقريراً عنها.

• علاقة : تسلسل 1، 2، 3، ...

{ First, second, Next, Finally, above all }

هذه الكلمات تجعل الجمل مترابطة مع بعضها بعلاقات تسلسلية. وعند تحليلنا لهذه الجمل فإننا نضع رقم لكل جملة.

مثال

This business proposal is very bad. First<sup>1</sup>, it is illegal. Second<sup>2</sup>, it is dangerous. Finally<sup>3</sup>, it is not profitable.

حسب نوع علاقة الجملة مع ما سبقها. لاحظ الفاصلة التي تتبع عبارات التعقيب لتفصلها عن الجملة الثانية.

## علاقات التعاقب

عندما تكون الجملة تعقبياً على ما سبقها، فإنها ترتبط مع ما سبقها بأحد العلاقات التالي:

علاقة : سبب ← نتيجة

أي أن تكون الجملة الثانية، نتيجة لما سبقها. وعند تحليلنا للجملتين المتعاقبتين من هذا النوع فإننا نضع سهم يتجه نحو اليمين تحت عبارات التعاقب.

• therefore لذلك

Living conditions in Europe were terrible. Therefore, many people moved to Canada for a better life.

• thus لذلك

Living conditions in Europe were terrible. Thus, many people moved to Canada for a better life.

• consequently لذلك

Living conditions were terrible in Europe. Consequently, many people moved to Canada.

• hence لذلك

Living conditions were terrible in Europe. Hence, many people moved to Canada.

• it follows that لذلك

Living conditions were terrible in Europe. It follows that many people moved to Canada.

- علاقة : تضاد ←→

He was singing when you arrived.

الجملتين هما:

He was singing. تصف الجلة أنه كان يغني

You arrived. وصلت

بوصل الجملتين يمكننا أن نعبر عن وصف حالة الشخص عندما أو أثناء حدوث حدث ما. كما يمكن

صياغتها بصيغة while

He was singing **when** you arrived .

**While** he was singing you arrived.

- إذا كانت لدينا جملتين مدمجتين، و كان أحدهما في محل مفعول للأخري، فإنه يمكن أ ستبدال الجملة الثانية بالمصدر المشتق من فعل الجملة الثانية، و بذلك ينتج لدينا جملة واحدة برابط واحد.

مثال

I was sorry when I heard you were ill

I was sorry to hear you were ill.

- يمكن دمج جملتين بأستخدام صيغة المبالغة too مع مصدر الجملة الثانية، و بذلك ينتج لدينا جملة واحدة برابط واحد.

مثال

I was hot.

I cannot drink it.

It was too hot to drink.

كات القهوة ساخنة لدرجة أنه لايمكن شربها، صيغة مبالغة لأن الشخص أكيد أنه قد شرب القهوة

- يمكن دمج جملتين بأستخدام صيغة مايكفي enough مع مصدر الجملة الثانية، و بذلك ينتج لدينا جملة واحدة برابط واحد.

مثال

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية بأستخدام صيغ الدمج أو التعاقب؟ مع تغير مايلزم

- This coffee is very hot.
- I can't drink it.

*This coffee is very hot. Therefore, I cannot drink it.*

- John is very tall.
- John can touch the ceiling.

*John can touch the ceiling because he is very tall.*

*John is very tall. Hence, he can touch the ceiling.*

- This room is small.
- We can't all get in.

*Because this room is small, we can't all get in.*

*This room is small. Thus, we can't all get in.*

- The weather was hot.
- We couldn't go out.

*Since the weather was hot, we couldn't go out.*

*The weather was hot. Consequently, we couldn't go out*

## أساليب دمج جملتين

- يمكن دمج جملتين تصف أحدهما حالة معينة عندما حدث حدث آخر في الماضي، عادة مايتيم دمج الجملتين بأستخدام عبارة when , While

مثال

لاحظ كلمة the girl في الجملة الأولى مبتداء وفي الجملة الثانية في الخبر مفعول به، لذلك نستخدم whom

مثال

You are smart.

You can solve this problem.

You are smart enough to solve the problem.

The girl whom you saw yesterday gave me this book.

أي أنك ذكي بما يكفي، لحل المسألة.

من الجملة الأولى لم نعرف من هي البنت، بينما الجملة الثانية تفيدنا أن البنت تحدثت معه، بتوصيل أستطعنا ربط الجملتين و who الجملتين بكلمة توضيح المعنى بدقة أكثر

### الجزء الثالث : توصيل الجمل

يتم توصيل جملتين بعبارات

who, whom, whose, which, that, what, when, where

تسمى whom بعبارات توصيل المفعول أو الخبر لأننا وصلنا الجملة الثانية بالمفعول في الجملة الثانية .

لإضافة المزيد من التفاصيل للمبتداء، للفاعل ، للمفعول ، للصفة أو للإسم المجرور،

يسمي عبارات بعبارات توصيل العاقل من المبتداء و الخبر، أي يكون المبتداء أو الخبر الموصول شخص عاقل أي لا يكون شئ مثل كتاب أو جماد.

توصيل الجمل يعطينا طريقة لتوضيح المعنى دون الحاجة الى تكرار الموصول

مثال

مثال

The girl gave me this book.  
This book is large and heavy.

The girl gave me this book.  
The girl was speaking to you.

لاحظ كلمة the book في الجملة الثانية مبتداء وفي الجملة الأولى في الخبر مفعول به، لكن الكتاب غير عاقل (جماد) لذلك نستخدم which

The girl who was speaking to you gave me this book.

The girl gave me this book which is large and heavy.

من الجملة الأولى لم نعرف من هي البنت، بينما الجملة الثانية تفيدنا أن البنت تحدثت معه، بتوصيل أستطعنا ربط الجملتين و who الجملتين بكلمة توضيح المعنى بدقة أكثر

تسمى which بعبارات توصيل المبتداء، أو الفاعل أو المفعول أو الخبر الغير العاقل أي الجماد.

تسمى who بعبارات توصيل الفاعل أو المبتداء لأننا وصلنا الجملة الثانية بالمبتداء أو الفاعل في الجملة الأولى

مثال

مثال

The girl is my friend.  
You are reading her book.

The girl gave me this book.  
You saw the girl yesterday.

The girl whose book you are reading is my friend.

لاحظ وصلنا البنت بالكتاب لذلك نستخدم توصيلة الملكية للعاقل و غير العاقل (جماد)

who, how, which, whom, what  
when, where

I do not know.

How do I make coffee?

الجملة الجديدة ليست سؤال

*I do not know how to make coffee.*

I do not know.

What do I need to do?

*I do not know what to do.*

Do you know?

What do you need to do?

*Do you know what to do?*

### تدريبات

مثال

أكمل الجمل التالية ؟

- 1.The man ..... you want has just left. (*that*)
- 2.The lady ..... was here yesterday has gone to London. (*who*)
- 3.The magazine ..... you lent me is very interesting. (*which*) أو محذوف
- 4.The fish ..... I ate yesterday was not good. (*that or which*) أو محذوف
5. The street ..... leads to the school is very wide. (*that or which*) أو محذوف
- 6.The flowers ..... I cut this morning are still fresh.
- 7.The dress ..... you are wearing is lovely.
- 8.The person ..... is sitting next to me is not very clever. (*who*)

### خصائص توصيل الجمل

• دمج و توصيل و تعقيب الجمل عادة مايكون في العبارات المكتوبة و نادرا مايستخدم في المحادثة.

• يمكن إستخدام كلمة *that* بدلا من *which*, *whom*, *who* وهذا هو الشائع

The book which you read is mine.

The book that you read is mine.

• يمكن حذف كلمة *that* *which*, *whom*, *who* ماعدا *who* الفاعل أو المبتداء

The book which you read is mine.

The book that you read is min.

The book you read is min.

The man who is sitting next to you is my father.

لايمكن حذف *who* الفاعل

• توضع الجملة الموصولة بين فاصلتين إذا كانت معلومات إضافية ، ولا تحذف عبارات التوصيل *which*, *whom*, *who* ولا تستخدم *that* أبدا  
My brother Mike, who met you yesterday, is coming with us.

لاحظ الفاصلتين ، تعني هنا ان العبارات الموصولة معلومات إضافية

My brother Mike, whom you met yesterday, is coming with us.

في كلا الحالتين المعلومات المهمة في الجملة

My brother Mike is coming with us.

بينما في الكتابة يضع الكاتب بعض المعلومات الثانوية

• يمكن دمج جملة مع سؤال بأستخدام أو سؤالين

2. The man .... you spoke to in the street is my English teacher.
3. There's the lady ..... purse has been stolen. (*whose*)
4. The people ..... you were living with in London are coming to see you.
5. The picture ..... you were taking about has been sold.
6. "People ..... live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones". (*who*)
7. Buy it back from the man ..... you sold it do.
8. Can you remember the person ..... you took it from?
9. Where is there a shop ..... Sells picture – postcards? (*that*)
10. What's that music ..... you are listening to ?
11. I don't like the house ..... he lives in.
12. The people .... are looking at that house are my parents. (*who*)
13. The house .... they are looking at is my house.
14. And the girl ..... you see at the door is my sister.
15. The knife ..... we use to cut to bread with is very sharp.
16. I'm afraid that's all ..... I've got.
17. The man ..... is sitting at the desk is the secretary. (*who*)

9. The man ..... cut your hair did it very badly. (*who*)
10. The letter ..... we received today had no stamp on it.
11. The boy .... threw that stone will be punished. (*who*)
12. The doctor ..... she visited is famous. (*whom*)
13. The noise ..... you hear is only our dog fighting.
14. The pencil ..... is lying on the desk is mine. (*which*)
15. The tree ..... stands near the gate has lovely flowers. (*which*)
16. The pen ..... I lost was not a good one. (*that*)
17. The pudding ..... she made this morning is a very good one. (*that*)
18. The flowers ..... my friend gave me have died. (*that*)
19. The little boy ..... brings the milk hasn't been for three days. (*who*)
20. The eggs ..... I bought yesterday are bad. (*which*)

مثال

أكمل الجمل التالية إذا لزم الأمر فقط أي لا يمكن حذف عبارات التوصيل؟

1. The book ..... I was reading yesterday was a contact story.



10. Tommy and Mary, ..... are playing in the garden, are very naughty children. *(who)*
11. George Washington, ..... become president of the United states , never told a lie. *(who)*
12. Grammar, ..... I dislike very much , is good for me . *(which)*
13. In Norway , ..... is a Scandinavian country , you can see the midnight sun. *(which)*
14. Smoking , ..... is a bad habit , is nevertheless popular. *(which)*
15. The teacher in the next class, ..... name I can never remember , makes a lot of noise. *(whose)*
16. He is a famous scientist, about ..... many books have been written. *(whom)*
17. Geometry , about ..... I know nothing, seems a very dull subject. *(which)*
18. The tower of London, about ..... a lecture is to be given tomorrow, is a famous historic building. *(which)*
19. Beethoven, ..... music you have just been listening to, was one of the world's finest composers. *(whose)*
20. Chess, ..... is very old game, is difficult to play. *(which)*

مثال

أدمج العبارات التالية مع تغيير ما يلزم ؟

18. The man ..... you see at the desk is the secretary.
19. The glass ..... you are drinking out of hasn't been washed.
20. The man ..... you are talking about left last week.

مثال

أكمل الجمل التالية إذا لزم الأمر فقط أي لا يمكن حذف عبارات التوصيل؟  
تذكر، بين الفاصلتين لا يمكن الحذف

1. My sister, ..... you met yesterday , want to speak to you. *(whom)*
2. The father, .... has been to Paris, has just returned. *(who)*
3. The London train, ..... should arrive at 2.30 , is late. *(which)*
4. Flies, ..... come mostly in the summer, carry disease. *(that)*
5. Oxford university, ..... is one of the oldest in the world, has many different colleges. *(which)*
6. Swimming, ..... is a good sport, makes people strong. *(which)*
7. Julius Caesar, ..... was a great general, was also a writer . *(who)*
8. Grass, .... cows and horses love, is always green in England. *(which)*
9. Air, ..... we breathe ,is made up of many gases. *(that)*

*My aunt, with whom I am living, is very kind to me.*

*My aunt, whom I am living with, is very kind to me.*

7. Is that the new station? You pointed it out to me last week.

*Is that the new station that you pointed out to me last week?*

*Is that the new station to which you pointed out last week?*

8. Bring me the cigarettes. I left them on the table. The table stands by the windows.

*Bring me the cigarettes I left on the table which stands by the windows.*

9. My teacher says that I will pass my examinations. I have great confidence in him.

*My teacher, in whom I have great confidence, says that I will pass my examinations.*

10. The matter has been settled. You were taking about it last night.

*The matter, you were taking about last night, has been settled.*

11. I've seen only a few . they were all black. (begin with " the few....").

*The few that I have seen were all black.*

12. The best play is probably King Lear. Shakespeare wrote it but I haven't read it.

1. Irrawaddy flows through many large swamps. It is one of the most important rivers in Asia.

*Irrawaddy, which is one of the most important rivers in Asia, flows through many large swamps.*

2. We must certainly see the antiquities of Egypt .Such a great deal has been written about them.

*We must certainly see the antiquities of Egypt about which such a great deal has been written.*

3. The greater fire of London destroyed a large part of the city. It broke out in 1666.

*The greater fire of London, which broke out in 1666 , destroyed a large part of the city.*

4. Mr. Jones came here only last week. He is living next door to us.

*Mr. Jones, who is living next door to us, came here only last week.*

5. This is the man. I gave the money to him yesterday.

*This is the man whom I gave the money to yesterday.*

*This is the man to whom I gave the money yesterday.*

الصيغة الثانية أصح

6. My aunt is very kind to me. I am living with her.

5. Ask him ..... to put it.(where)
6. I don't understand ..... to drive a car.(how)
7. You must go ..... he tells you.(where)
8. Can you suggest ..... to write? (what)
9. She doesn't know ..... dress to wear.(which)
10. I can't remember ..... to do it.(how)
11. We don't know ..... to show it to.(whom)
12. I will not forget ..... to find it again.(where)
13. He doesn't know ..... to open it with. (what)
14. My friend couldn't remember ..... way to go. (which)
15. They don't know .... your house is.(where)
16. I can't imagine ..... you are so bad with me.(how)
17. She doesn't understand ..... to do the exercise .(how)
18. I can't think ..... to buy for dinner .(what)
19. Have you decided ..... to ask to the party? (whom)
20. They don't know ..... to meet us tomorrow. (when, where, why)

مثال

أكمل الجمل ؟

*King Lear which is probably the best play that Shakespeare wrote which I haven't read.*

13. Last week I went to see the town. He used to live in that town.

*Last week I went to see the town which he used to live in.*

*Last week I went to see the town in which he used to live.*

14. He could let me have only one pound of tea. I must give a quarter of it to my sister.

*He could let me have only one pound of tea of which I must give a quarter to my sister.*

15. This is the horse. It kicked the policeman . I saw him trying to clear away the crowd. The crowd had collected to watch a fight. Two men has started the fight.

*This is the horse that kicked the policeman whom I saw trying to clear away the crowd that had collected to watch two men who has started the fight.*

مثال

أكمل الجمل ؟

1. I don't know ..... to do.(what)
2. He has forgotten ..... to go.(where)
3. I have no idea ..... to ask.(what)
4. Do you know ..... to make coffee? (how)

7. You haven't told me .... you did last night.(what)
8. Lost of people don't know ..... Mohammed Tayyib is . (who)
9. Can you tell us ..... road leads to the station? (which)
10. I've forgotten ..... she gave it to.(whom)
11. I wonder ..... she married.(whom)
12. I can't think..... she married him. (why)
13. Have they told you ..... time to come? (what)
14. Can you see ..... is coming down the street? (who)
15. You must tell the librarian ..... book you are taking . (which)
16. She hasn't written to tell me .... she is coming. (when)
17. The grocer says he doesn't know ... he sent it to.(whom)
18. Have you heard ..... is coming to stay with me? (who)
19. We don't know ..... she has gone.(when)
20. Can you tell me ..... this box is so heavy? (why)
21. Do you know ..... makes the sun hot? (what)
22. Nobody knows ..... you put your shoes. (where)

1. They told us ..... to write to.(whom)
2. I advised them ..... to go.(where)
3. He told me ..... book to take.(which)
4. They instructed us ..... to behave.(how)
5. He taught us ..... to catch fish.(how)
6. We persuaded them ..... to do.(what)
7. He warned us ..... to avoid.(what)
8. We'll teach him ..... to say.(what)
9. We can advise you ..... to consult.(whom)
10. He warned them ..... not to eat.(what)

مثال

أكمل الجمل ؟

1. I wonder .... he means.(what)
2. I have no idea ..... he arrived.(when)
3. Do you know ...you are taking to ? (whom)
4. I have no idea ..... he will come.(when)
5. Will you please tell me ..... soon you can finish it?(how)
6. I wonder .....hat this is, it's certainly not mine.(whose)

10. John's nervous because he .....  
such a difficult test before. ( has  
never taken, never took)

11. The weather ..... dreadful for the  
whole two weeks we were  
there.(was, has been)

12. I ..... the dog for a walk because it  
was raining.( haven't taken, didn't  
take)

مثال

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية باستخدام ما بين الأقواس؟

1. I (read ) a book when he came in.
2. The sun (shine) when we went out.
3. When you came in I (write).
4. I came in while he (write).
5. It (rain) this morning when I got up.
6. He (work) all day yesterday.
7. When I arrived at his house he still  
(sleep).
8. The boy jumped off the train while it  
(move).
9. The fire still (burn) at six O'clock  
this morning.
10. He (walk) across the bridge when his  
hat below off.
11. She cut her finger while she (cut) the  
bread and butter.
12. The bus started while I (get) on.
13. The light went out while we (have)  
supper.
14. The children (do) their homework  
when their father came back from the  
office.

23. I want to know ..... told you about  
it.(who)

24. Show me ..... this machine  
works.(how)

25. I am not sure ..... their train  
arrives. (when)

مثال

أكمل الجمل التالية ؟

1. You can't see her because she .....  
home. ( has gone, went)
2. I never ..... my grandmother as  
she died before I was born.( knew,  
have known)
3. It stinks in here because someone  
..... smoking.( was, has been)
4. He's in hospital because he .....  
leg.( has broken, broke)
5. I've known her since we ..... at  
school together ( were, have been)
6. It's ages since we .....(spoke, have  
spoken)
7. It's been ages since we ..... from  
Dave.( have heard, heard)
8. The last time I saw Fran ..... ages  
ago. ( was, has been)
9. I ..... a taxi so I came on the bus.(  
haven't found, didn't find)

9. When I (be) at school I (learn)  
Latin.  
*When I was at school I learned Latin.*
10. He (eat) his dinner when I (go) to  
see him.  
*He ate his dinner when I was going to see  
him.*
11. You (wear) your new hat when I  
(meet) you yesterday.  
*You were wearing your new hat when I met  
you yesterday.*
12. When I (have) a dog I always (take  
) him out for a walk in the evening.  
*When I had a dog I always took him out for  
a walk in the evening.*
13. When the phone (ring) , I (have) a  
bath.  
*When the phone rang I was having a bath.*
14. Large crowds (wait) at the station when  
the Prime Minister (arrive).  
*Large crowds were waiting at the station when  
the Prime Minister arrived.*
15. I (speak) to her several times, but  
she (read) and (not hear) me.  
*I spoke to her several times, but she was  
reading and did not hear me.*
16. We (walk) to the station when the  
storm (break).  
*We were walking to the station when the  
storm broke.*

15. I took another cake when you (not  
look) !

مثال

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية باستخدام ما بين  
الاقواس؟

1. He (sit) in a café when I (see) him.  
*He was sitting in the café when I saw him.*
2. When I (go) out the sun (shine).  
*When I went out the sun was shining.*
3. The boy (fall down) while he (run).  
*The boy fell down while he was running.*
4. When the war (begin) we (live)  
London.  
*When the war began we were living in  
London.*
5. The light (go out) while I (have) tea.  
*The light went out while I was having tea.*
6. I (have) tea when the light (go out).  
*I was having tea when the light went out.*
7. My friend (sing) when I (come) into  
the room.  
*My friend was singing when I came into the  
room.*
8. While you (play) the piano I (write)  
a letter.  
*While you were playing the piano I wrote  
the letter.*

5. We should be sorry if we left before the end .

*We should be sorry to leave before the end .*

6. The boys did not expect that they would pass their examination so soon.

*The boys did not expect to pass their examination so soon.*

7. John was told that he must not be late.

*John was told not to be late.*

8. The other boys only laughed when they saw him fall down.

*The other boys only laughed to see him fall down.*

9. She asked if she might leave the room.

*She asked to leave the room.*

10. I hope that I shall see you here again next week.

*I hope to see you here again next week.*

11. It is certain that it will rain if you forget your umbrella.

*It is certain to rain if you forget your umbrella.*

12. They were delighted when they heard of our safe arrival.

*They were delighted to hear of our safe arrival.*

17. We (run) under a bridge when the storm (break).

*We were running under a bridge when the storm broke.*

18. When the teacher (come ) in, the boys (play).

*When the teacher came the boys were playing.*

19. He (eat) three sandwiches while you (talk) to him.

*He ate three sandwiches while you were talking to him.*

مثال

أعد صياغة الجمل التالية باستخدام مصدر الجملة الثانية؟

1. I was sorry when I heard you were ill.

*I was sorry to hear that you were ill.*

2. He hopes that he will know soon.

*He hopes to know soon.*

3. We are happy that help you.

*We are happy to help you.*

4. You would be foolish if you believe all he says.

*You would be foolish to believe all he says.*

*You would be foolish believing all he says.*

*It's too far to walk.*

6. He's very stupid; he can't understand.

*He's too stupid to understand.*

7. It's very big; it won't go into my pocket.

*It's too big to go into my pocket.*

8. This mountain is very high; we can't climb it.

*This mountain is too high to climb..*

9. The news is very good; it can't be true.

*The news is too good to be true.*

10. It's very dark; the children can't find the way.

*It's too dark for the children to find the way.*

11. This shirt is very old; I can't wear it any more.

*This shirt is too old to wear.*

مثال

أدمج الجملتين باستخدام صيغة المبالغة بما يكفي مع مصدر الجملة الثانية؟

1. You're quite clever ; you can do it by yourself.

*You're clever enough to do it by yourself.*

13. Don't forget you have promised that you will come again soon.

*Don't forget you have promised to come again soon.*

14. The first person who arrived was our own teacher.

*The first person to arrive was our own teacher.*

15. We were pleased when we learned that you were coming.

*We were pleased to learn that you were coming.*

مثال

أدمج الجملتين باستخدام صيغة المبالغة مع مصدر الجملة الثانية؟

1. It's very cold; we can't go out.

*It is too cold to go out.*

2. This book is very difficult; I can't read it.

*This book is too difficult to read .*

3. She came very late; she couldn't hear this lecture.

*She came too late to hear this lecture.*

4. This hat is very big; you can't wear it.

*This hat is too big to wear.*

5. It's very far; we can't walk.



*There's time enough to have another cup of coffee.*

11. He plays very well; he can be a member of the team..

*He plays well enough to be a member of the team..*

مثال

أدمج الجملتين بالصيغة المناسبة؟

1. This coffee is very hot; I can't drink.

*This coffee is too hot to drink.*

2. John is very tall; he can touch the ceiling.

*John is tall enough to touch the ceiling.*

3. This room is small; we can't all get in.

*This room is too small to all get in.*

4. The weather was hot; we couldn't go out.

*The weather was too hot to go out.*

5. Our teacher is clever ; he can tell you the answer.

*Our teacher is clever enough to tell you the answer.*

6. I'm very excited ; I can't think.

*I'm too excited to think.*

2. You're quite old now; you can have a watch.

*You're old enough now to have a watch.*

3. I'm very tired; I can sleep all night.

*I'm tired enough to sleep all night.*

4. Are you very tall? Can you reach that picture?

*Are you tall enough to reach that picture?*

5. The apples are ripe; we can pick them.

*The apples are ripe enough to pick them.*

6. This story is very short; the pupils can read it in one lesson.

*This story is short enough for the pupils to read it in one lesson.*

7. The moon is very bright; I can read by it.

*The moon is bright enough to read by it.*

8. The wind is very strong; it will blow the roof off.

*The wind is strong enough to blow the roof off.*

9. This book is very small; you can put it into your pocket.

*This book is y small enough to put it into your pocket.*

10. There's plenty of time; we can have another cup of coffee.

15. Our cat is very lazy; he doesn't catch mice.

*Our cat is too lazy to catch mice.*

7. The problem is difficult ; we can't explain it.

*The problem is too difficult to explain.*

8. You are quite old; you ought to know better.

*You are old enough to know better.*

9. That orange was very sour; I couldn't eat it.

*That orange was too sour to eat it.*

10. He was very angry; he couldn't speak to me.

*He was too angry to speak to me.*

11. The windows were very dirty; they couldn't see through them.

*The windows were too dirty to see through them.*

12. I think you are very strong ; you can lift this box.

*I think you are strong enough to lift this box.*

13. The river was very deep; they couldn't walk across.

*The river was too deep to walk across.*

14. He is quite well; he can go out again.

*He is well enough to go out again.*

---

---

# القراءة والفهم والإستيعاب

## Reading

---

---

the day telling everyone how wonderful it was for a child to love his country so much. It was a memorable day indeed.

قد يكون السؤال عن معنى كلمة وردة في النص

1. "proud" means

- A. to be unhappy and sad.
- B. to behave very badly.
- C. to be pleased by something.

طبعاً الجواب (C) لأن معنى الكلمة فخور و معتز.

2. "exhibits" means

- A. things for everyone to see.
- B. places teachers
- C. flags you can buy.

طبعاً الجواب (A) لأن معنى الكلمة يعرض.

قد يكون السؤال عن معلومة لم ترد في النص و لكن يمكن تخمينها من المعلومات المعطاة

3. Where did the writer live before he came to the United States?

- A. United Arab Emirates.
- B. Saudi Arabia.
- C. United Kingdom

أقرب الأجوبة الى الصحيح (B) رغم أن الكاتب لم يذكر ذلك صراحة في النص، لكننا يمكن أن نستنتج أنه سعودي

قد يكون السؤال عن الفكرة العامة للنص

4. What is the main idea of this reading?

- A. An unhappy childhood memory.
- B. Going to school in another contrary
- C. A child's love for his country.

أقرب الأجوبة الى الصحيح (C)

## الباب الثاني

### القراءة والإستيعاب

في نهاية كل من الفصل الثاني الى الخامس يعطي الطالب نص مكتوب ما بين صفحة (500 كلمة) أو نصف صفحة (250 كلمة) تتبعها خمسة الى ثمانية أسئلة أما أن تكون مباشرة أو غير مباشرة يجب أستنتاجها من القطعة أو النص المعطى. وفي الباب الثالث من هذا الكتاب نقدم مجموعة من النصوص المتفاوتة في الطول و صعوبة المفردات للتدريب عليها.

مثال

إقرأ القطعة التالية ثم أجب على الأسئلة التالية

One of my happiest memories is of my elementary school days in USA. I was nine years old when my family moved to America. I liked life in the United States and got used to it easily.

However, I was always proud of being a Saudi national. One day, the school took us on a field trip to the John F. Kennedy Centre in Washington DC.

The centre was full of interesting things to see. I listened carefully to what the tour guide and our teacher had to say about the exhibits.

I wanted to get home and tell my family about the exhibits. To leave the centre, we had to pass the Hall of Flags.

The guide told us that the flag of every country in the world hangs in this hall. Hurriedly my eyes searched for the Saudi flag. I simply stood under it and saluted it.

My teacher and classmates were touched by my patriotism. They spent the rest of

السطر الواحد وهو ما يؤدي إلى تأخير في القراءة و  
بطء في الفهم والإستيعاب.

تجنب الرجوع المتكرر للتأكد من كلمة معينة، والذي  
عادة ما يكون بسبب عدم التأكد من كلمة معينة  
والخوف من تفويت شيء مهم . لا تفعل ذلك ، فأنت  
عندما تشاهد فيلماً سينمائياً و يفوتك شيء مهم يستحيل  
أن تطلب من المختصين إعادة اللقطة! ولكنك تواصل  
على أمل أن يأتي باقي الفيلم بما تريد معرفته لاحقاً.

تجنب لفظ الكلمات ذهنياً أثناء القراءة. حيث يعتبر  
المختصون أن هذه العادة أسوء العادات التي يمكن أن  
تضرك في إمتحان القدرات. وإن كان اللجوء إليها في  
بعض الأحيان لقراءة بعض الكلمات الصعبة أمر لا  
بأس به.

تجنب لفظ الكلمات شفاهة بتحريك شفتيك. من  
المؤسف أن هذه العادة سببها طريقة التعليم في بداية  
تعلم الكلمات في المراحل الدراسية الأولى ، حيث  
يشجع المدرسين الطلاب قراءة الكلمات ونطقها  
بصوت عال وتستمر هذه العادة مع الكثير من الناس  
حتى سن متأخرة من العمر. لكن لتتفوق في امتحان  
القدرات يجب عليك التخلص من هذه العادة.

انظر إلى الكلمات على أنها رموز بديهية تفهم بالنظر  
وليس بالقراءة ذهنية كانت أم شفوية. فأنت عندما  
تنظر إلى القمر، الشمس، السيارة، المنزل، أو حتى  
وجوه أفراد أسرتك لا تحتاج إلى أن تنطقها، مثل  
ما أنك تنظر إلى فيلم أو مسلسل تلفزيوني لا تحتاج إلى  
تحريك الشفاة أو اللفظ الذهني للمشاهد.

لاحظ تركيب النص، عادة ما يتألف النص من عدد  
من الفقرات. تسمى الفقرة الأولى فقرة البداية، و  
القرة الأخيرة فقرة النهاية، و تسمى الفقرات بينهما  
بفقرات الداخليه للنص.

ركز على فقرة بداية و نهاية النص، فقرة بداية  
النص عادة ماتحتوي على الفكرة الرئيسي للنص.  
وققرة نهاية النص عادة ماتحتوي على خلاصة النص.  
وكلاهما مواضع أسئلة في الإمتحان مثل ماهي الفكرة  
الرئيسيه للنص؟ أو ماهو العنوان المناسب للنص؟  
وماذا يهدف الكاتب من كتابة نصه.

ركز على بداية و نهاية كل فقرة من الفقرات  
الداخلية للنص. الفقرات الداخليه للنص عادة  
ماتحتوي على تفاصيل النص ، حيث يمكن أن تحتوي

قد يكون يطلب منك أن تبدي رأيك، وستعطي بعض  
الأراء الغير منطقية و لكن الخيارات ستكون صعبة

5. Why do you think the teacher and the  
writer's classmates were touched by his  
action?

- A. because the child is so smart
- B. because the teacher was surprised
- C. because that gives great feelings

أقرب الأجوبة الى الصحيح (C) لان ذلك يعطي  
إحساس جميل

قد يكون سؤال مباشر من القطعة، وهذا في الواقع  
قليل الاحتمال

How old was he when he moved to the  
united states?

- A. 9 years
- B. 8 years
- C. 7 years

سؤال مباشر و سهل جداً، وقليل وجوده في الإمتحان

## فنون القراءة

بعد دراستنا للعديد من أنواع القراءة التي يبحث في  
فنونها المتخصصون مثل القراءة السريعة و القراءة  
التصويرية وغيرها، و كذلك دراسة أنواع أسئلة  
إستيعاب المقروء في امتحانات القدرات ، توصلنا الي  
النصائح العملية التالية التي نتوقع أن تكون سهلة و  
عملية و مفيدة لك في امتحان القدرات.

حركة العين، يمكنك أن تضاعف سرعة قراءتك  
بالتمرين على النظر إلى السطر الواحد على أنه مقسم  
إلى 3 أو 4 مجموعات من الكلمات المتلاصقة، ومن  
خلال النظر السريع إلى هذه المجموعة حاول فهم  
معناها. هذه المهارة مهمة و تحتاج الي تمرين عملي  
واجتهاد شخصي من الطالب.

احذر توقف العين طويلا على الكلمة وهو ما يسمى  
بالمعاناة ، حيث أثبتت دراسات كثيرة أن العين الغير  
مدربة تتوقف بمعدل ستة إلى ثمانية مرات على

it has 100 pages with all kinds of questions."

To make matters worse, Xu's mom found a mistake on one question and punished him by getting him to correct the mistake and copy the right answer 100 times. After copying it 50 times, an exhausted Xu ran out of his home and hopped onto a train. "I stayed under the seat a day and a night during which I transferred trains as all people did and finally I didn't know where I had come to," he said. Xu had reached Guangzhou station, thousands of miles from home, where a station policeman found him the next day. He could not remember his telephone number - or even his full address - but eventually the policeman managed to contact his worried parents.

The boy's father, Xu Yueping, said: "We were going desperate. The whole town was out looking for him. Now we finally can breathe normally."

1. Which grade do you think the boy is?
  - a) 6<sup>th</sup>
  - b) 10<sup>th</sup>
  - c) 4<sup>th</sup>
  - d) 1<sup>st</sup>

أقرب الأجوبة الى الصحيح (C) لأن عمره 10 سنوات

2. Why did the boy ran away from home? ..because of
  - a) his mother
  - b) too much homework during summer holiday
  - c) too little homework during winter holiday

كل فقرة على فكرة معينة أو وحدة متكاملة من وحدات النص. وعادة ما تحتوي جملة البداية من كل فقرة على الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة. وكذلك جملة النهاية وعادة ما تحتوي على خلاصة الفقرة. وكلاهما مواضع أسئلة. لذلك حاول أن تكون ملخص ذهني سريع للنص فقط بقراءة فقرة جمل البداية و النهاية.

إقرأ الأسئلة قبل أن تخوض في تفاصيل النص. قراءة الأسئلة يعطيك أهداف محددة لقراءتك. حاول أن تربط كل سؤال بالفقرة التي قد تتوقع أن تكون الإجابة بها.

بعد تحديد أهدافك إقرأ النص و تقمص شخصية الكاتب أقرأ النص و ركز على نفسية الكاتب و مواقفه، أستنتج رأي الكاتب، و جميع الآراء الأخرى التي ذكرها الكاتب و هل يتفق الكاتب مع هذه الآراء. و هل تتفق أنت مع هذه الآراء. في هذه المرحلة ركز على التفاصيل و على الكلمات العاطفية التي تثير الحب أو الكراهية أو الإعجاب لفكرة أو موضوع معين. كل هذه مواضع أسئلة في إمتحان القدرات.

و أخيراً، عند الإجابة، إذكر الإجابة الصحيحة الخاطئة، في بعض أسئلة الإمتحان قد تعطى خيارات صحيحة في الواقع ولكنها لا تنتمي مع المعلومات المذكورة في النص أو لا تتفق مع رأي الكاتب فتعتبر إجابة خاطئة، وهي إحدى مصادد امتحانات القدرات العالمية.

هذه المهارات تحتاج نوعاً من التدريب، والمثابرة و مع الوقت تستطيع أن تصبح ماهراً فيها. يمكنك أن تتدرب على مقالات الجرائد و المجلات فهي خير الأمثلة لهذا النوع من الأسئلة.

مثال

Xu Zhiqiang, 10-year-old boy, from Cili town, Hunan province in China, ran away from home and ended up thousands of miles away from home, reports *Information Times*. He said he could not cope with the amount of homework he was expected to complete during the one month winter holiday. Xu said: "Each of us has to finish two thick books of homework. Take the mathematics homework as an example;

and it brings its culture with it. Do we really need that?

Scientists have already tried to create an artificial language that isn't too difficult and doesn't include any one group's culture. It is called Esperanto. But it hasn't become popular. But maybe the popularity of English won't last that long either. Who knows? There are more people in the world who speak Chinese than any other language. Maybe someday Chinese will be the new international language.

1. What was the world language 100 years ago?

- A. Arabic
- B. French
- C. Chinese
- D. Esperanto

طبعاً الجواب (B).

2. Which group is larger?

- A. people who speak English as a first language
- B. people who speak Chinese as a first language
- C. people who speak English as a second language
- D. people who speak Chinese as a second language

طبعاً الجواب (B). لأن

*There are more people in the world who speak Chinese than any other language.*

4. What is not a reason for English to become an international language today?

- A. popular American culture
- B. business
- C. British Empire
- D. American movies, music, and McDonald's

d) too much work during winter holiday

طبعاً الجواب (D).

3. How long was he on the train?

- a) Two days
- b) 36 hours
- c) 24 hours
- d) One week

أقرب الأجوبة الى الصحيح (C) لأن

*"a station policeman found him the next day."*

مثال

About one hundred years ago many educated people learned and spoke French when they met people from other countries. Today most people speak English when they meet foreigners. It has become the new international language. There are more people who speak English as a second language than people who speak English as a first language. Why is this?

There are many reasons why English has become so popular. One of them is that English has become the language of business. Another important reason is that popular American culture (like movies, music, and McDonald's) has quickly spread throughout the world. It has brought its language with it.

Is it good that English has spread to all parts of the world so quickly? I don't know. It's important to have a language that the people of the earth have in common. Our world has become very global and we need to communicate with one another. On the other hand, English is a fairly complicated language to learn

congestion with it. You feel terrible because you can't breathe well, but your body is actually "eating" the virus. Your temperature rises and you get a fever, but the heat of your body is killing the virus. You also have a runny nose to stop the virus from getting to your cells. You may feel miserable, but actually your wonderful body is doing everything it can to kill the cold.

Different people have different remedies for colds. In the United States and some other countries, for example, people might eat chicken soup to feel better. Some people take hot baths and drink warm liquids. Other people take medicines to stop the fever, congestion, and runny nose.

There is one interesting thing to note—some scientists say taking medicines when you have a cold is actually bad for you. The virus stays in you longer because your body doesn't have a way to fight it and kill it. Bodies can do an amazing job on their own. There is a joke, however, on taking medicine when you have a cold. It goes like this:  
It takes about 1 week to get over a cold if you don't take medicine, but only 7 days to get over a cold if you take medicine.

1. There is not a cure for the common cold because

- A. There are two hundreds of kinds cold viruses
- B. Different people have different remedies for colds
- C. Taking medicines when you have a cold is actually bad for you
- D. There are literally hundreds of kinds cold viruses

طبعاً الجواب (D).

الجواب (C). لاحظ أن الجواب صحيح في الواقع ولكنه لم يذكر في النص، وهذا مانسميه الإجابة الصحيحة الخاطئة.

5. Which is not a reason for English to be a good international language?

- A. Easy language
- B. Complicated Language
- C. TOEFL
- D. STEP

طبعاً الجواب (A). لان

*English is a fairly complicated language to learn*

6. What is Esperanto?

- A. Coffee
- B. Computer Language
- C. Human Language
- D. Artificial Language

طبعاً الجواب (D). لان

7. What might the future international language be?

- A. Arabic
- B. French
- C. Chinese
- D. Esperanto

طبعاً الجواب (C).

مثال

Many people catch a cold in the springtime and/ or fall. It makes us wonder... if scientists can send a man to the moon, why can't they find a cure for the common cold. The answer is easy. There are literally hundreds of kinds cold viruses out there. You never know which one you will get, so there isn't a cure for each one.

When a virus attacks your body, your body works hard to get rid of it. Blood rushes to your nose and brings



States as a young man. He lived in New York City and learned the dry-goods business for several years. In 1853 he took his knowledge and his dreams to San Francisco (California., USA.) His dream to succeed came true over the next 20 years as he became a very successful businessman.

Many of Levi Strauss' customers were cowboys and miners. They needed clothing that was strong and durable. Strauss found a special fabric from France that was comfortable and lasted a long time. It was called "serge de Nimes," which was later shortened to the word denim.

Another man named Jacob Davis bought large amounts of the denim fabric from Levi Strauss. He was a tailor who made pants for hard-working men. One of his customers was continually tearing the pockets off his pants. So Jacob Davis decided to put rivets on certain parts of the pants to make them stronger. The customer loved the new pants so much that he told all his friends, and soon Jacob Davis was busy making lots of pants with rivets.

Jacob Davis soon realized that using rivets was a great business idea, and he didn't want anybody to steal that idea. He decided that he would need to get a patent. But being a poor tailor, he didn't have enough money to pay for the patent. After thinking it over, he went to the businessman Levi Strauss and told him his idea. He said, "If you agree to pay for the patent, we will share the profits from the riveted pants." Levi Strauss did agree, and the new riveted pant business was called Levi Strauss and Company. Today Levi's jeans are

2. Which is not a remedy for the common cold

- A. Chicken soup
- B. Hot baths and warm drinks
- C. Hot baths and cold liquids
- D. Medicines

طبعاً الجواب (D).

3. Which is not true

- A. Bodies work hard to try to get rid of viruses
- B. Heat means your body could not kill the viruses.
- C. Congestion means your body is actually "eating" the virus.
- D. Runny nose means your body is trying to stop the virus from getting to your cells

طبعاً الجواب (B).

4. "It takes about 1 week to get over a cold if you don't take medicine, but only 7 days to get over a cold if you take medicine".

- A. Medicine is good
- B. Medicine is bad
- C. Medicine needs 7 days to get over a cold
- D. Medicines do not make a difference

طبعاً الجواب (D). لأن الإِسْبوع سبعة أيام

مثال

Do you enjoy wearing Levi's blue jeans? Blue jeans have become popular all over the world, but do you know how they got started? Read on to find out...

Levi Strauss was born in Germany in the mid 1800's and emigrated to the United

مثال

Traveling is fun because you can see how people in other parts of the world live. One thing travelers don't often think about before traveling is how other cultures bathe. And bathrooms in many countries may be different from the kind you are used to.

In the United States, most people take a shower once a day in the morning. The showerhead is usually mounted on the wall and cannot be moved. The bather simply stands under the water, gets wet, scrubs with soap and often a washcloth, and then rinses off.

Children often take a bath each night and enjoy playing with small toys such as boats and rubber ducks. Many adults, especially women, enjoy a soothing bath to get rid of stress at the end of the day.

It is important to remember that when you take a shower or bath in the United States, you should be careful to keep the water inside the bathtub or shower. Unlike bathrooms in many countries, there is no drain in the floor. If water gets on the floor it cannot go anywhere and must be cleaned up with a towel or mop. It can also cause problems for the floor. So be careful.

1. Travelers don't often think about \_\_\_\_ in other countries before traveling.

- A. bathing
- B. food
- C. money
- D. Sex

طبعاً الجواب (A).

more popular than ever, and Levi's name continues to live on.

1. Levi Strauss was born in

- A. the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century
- B. the middle of the 18<sup>th</sup> century
- C. 1960
- D. 1800

طبعاً الجواب (A). لأن القرن التاسع عشر من 1800-1900 م

2. Which is not a true statement?

- A. Levi Strauss wanted to pay for Jacob Davis' patent.
- B. Jacob Davis sewed pants in his business.
- C. Jacob David used denim to make pants.
- D. Jacob Davis put rivets in pants because they looked good.

طبعاً الجواب (D). لأن الهدف لم يكن الشكل أو المنظر ولكن الشدة والتحمل هو الهدف

3. Which is not a true about patent?

- A. It protects ideas.
- B. Expensive
- C. Poor people cannot patent their ideas.
- D. All new ideas are patented

طبعاً الجواب (D). لأن ليس كل الأفكار الجديدة محمية بقانون الحماية الفكرية، نظراً للتكاليف الباهظة

4. "Levi Strauss and Company", company means

- A. Business
- B. Friends
- C. Partners
- D. Parent

طبعاً الجواب (C).

Many ancient cultures had ceremonies on solstice. They celebrated light and fire. Many people also thought it was a time for love and growth. Nowadays many places around the world have parades or parties.

The great English writer, William Shakespeare, said\*\* whatever you dream on this night will come true. Have great dreams on June 21! And if you are in the northern hemisphere, enjoy the longest day of the year.

\* Summer solstice is on December 21 (or 22nd) in the southern hemisphere. June 21 (or 22nd) is the southern hemisphere's Winter solstice.

\*\* in his play A Midsummer's Night Dream

1. Which is not true about Solstic.
- A. means that it looks like the sun doesn't move.
  - B. there is more daylight than on any other day
  - C. Summer solstice is on July 21 in Saudi Arabia
  - D. Nowadays no one celebrates solstice

طبعاً الجواب (D).

*Nowadays many places around the world have parades or parties.*

2. Which is not true about ancient people and summer solstice? They
- A. danced around fire
  - B. had parades and parties
  - C. thought it causes bad feelins
  - D. thought it is time for growth

طبعاً الجواب (C).

*thought it was a time for love*

2. Americans often take a shower in the \_\_\_\_.
- A. morning
  - B. afternoon
  - C. night
  - D. before work

طبعاً الجواب (A).

3. Children often take a \_\_\_\_ at night.
- A. shower
  - B. bath
  - C. swim
  - D. good sleep

طبعاً الجواب (B).

4. Sometimes adults take a bath to \_\_\_\_.
- A. shower
  - B. relax
  - C. play with toys
  - D. enjoy

طبعاً الجواب (B).

5. American bath rooms are different than most Saudi bath rooms because the American bath floors don't have a
- A. Bathtub
  - B. Showerhead
  - C. Drain
  - D. Towels

طبعاً الجواب (C).

مثال

June 21st (or 22nd) is the summer solstice for the northern hemisphere\*. Solstice in Latin means "sun standing still." On that day it seems like the sun is standing still because there is more daylight than on any other day. It is the first day of summer and a special day for many groups of people.

happen when people have something in common. Perhaps we see a part of ourselves in our friends. Maybe seeing the good in them helps us to see the good in us as well.

1. Which is not true according to the article..?

- A. Your husband or wife can be your best friend.
- B. Many friends feel a connection when they first meet.
- C. Every person definitely might a twin spirit.
- D. If you spend enough time with someone he or she could become your friend

طبعاً الجواب (C).

ان الكاتب لم يقطع بوجود ذلك ولكنه تسائل

2. An acquaintance is .....

- A. someone you know
- B. a friend
- C. a family members
- D. an enemy

طبعاً الجواب (A).

مثال

Have you ever had the desire to wander the world and see what was out there? While some people prefer to stay in the comfort of their own home, others have been bitten by the travel bug and can't wait to explore the world. Exotic places call to them. "Come visit me and I will show you my mysteries," they say.

Every year millions of people pack their suitcases or put on backpacks and flock to visit the seven continents of the world. They wander through the castles and museums of Europe, and the cities and natural wonders of North and South

3. According to Shakespeare, "whatever you dream about on June 21 will ....."

- A. happen.
- B. be Good
- C. be bad
- D. pass over

طبعاً الجواب (A).

whatever you dream on this night will come true. أي يتحقق

4. "A Midsummer's Night Dream", is a .....

- A. book written by Shakespeare
- B. play that was written by Shakespeare
- C. a game that Shakespeare played
- D. No information

طبعاً الجواب (B).

لاحظ ان الجواب موجود خارج القطعة مطمة \*\*

\*\* in his play A Midsummer's Night Dream

مثال

Some friends come into our lives for just a short time. Others come and stay forever. Think about your closest friends. How long have you known each other? Some people say that their spouse or family member is their best friend. Others say they have known their closest friends for many years. And some great friends haven't known each other all that long, but knew right away that there was a connection, or bond, between them. Could it be that there is a twin spirit out there for each of us?

What turns a stranger or acquaintance into a friend? Do you know right away if you are going to like someone? Some people think that any stranger can become a friend if they spend enough time together. That may be true for some people. But one thing most of us agree on is that true friendships seem to

4. According to the article, traveling will not .....

- A. close your mind.
- B. make you feel dead.
- C. stop you from seeing things in a new way.
- D. give you a better perspective about the earth and the people living on it.

طبعاً الجواب (C)

### مثال

The Alchemist is one of my favorite books. I would like to share a little bit with you.

The Alchemist is an easy story with a deep message. It is a message to follow your heart and search for your dreams. The book is about a young man named Santiago who lives in Spain and works as a shepherd. He begins to have strange dreams so he goes to a Gypsy to find out what they mean. The Gypsy tells him that he needs to go to the Egyptian pyramids to find his treasure. Of course he does not believe her. But later he meets another person who tells him the same thing. At last Santiago decides to give up his life as a shepherd and go find his treasure.

Santiago encounters many problems as he goes on his journey. He meets many people and learns a lot along the way. He also learns to listen to and trust the Soul of the World. Does he ever find his treasure? And why is the book called The Alchemist? I can't tell you. You will have to read the book if you want to find out.

The Alchemist was originally written in Portuguese by Paulo Coelho, a Brazilian author. It has been translated into many

America. Some visit the vast exotic cultures of Asia, Africa and the Middle East. The great outback of Australia is a wonderland for those who go there. And a few lucky people even make to the most mysterious continent on the earth-Antarctica.

Why do people want to explore the world? It gives them a better perspective about the earth and the people living on it. It opens their minds, it gives them a feeling of accomplishment, and it makes them feel alive. So save some money, get your passport ready, and see the world. It will change your life forever.

1. "To be bitten by the travel bug" means you .....

- A. like to stay home
- B. hate bugs
- C. like to travel
- D. explored the world

طبعاً الجواب (A).

2. The great outback is in .....

- A. Europe.
- B. South America
- C. Africa
- D. Australia

طبعاً الجواب (D).

3. Only a few people go to Antarctica, because it is

- A. mysterious
- B. far
- C. full with snow
- D. hot

طبعاً الجواب (C).

Antarctica المنطقة القطبية المتجمدة، .....

مثال

Today's English learner has a wide choice of dictionaries in which to choose from. There are dictionaries with American English, with British English, with idioms or slang, and even with pictures. One of the most popular dictionaries I have seen among many students are talking electronic dictionaries. All you have to do is type in a word in your language and you can see it and hear it in English. That's great, right? Well, I think it's great, too... but only sometimes.

Bilingual electronic dictionaries are fast and easy. They can be great when you are traveling and need information quickly. But I am against electronic dictionaries and even bilingual paper dictionaries in many cases. Let me explain...

When you reach an intermediate level of English you know enough of the language to ask the meaning of certain things while using English. Translating between languages in your head takes time. You should be translating as little as possible and you should be thinking in English as much as possible. I strongly recommend that intermediate and advanced students use an English-English dictionary made especially for your understanding. For example, Longman has a good dictionary for students. Other companies do, too.

I also feel that paper (book) dictionaries are better for studying than electronic dictionaries. True, they take longer to use. But, for some reason, the information you look up seems to stay in your head longer. It may be because you were forced to spell the word in your

languages, including, of course, English. It is a good book for people who are learning English because most of the sentences are fairly short and you will recognize a lot of the vocabulary. There are definitely words you will not know at first, but with a little patience and study you should be able to finish (and maybe enjoy) the book. And hopefully you will be able to follow your dreams as well.

1. The Alchemist is a book about
  - A. chemistry
  - B. following your dreams
  - C. Gypsies
  - D. Egyptian pyramids

طبعاً الجواب (B)

2. A Gypsy is
  - A. Egyptian
  - B. Portuguese
  - C. Brazilian
  - D. No country

طبعاً الجواب (D)

Gypsies هم العجرب، وهم مجموعات من الناس الرحل، ينتقلون في أرض الله الواسعة، ينتشرون في أوروبا و بعض الدول العربية

3. The author of the book is.
  - A. Egyptian
  - B. Portuguese
  - C. Brazilian
  - D. English

طبعاً الجواب (C)

4. The author wrote the book in .....
  - A. Egyptian
  - B. Portuguese
  - C. Brazilian
  - D. English

طبعاً الجواب (B)

she only watched it at night. She doesn't remember ever watching it in the morning or afternoon. When I was young we had only 3 or 4 different channels. I think they were channel 3, 4, 6, and 9. My brothers and sisters and I would sometimes fight about which channel to watch. But we usually enjoyed the same shows.

Nowadays we can get hundreds of channels on TV. I can't believe it! There are channels with only old movies, and channels with only cooking, and channels with only fishing. It's amazing! There is a channel for everything. I wonder how much my brothers and sisters and I would fight if we had hundreds of channels when I was a child. Of course we had only one television set. These days I notice families with 2 or 3 or more television sets in their homes. I guess it stops people from arguing over which channel to choose from.

1. What were the author and his brothers and sisters would sometimes fight about ?

- A. which channel to watch
- B. which show to watch
- C. what time to watch TV
- D. where to watch TV

طبعاً الجواب (A)

2. Why would the author and his brothers and sisters sometimes fight?

- A. They have too many TV channels
- B. They are too many brothers and sisters
- C. They have only one TV set
- D. They like to watch different TV programs

head and therefore "see it" more clearly in your mind.

So what do you do if you have checked an English-English dictionary and still don't understand something? Go to your bilingual dictionary. It is useful sometimes. Just remember to try to stay in English as much as possible.

1. According to the author, which is not true about the talking electronic dictionaries?

- A. They are very popular
- B. They are good for learning English.
- C. They are not great for traveling
- D. Intermediate students of English should not use them

طبعاً الجواب (D)

2. According to the author, which is not true about the paper dictionaries?

- A. takes longer time
- B. the information you look up seems to stay in your head longer
- C. forced to spell the word in your head
- D. always better than the talking electronic dictionaries

طبعاً الجواب (D)

3. According to the author, which dictionary you should always be using?

- A. a talking electronic dictionaries
- B. a bilingual paper dictionaries
- C. an English-English dictionary
- D. a Longman dictionary

طبعاً الجواب (C)

مثال

My mother was telling me about how she and her family got their first television when she was a teenager. Of course it was black and white. She said

Prince Naif, deputy premier and minister of interior. Prince Khaled also congratulated King Abdullah and Crown Prince Naif for devoting all the country's security and administrative resources to the service of the pilgrims. After the ritual stoning in Jamarat on Tuesday, most of the pilgrims started their trek back to Makkah. Interior Ministry spokesman Maj. Gen.

Mansour Al-Turki said close to 70 percent of the pilgrims left Mina before sundown Tuesday. The rest will stay overnight in Mina and return to Makkah after a fourth day of stoning, which is optional, on Wednesday. "The second phase of security plans in Madinah starts now, as half of pilgrims will be heading for Madinah soon," Al-Turki told a press conference in Mina. Spokesman of the Ministry of Haj Faiz Al-Barakati said the pilgrims' movement to Madinah would officially start on Thursday. "The government is working on the smart city project.

The King Abdullah Makkah Construction Project, which will take six years to complete according to my estimation, will provide Makkah with necessary services for the Haj and Umrah. The project's infrastructure strategy will have the Grand Mosque as its focal point," the prince said.

An essential part of Haj and Umrah services is the transport facilities, the prince added. "The King Abdullah project envisages the transportation of pilgrims from the airport to the Grand Mosque area and to the holy sites and back. The project includes trains, buses and cars and pedestrian roads, and ring roads. The project will also be linked to the Madinah-Jeddah-Makkah train

طبعاً الجواب (C)

3. Which is true about the author's mother?

- A. She watched a lot of TV when she was a child
- B. She watched TV all day long
- C. Her TV was not colored TV
- D. She loved watching TV

طبعاً الجواب (C)

4. Which could be from a talk show?

- A. "He catches the ball and he runs..."
- B. "The tiger slowly moves through the grass..."
- C. "Who killed the old lady? Was it the neighbor or the nurse?"
- D. "Today our guest is Julia Roberts. She will introduce us to her latest movie."

طبعاً الجواب (D)

مثال

Makkah Gov. Prince Khaled Al-Faisal said Makkah would be developed into a smart city with the Grand Mosque as its focal point over the next six years. "We will employ all kinds of modern technology to make Makkah smarter than any other smart city," Prince Khaled told a press conference in Mina on Tuesday, the penultimate day of Haj 2011.

Prince Khaled congratulated pilgrims on their successful completion of the Haj on behalf of Custodian of the Two Holy Mosques King Abdullah and Crown



2. What is the percentage of pilgrims who left Mina before sundown on Webeday?

- A. Close to 70%.
- B. More than 80%
- C. Less than 20%
- D. About 30%

(D) طبعاً الجواب

3. "focal point" means?

- A. Mid point
- B. Center
- C. Far point
- D. Near point

(B) طبعاً الجواب

4. The King Abdullah project envisages how many types of roads to be used?

- A. 2
- B. 4
- C. 5
- E. 6.

(C) طبعاً الجواب

*The project includes trains, buses and cars and pedestrian roads, and ring roads.*

5. According to the Haj Ministry, until Tuesday evening, the Al-Mashair Railway transported?

- A. More than a half a million
- B. A half a million
- C. About a half a million
- D. Less than a half a million

(C) طبعاً الجواب

*The Al-Mashair Railway transported more than 403,000 pilgrims until Tuesday evening, according to the Haj Ministry spokesman.*

هنا قد تحنار، ولكن أختار الأقرب لصحيح

service and the Mashair Railway. Roads with reflectors will be built in Islamic and local architectural style. We intend to give Makkah a local Islamic identity and the project coincides with the expansion of the Grand Mosque area," the prince said. The Al-Mashair Railway transported more than 403,000 pilgrims until Tuesday evening, according to the Haj Ministry spokesman. Replying to a question about voluntary services in Haj, Prince Khaled said the Makkah Youth Society for Voluntary Service already exists. He added that women volunteers also offered pilgrim services this year. The prince also thanked all citizens, workers, security men, officials and volunteers who strove to make the Haj a success. He said 200,139 field workers served the pilgrims.

The prince affirmed that sacrificial meat was meant for the poor and the needy and was not for sale. He said steps were being taken to prevent misuse of sacrificial meat. "The officials of the Makkah governorate made 2,863 field inspections to ensure excellent services for pilgrims," the prince said. He added that officials handled 5,261 issues, which were either solved immediately or flagged for follow-up action.

1. ".....to make Makkah smarter than any other smart city ", means

- A. More beautiful than any other city.
- B. All the people of Makkah will be smart and educated
- C. Advanced technology will be used everywhere
- D. All of the above

(C) طبعاً الجواب

attendant. "This job will fetch me SR1,500 for five days. This will help my father in paying part of our house rent. I wanted to help him in any way I can and this is one small step in lessening his burden," he said, getting a little emotional.

Abu Bakr Al-Humaidi is working as an assistant to one of the managers at a Tawafa organization. "Money is not important to me, experience is. Working during Haj offers its own set of problems. I have to take care of myself ... this job has taught me how to organize myself," said this 17-year-old Saudi. "I will go from here much wiser," he added.

For 16-year-old Muhammad Fatah from Taif, neither money nor experience was the catalyst. "Last year, most of my friends came to Mina to work during Haj. I was left all alone. I felt very bored. What is life without friends? So I decided I too would go along with them and here I am making merry and also money. I will get SR1,000 for five days," he said proudly. "Also, I made lots of friends from Makkah and Jeddah. This is great. We have formed our own little community of friends." Fatah is homesick too. "I will buy gifts for my brothers and sisters. They are waiting for me and I am dying to see them," he added.

Abdul Majid Al-Sadik, 15, is from Abha. This is his second year at Haj. "My mother asked me to work during Haj. She wants me to get experience in the art of serving pilgrims. This has given me immense experience and she was very happy when I told her about my work here in Mina," he said. What will he do with the SR1,000 that he has

6. Replying to a question about voluntary services in Haj, Prince Khaled .....

- A. Said that Makkah youth boys and girls were contributing.
- B. Said that there was no need for that this year
- C. Said that about 200,139 field workers served the pilgrims
- D. Said that officials handled 5,261 issues

طبعاً الجواب (A)

مثال

Haj may be once-in-a-lifetime journey for the faithful but for countless young Saudis it is an opportunity to earn a few extra bucks and learn a few extra words from other languages. They make the most of the pilgrimage season and try to acquaint themselves with the cultures and traditions from where the pilgrims come from. They work for Tawafa organizations, the Makkah Metro, and as security guards at the hundreds of tents housing millions of pilgrims.

For Ahmed Kamel Shaban, a 21-year-old high school graduate, this was the first opportunity to work during Haj. A Jeddawi himself, he is working as a guide at one of the Makkah Metro train stations in Mina. "This experience is important to me as I grow up in life ... I am learning the ropes of interacting with people of different nationalities ... It is a lot of hard work and I deserve every single halala that I earn during these days," he said.

Abdul Rahim Wajdi is just 15. He is working at one of the tents as an

7. Which is the more common reason for working in Mina that young people are targeting?

- A. Money
- B. Experience
- C. Fun
- D. Knowledge

طبعاً الجواب (A)

Etisalat Introduces New Service for Children

مثال

Emirates Etisalat has announced a partnership with Spaceton Channel to launch Spaceton Mobile service, which targets a new and huge segment of customers- children between 6 and 14 years of age. Etisalat is the first regional operator to launch this service, which allows users to download backgrounds, video clips, logos, tones, and merge personal pictures with characters on their mobiles.

Essa Al Haddad, Chief Marketing Officer, etisalat, said, "We are pleased to launch this service as it highlights our commitment to one of the largest segments of society. What makes this service unique is that it can be supervised by parents, allowing parents and children to share their interest in Spaceton characters, exchange ideas, and learn together how to download content from the Internet."

"The Spaceton mobile service comes in line with Etisalat's new strategy of providing tailor-made services to targeted segments. We expect that this service will be well received by customers as Spaceton is one the most

been promised for work? "I will pay my phone bill," came the reply.

Saad Al-Harbi, 21, is a university student. "I am doing a course in English language from King Abdulaziz University in Jeddah. This is my sixth year at Haj. I help the organizers in arranging accommodation facilities in Mina." He is not too pleased with the money though. "SR1,500 is nothing considering the amount of effort that I put into this work ... I am doing a course in English language because I realized after coming here that English holds the key to getting anywhere and in any country."

1. .... thinks that his pay does not match his efforts.

- A. Saad Al-Harbi,
- B. Abdul Majid Al-Sadik
- C. Muhammad Fatah
- D. Ahmed Kamel Shaban

طبعاً الجواب (A)

2. .... Making a lot of efforts, to pay his phone bell.

- A. Saad Al-Harbi,
- B. Abdul Majid Al-Sadik
- C. Muhammad Fatah
- D. Ahmed Kamel Shaban

طبعاً الجواب (B)

3. The average daily rate for working in Mina for five days for those young people is ....?

- A. 500 Saudi Riyals
- B. 200 to 300 Saudi Riyals
- C. More the 300 Riyals
- D. Less than 200 Saudi Riyals

طبعاً الجواب (B)

games for diversion. According to a new AP-AOL Games poll, 40 percent of American adults play games on a computer or a console. Men, younger adults and minorities were most likely to play those games.

Among those who describe themselves as gamers, 45 percent play over the Internet. And more than a third of online gamers spent more than \$200 last year on gaming, compared with about a quarter of those who don't play games online. The survey results come as Sony Corp (NYSE:SNE - news), Nintendo Co. and Microsoft Corp. prepare to push their new products this week at the Electronic Entertainment Expo in Los Angeles.

Casual games like board or card games were the most popular, followed by strategy games, action sports, adventure, first-person shooters and simulations, the poll found. Casual, strategy and role-playing games were most popular among online gamers. And that game playing can be expensive, though online gamers are more likely to have spent more than \$500 last year compared with gamers who don't play online.

Of those who play online games, nearly one in five said they had formed ongoing friendships or relationships with fellow gamers they did not know before, the poll found.

The AP-AOL Games poll of 3,024 U.S. adults, including 1,046 gamers, was conducted by Ipsos, an international polling firm, on April 18-20 and 24-27. For the gamers, the poll has a margin of sampling error of plus or minus 3 percentage points.

popular TV channel for children," he added.

1. Who are the targeted market segment by the Spacetoon mobile service?

- A. Women
- B. Adult
- C. Men
- D. Others

طبعاً الجواب (D)

*targets a new and huge segment of customers- children between 6 and 14 years of age*

2. What is special about the Spacetoon mobile service?

- A. It is not expensive
- B. It is safe for the children
- C. It is new
- D. It is free

طبعاً الجواب (D)

3. What is the expect success factor for the Spacetoon mobile service?

- A. The popularity of the Spacetoon name
- B. The popularity of the Spacetoon logo
- C. The popularity of the Spacetoon TV channel
- D. The popularity of the Spacetoon mobile

طبعاً الجواب (A)

مثال

Millions of people in the US don't automatically reach for the television remote control when they want to be entertained. They turn to electronic

requirements of semi-professional and amateur photographers in the region.

Speaking at the press conference, Koji Naka, Product Manager, Panasonic, said, "With the popularity of digital photography in the region sky rocketing in the recent years, the market is witnessing an unprecedented demand for digital cameras. Consumers today are looking for cameras that offer a complete package in terms of performance, styling and ease-of-use, and with Panasonic's commitment to adopt the most advanced technology in its products, we have been able to constantly meet consumer demands in tune with market trends."

"These latest ranges of LUMIX cameras have been designed to offer unmatched performance under different operating conditions. We are certain that these cameras will be hot-sellers in the Middle East, as they are loaded with features to further enhance the experience of digital photography. Not only will these cameras be a benchmark for performance and styling, it will also be a value-for-money offering to consumers in the region," he added.

1. Which is not a Panasonic digital cameras model?
  - A. DMC-FX01
  - B. DMC-LZ5
  - C. DMC-LS2
  - D. DMC-TZ7

طبعاً الجواب (D)

2. "hot-sellers" means
  - A. Can be used in summer
  - B. Very popular
  - C. Profit generator
  - D. Widely used

1. According to this article, all are true EXCEPT.....?

- A. TV lost its role in the entertainment
- B. About half of the gamers play online
- C. 40% of the gamers had new friends online
- D. Casual games were the most popular

طبعاً الجواب (C)

*nearly one in five (= 20%) said they had formed ongoing friendships*

2. According to this article, all are not true EXCEPT.....?

- A. two third of online gamers spent more than \$200
- B. Only Kids play online
- C. Strategy games are the most popular Only kids play online
- D. game playing can be expensive

طبعاً الجواب (D)

مثال

Dubai, Asharq Al-Awsat- Panasonic, announced the launch of six new models from its LUMIX range of digital cameras, for the Middle East market.

The announcement was made at a press conference held in Hotel Intercontinental, Dubai . The six new digital cameras launched by Panasonic include DMC-FX01, DMC-TZ1, DMC-FZ7, DMC-LZ5, DMC-LZ3 and DMC-LS2, each with a host of unique and innovative features to meet varied

criticizing Abdel Razek's performance, including a number of scenes featuring the actress performing the belly dance. The Facebook group stresses that the broadcast of this series is unsuitable during the Muslim holy month. Egyptian actress Ghada Abdel Razek is no stranger to controversy, and she was one of the Egyptian entertainment figures who came out to defend the Hosni Mubarak regime and criticize the 25 January revolution

In addition this, another Facebook group was established calling for the boycott of television series "Keed El-Nesa" [The Deception of Women] for similar reasons. According to the Facebook page, this series contains a number of inappropriate scenes and should not be broadcast during the holy month of Ramadan. Egyptian belly-dancer and actress Fifi Abdou, along with Egyptian actress Somaya El-Khashab, star in this television series that was written by Hussein Mustafa and directed by Ahmed Saqr.

The Facebook page calling for a boycott of "Keed El-Nesa" is divided between those who comprehensively object to the series on religious grounds, and those who have taken a more moderate tone and do not object to the television drama on principle but believe that it should not be aired during the holy month of Ramadan.

Just a few days following advertisements of the "Al-Hassan and Al-Hussein" television series on Egyptian satellite television channels Haya TV and al-Nahar, 13 Facebook pages were set up calling for this TV series to be banned. "Al-Hassan and Al-Hussein" attempts to take a look at the life of the Prophet's

طبعاً الجواب (B)

3. According to this article, which is not a key feature that customers are looking for in a camera?

- A. Performance
- B. Ease of use
- C. Style
- D. Price

طبعاً الجواب (B)

مثال

Just a few days before the beginning of the Muslim holy month of Ramadan, a number of Facebook groups have started a campaign calling for Muslims to boycott a number of television drama series set to be broadcast on Arab satellite television during the Islamic holy month. A number of users on the popular social network have established Facebook pages and groups calling for Muslims to boycott 4 television drama series that are scheduled to be broadcast during Ramadan.

Ramadan is the ninth month of the Islamic calendar; it is the Islamic month of fasting during which all Muslims refrain from eating and drinking between sunrise and sunset, in addition to performing more prayers, and spending more time in religious contemplation.

The Facebook campaign calls for the boycott of the television drama "Samara", starring Egyptian actress Ghada Abdel Razek; this television series was written by Mustafa Muharam and directed by Mohamed al-Naqli. Around 23 thousand people joined a Facebook group calling for the boycott of the "Samara" television series,

famously defended the Hosni Mubarak regime, calling the former Egyptian president a father figure for all Egypt. He was later forcibly expelled from Tahrir Square at the height of the 25 January Egyptian revolution. He remains a divisive figure in Egypt, despite penning two pro-revolutionary songs following the collapse of the Mubarak regime, with many in Egypt loath to forgive him for his conduct during the youth revolution.

Film critic Magda Khairallah commented on these campaigns, saying that "this type of campaign calling for the boycott of works of art is not suitable for cinema or television, because going to the cinema or watching a television program is a personal decision." She added that Ramadan television dramas are a traditional form of entertainment in the Arab world, and it is difficult for such campaigns to be successful in convincing the public to boycott a television series, let alone an entire satellite channel. Khairallah also drew attention to the fact that such programming is particularly popular amongst housewives, who generally will not take such a hard-line religious stance on an entertainment program.

1. "boycott" means
  - A. Stop watching
  - B. Watch more
  - C. Watch less
  - D. Watch cow boys

طبعاً الجواب (A)

2. "refrain from" means
  - A. Stop 90%
  - B. Stop 50%
  - C. Stop 100%
  - D. Stop

grandsons, and the schism which led to the Islamic Sunni/Shiite divide. The Al-Azhar Islamic Research Academy also filed a lawsuit against all the satellite channels intending to broadcast the series, calling on them not to broadcast this series, or any other "religious" television series that depict members of the Prophet's family.

The Facebook group participants believe that the "Al-Hassan and Al-Hussein" series may lead to sectarian unrest between the Sunni and Shiite communities over conflicting interpretations of the historic events depicted in the series. The Facebook youth called for all Muslims to boycott this television drama, and indeed all programs on the channel broadcasting "Al-Hassan and Al-Hussein", claiming that these Arab satellite television channels are trying to utilize religion in order to make financial profit. The "Al-Hassan and Al-Hussein" television series will reportedly depict events of the early Islamic community. The series will begin with the political unrest seen during the rule of Caliph Othman Ibn Affan and which ultimately led to his assassination, and end with the martyrdom of Al-Hussein at the Battle of Karbala in a battle with the forces of Muawiyah I.

As for the final television series that many Arab Facebook users are calling for a boycott, this is the television series "Adam", which is due to be begin broadcast in just a few days. However unlike the television series mentioned above, the campaign to boycott this series has nothing to do with religion, but rather politics, namely the fact that Egyptian actor and singer Tamer Hosny is playing the lead role. Tamer Hosny

طبعاً الجواب (C)

3. Most of these television drama series will have religious issues EXCEPT ....., that which has political concerns?

- A. "Samara",
- B. The Deception of Women
- C. "Al-Hassan and Al-Hussein"
- D. "Adam"

طبعاً الجواب (D)

4. According to this article, both Ghada Abdel Razek and Tamer Hosny share something in common, for the boycotting ?

- A. Both are Egyptians
- B. Both are loved
- C. Both were against the 25 January Egyptian revolution
- D. Both are actors

طبعاً الجواب (C)

5. According to Magda Khairallah, all true EXCEPT ?

- A. Boycotting of works of art is not suitable for cinema or television
- B. Watching a television program is a personal decision.
- C. Ramadan television dramas are a traditional form of entertainment in the Arab world
- D. Ramadan television is popular for all women

طبعاً الجواب (D)

*such programming is particularly popular amongst housewives* ربات البيوت



---

---

# الإستماع والإستيعاب

# Listening

---

---

## المهارات اللازمة لجزء الأستماع من الإمتحان

التفوق في جزء الأستماع من الأمتحان يتطلب مهارتين أساسيتين يجب على الطالب إتقانها.

الأولي، مهارة الإنصات و الفهم، هذه المهارة تتطلب تعويد الطالب على أن يستمع إلي النص بإنصات شديد وواع و متعمد لتمييز طريقة نطق كل كلمة من الكلمات الواردة في النص. وتدوين وإدراك جميع المعلومات الواردة فيه. في هذه المرحلة سيكون دور الطالب دور المتلقي للمعلومات أي أنه مطالب فقط بفهم المعلومات المعطاة في النص.

هذه المهارة أساسية، للتعامل مع الأسئلة المباشرة في الإمتحان. مثلا

قد تسمع نص يقول:

...Saudi Arabia is the largest oil producing company in the world. It is capable of producing up to 12 million burrils of oil a day.

قد يأتي سؤال مباشر:

The maximum oil production capacity of Saudi Arabia is ..... Barrils per day?

1. 12 millions
2. 10 millios
3. 20 millions
4. 14 millions

طبعاً، هنا السؤال عن معلومات مباشرة من النص. هذا النوع من الأسئلة يتطلب إنصات و فهم و التركيز علي المعلومات الرئيسية في النص. و سنورد في هذا الباب العديد من التمارين لزيادة مهارة إنصاتك و فهمك للنصوص المسموعة.

الثانية، مهارة الإستيعاب و الأستنتاج، هذه المهارة تتطلب قدرات الطالب علي الإستماع الي النص بإنصات شديد و واع و لإدراك المعلومات الواردة في النص، زيادة على ذلك يتوقع من الطالب إستنتاج معلومات جديدة من المعلومات الواردة في النص.

## الباب الثالث

### فهم وإستيعاب المسموع

#### من المحادثات و المحاضرات

مهارة الأستماع الجيد أمر ضروري للطالب الجامعي، في جميع مناحي حياته العلمية و العملية. لأن الأستماع عماد الكثير من المواقف التي تستدعي الإصغاء والانتباه: كالأسئلة والأجوبة، والمناقشات والأحاديث، وسرد القصص والخطب والمحاضرات، وبرامج الإذاعة وغيرها وفيه كذلك تدريب على حسن الإصغاء، وحصر الذهن، ومتابعة المتكلم وسرعة الفهم.

وتعاني الكثير من الجامعات اليوم من عجز كثير من الطلاب عن تتبع المحاضرين، وكتابة خلاصة ما يسمعون من المحاضرات، ومن أسباب ذلك أن الطلاب لم يهيأوا لهذه المواقف الاستماعية، ولم يتعهدهم أساتذتهم في المراحل التعليمية السابقة بالتدريب على الأستماع، وتلخيص ما يسمعون.. وبلرغم أنه لا توجد دورة مستقلة لتعليم الأستماع إلا أننا في هذا الباب نقدم برنامج تدريبي لتحسين و تطوير مهارة الأستماع لديك.

من الواضح أن تعلم وحفظ مفردات أي لغة هو المفتاح الرئيسي لفهمها مع تعلم قواعدها وممارستها بالقراءة والأستماع والمحادثة. وبذلك تكون مهمة تعلم وحفظ الكلمات مهمة رئيسية على جميع دارسي أي اللغة الأنجليزية إتقانها. لكن هناك العديد من الأسئلة التي تواجه أغلب المبتدئين في تعلم أي لغة في العالم وهي من أين أبدأ؟ و ماهي الكلمات التي يجدر بي تعلمها في البداية؟ و ماهي الكلمات التي لا جدوى من تعلمها لقلّة استعمالها؟

يذكر المتخصصون إن تعلم (100) كلمة شائعة يساعد على فهم (20%) مما يقال وتعلم (500) كلمة شائعة يساعد على فهم (70%) مما يقوله عامة الناس في محادثاتهم اليومية. لذلك فقد أوردنا (500) كلمة من أكثر المفردات استعمالاً في اللغة الإنجليزية. لذا فأننا ننصح جميع الطلاب بحفظ هذه الكلمات كنقطة بداية للإنتلاق في عالم اللغة الإنجليزية.

رابعاً، أستمع الى النص كلمة كلمة من دون أن تتابع في الكتاب و حاول ان تنصت و تميز كل كلمة و ردت في النص

خامساً، كرر الخطوات السابقة حتى تحس أن إذناك إستطاعت أن تميز كل كلمة في النص و أن عقلك قد فهم النص فهماً تاماً

سادساً، تخيل أنك تشرح هذا النص الى مجموعة من المستمعين، حاول أن تشرحه بصوت عالي و مسموع مع التركيز على كل المعلومات المعطاة في النص. هذه المرحلة مهمة لتغذية عقلك الباطن بصوت الكلمات مما يسهل عليك التعرف عليها و تمييزها في المستقبل.

تذكر، أنه كلما قرأت النص بصوت عالي و نطق صحيح كلماً، إستطاعت إذناك تميز كل كلمة في النص. ولزيادة كفاءة إنصاتك جرب بعض الطرق مثل إغماض العينين وأنت تسمع، ثم جرب طريقة ترديد الكلمات مع المتحدث. ومن أهم الوسائل الناجحة لزيادة كفاءة الإنصات هو أن يقوم الطالب بقراءة النص المراد الإستماع إليه بصوت عالي جداً بقدر ما يمكن، حتى لو كان يتمثل دور مسرحي حوارى مع طرف آخر،

### تمارين على الفهم والإنصات

#### تمرين (1) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-01



A man and a woman died in an apparent murder-suicide last night in Altadena. The man was 74-year-old Dominic Vittorio. The woman was his 70-year-old wife, Victoria. The couple had been married for 50 years. In fact, their 50th anniversary occurred just a month ago, according to their next-door

وهذه المهارة مهمة للتعامل مع الأسئلة الغير مباشرة في الإمتحان و التي تشكل جزء مهم منه. مثلاً

قد تسمع نص يقول:

The population of Saudi Arabia grew two millions every five years since 1985.

قد يأتي سؤال غير مباشر:

If the population was 24 millions in 2010 , what was the population in 1985?

1. 12 millions
2. 14 millios
3. 20 millions
4. 10 millions

سؤال، سهل لكنه يتطلب مهارة أعلى من الفهم و الإنصات و هي مرحلة الأستيعاب.

وفي هذا الباب نقدم للطالب مجموعة من التمارين لزيادة قدراته لكل هاتين المهارتين.

..

### المهارة الأولى مهارة الإنصات و الفهم

لكي تزيد من كفاءة فهمك و إنصاتك للنصوص ، فيما يلي نقدم لك مجموعة من النصوص التي تم إختيارها بعناية و تم تسجيلها بلهجات و أصوات مختلفة حتى تساعدك على زيادة قدرتك على الفهم و الإنصات.. حاول ان تنهي جميع التمارين حسب الخطوات التالية:

أولاً، إقرأ النص قراءة جيدة قبل الإستماع إليه


ثانياً، حاول ان تتمرن على نطق الكلمات الجديدة عليك بأستخدام برنامج الوافى (برنامج سهل و مفيد و رخيص يمكن طلبه من أي محلات بيع و صيانة البرامج) أو أي من البرامج المتوفرة على الإنترنت

ثالثاً، أستمع الى النص و تابع قراءة النص في الكتاب أثناء الإستماع الى التسجيل الصوتي للنص

week and we would talk. But the conversations steadily got shorter, and she seemed to lose interest in listening and in talking. She didn't say it, but you could tell she was in a lot of pain."

Mrs. Allen said she hadn't even talked to either of the Vittorios in almost a year. They never came out. Even food was delivered to them by a local agency. She said she heard two gunshots last night—"It scared me half to death!" She immediately called the police. "Such a sad ending for such nice people," she said. "Together in sickness, but alone in the world."

## تمرين (2) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-02 

Residents of southern California are trying to get used to skyrocketing prices for gasoline. The average price for 87 octane economy gas is \$2.22, almost 30 percent higher today than it was 12 months ago. The lowest gas price in the Southland right now is \$2.09 a gallon at the Seashell station in Arcadia. The station manager, Everett, said the reason his gas is cheaper than elsewhere is that he bought a lot of gas two years ago at

neighbor, Mrs. Allen. The couple was childless and had no close friends. Mr. Vittorio was a retired carpenter who had emphysema and was blind in one eye because of a cataract. His wife was a diabetic who had already had one foot amputated because of complications from the disease. Her eyesight was almost completely gone.

"They were such a nice couple," said Mrs. Allen. "I've lived next to them for the last 20 years or so. I'm widowed, and Dom always used to help me with things like changing light bulbs and fixing appliances. They had no kids, but they were always friendly to the neighborhood kids. Every Halloween they handed out tons of candy and fresh fruit. But about eight years ago Vicky came down with diabetes, and things just haven't been the same for her or Dom. They used to be so friendly and full of life, and then they just seemed to get quieter and quieter.

"She used to come over to my place once or twice a week, and we would talk about all kinds of things and have the nicest time. But that happened less and less as she got sicker. So I would go over to her house about once a

Six coal miners in Utah were trapped 1,500 feet underground when the support beams collapsed. Digging was immediately started in an effort to rescue the six. Five volunteer miners risked their lives to descend down to the location of the cave-in. A day later, another cave-in occurred, killing three of the five would-be rescuers. All five were pulled out of the mine.

The government banned any further attempts at rescue by men. Instead, machines would be used to burrow into the ground. Listening devices would be able to detect any human activity, and probes would be able to detect the amount of oxygen present. Even though most people figured that the original six had died almost immediately, five more holes were dug during the next two weeks in an effort to find, and deliver food and water to, survivors. This effort was made more difficult because searchers did not know the exact location of the original cave-in.


After the fourth, fifth, and sixth digs had produced no positive results, the owner of the mine said that was it. Enough was enough. He had done all he could do, and after two weeks of no food

reduced prices, so he is passing his savings on to his customers.

The lines at the Seashell station often run 10 to 20 vehicles long. The police have been here several times because cars block traffic on Horsetrail Drive. Everett said, "I tell people in line that the Barco station a block away is only \$2.14, but they'd rather wait and save 5 cents. It's OK with me, of course. I don't mind making money."

A young man pumping gas said he had waited in line for 20 minutes. When asked why he didn't go a block away where there were no lines, he said, "Every penny counts. When I bought this '99 Bummer, gas was only \$1 a gallon, which was pretty cheap. So, even though I only get eight miles per gallon, I wasn't paying that much to fill my tank. But today's prices are killing me. I drive to work, and I drive to the grocery store. That's it. I used to drive around the neighborhood just to show off my wheels, but I can't do that any more."

تمرين (3) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-03 

Packing was a project in itself. Dave had even created a computer file named Fishing Trip. It was a checklist of 45 things to take to Big Bear. He took two rods, because on Free Fishing Day you were allowed to fish with two rods instead of the usual one rod. He took a hooded sweatshirt, jeans, two pair of socks, a heavy hooded denim jacket, winter gloves, and a scarf. He also took flip-flops, shorts, a T-shirt, #30 sun block, sunglasses, a big hat, and a lightweight raincoat. If you go to Big Bear in June, you'd better be prepared for hot or cold, rain or shine.

He packed a couple of magazines to read just in case the fish weren't biting. He and his friends joked that the fish were always biting - in the spot you just left or the spot you were headed to.

After about an hour and a half, Dave had gathered all the items on his list into a neat pile next to his door. He went to bed knowing that tomorrow's weather and fishing were unpredictable, but the good time with his friends was a given.

and water, it was impossible that anyone could still be alive. The families of the six miners were outraged, telling the media that the owner had given only lip service to rescue attempts. They planned to sue.

### تمرين (4) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-04




Dave needed to pack for Saturday's fishing trip. He went into his hall closet, where he had more than 20 rods and reels. Nowadays he went fishing twice a year at Big Bear, a huge lake in southern California about 7,000 feet up in the mountains.

California tries to boost the fishing industry by sponsoring a Free Fishing Day twice a year, once in June and once in September. That sufficed for Dave. He went mostly because it was a social event with a few friends, not so much to catch fish. Even by itself, the scenic drive up a twisty two-lane road was worth the trip. Not to mention the big, beautiful houses and trees that lined the shore of the lake.

guessed \$55. She told him they were four times that much. He replied that he wouldn't pay more than \$25 for them. She laughed. "You're so cheap," she said.


He picked up a book called How to Act Like a Lady, and started reading it. It would be a good book for Lorraine to practice her English and also for her to learn how to act in America, her new country. Lorraine came over with three tops and asked him to accompany her to the dressing room area.

### تمرين (6) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-06 

Steve Magellan, world-famous adventurer, has been missing for two days. The man who soared around the world by himself in a balloon took off in a single-engine airplane from a private airport in Nevada. He left at noon for a three-hour flight. The weather was perfect. There were no storms in the area. He took no emergency provisions. Presumably, he considered his flight to

### تمرين (5) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-05 


"What's the name of that store again? It starts with an 'A,'" Lorraine asked. Quinn didn't know, either. It was a four- or five-syllable word that didn't have anything to do with clothes. Yet it was a well-known, upscale clothing chain for women.

"Why can't they just name it something simple, like Ross Dress for Less?" Quinn said. "Everyone can remember that name!" He suggested a couple of names—Apostrophe, Apology. No, Lorraine told him, neither was right. "Well," Quinn said, "let's go to the 'A-store,' and then we'll read the sign and remember the name again, at least until we leave the store."

The name of the store was Anthropologie. It was on South Lake. Once inside, Lorraine started browsing through the clothes; Quinn headed straight toward one of various piles of books with catchy titles for sale. Lorraine called him over to look at a pair of slacks. "How much?" she asked. He

find a suitable area to try to set a new land speed record for automobiles.

### تمرين (7) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-07 

“Boy, we just wasted a whole morning,” Roy complained over the phone to his middle-aged son. Roy’s wife had been scheduled for a magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) exam, because her shoulder had been bothering her for months. It had gotten to the point where her golf game was suffering—she couldn’t break 120 anymore. Her drives, although still down the middle of the fairway, barely went 90 yards. Without the game of golf and the company of her golfing companions, Pat was a depressed woman.

Her doctor had recommended the MRI exam. For a shoulder exam, the patient lies face up on a flat metal “bed.” The bed slides into the MRI machine, like a DVD sliding into a DVD player. The patient’s nose is barely two inches from the metal ceiling. Many patients who are even slightly claustrophobic

be little different from a trip to the market for a quart of milk.

He didn’t file a flight plan, so exactly where he went is unknown. Searchers are combing a 200 by 200 mile area by air. The terrain is high desert, with lots of ravines. “It would be very easy for a small plane like that to remain undetected for months,” said an officer from the Civil Air Patrol. The plane, like most small planes, did not have a “black box,” which sends out radio signals in event of a crash. A friend of Magellan’s said that he usually wears a watch that can send radio signals. But no signals were coming from that watch, if he was in fact wearing it.

Magellan had a knack for walking away uninjured from accidents, so friends and relatives did not seem to be overly alarmed. His younger sister said that it wouldn’t surprise her if he came strolling out of the desert in a day or two. Magellan made his fortune in real estate when he was young, and has devoted the rest of his life to pursuing world records in ballooning, piloting airplanes, and driving fast cars. The purpose of his afternoon flight was to



"I had another bad dream," she told her fiancé. "It was about you again. You and your ex-girlfriend were kissing. I yelled at you to stop it. You looked right at me, and then you laughed at me! She laughed, too. Then you both went back to kissing. I tried not to watch, but when I covered my eyes, something pulled my hands away. I tried to leave, but my feet were glued to the ground. Finally, I woke up. Of course, it was very difficult to get back to sleep.

"I had to drive home from Las Vegas this morning. It's a wonder I didn't crash 50 times. Instead of seeing traffic in front of me, all I saw was you and her. I can't take any more dreams like this. We're going to have to break up. We can be friends, but just friends. That way, I won't be jealous anymore, and I won't have these bad dreams anymore."

"Why didn't you call me up and tell me about your dream?" he asked. "They say that the more you talk about bad dreams, the sooner you'll stop having them."

She disagreed. She thought that the only solution was to break up and be just

become nervous or even hysterical when they are slid into this compartment. The MRI operator has to slide them back out where they can "breathe" again. This happens regularly, even though patients are warned about the tomblike environment.

Pat's doctor had given her a sedative to take half an hour before the exam. He had also told her to wear a sleep mask, which would cover her eyes so that she wouldn't see the ceiling just inches from her face. Pat took the sedative and wore the mask. But as soon as she was slid all the way into the machine, she started screaming. The technician pushed the button to slide her back out. She was hyperventilating.

"Oh, my God! I could feel it! It was like I was being buried alive!" she exclaimed to her husband. "You're such a baby," Roy told her as they walked out of the MRI room.

تمرين (8) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-08



in 2005 destroyed much of New Orleans. Katrina killed 1,800 people and left about 100,000 people homeless.

Meteorologists watched the cyclone closely and warned the Myanmar government about it two days before the cyclone hit the country. But the Myanmar government failed to warn citizens to prepare for the dangerous storm.

“We were in our hotel,” said an American tourist who was visiting the capital with his wife. “We could see the weather changing, but the locals didn’t seem to be worried. When the wind smashed the windows in our hotel room, we started worrying. The wind blew the rain and tree branches and other debris into our room. We went into the bathroom and got into the tub. We didn’t feel safe in the bathroom, but where could we go? The wind howled and things banged around forever. We thought we were going to die for sure. When the storm finally passed, we looked outside. We couldn’t believe the destruction. Mostly all we could see was just water.” There was no telling when power would be restored or when roads would be usable. The Myanmar

friends. She loved him, but these dreams had become so frequent that she was actually afraid to go to sleep. She was losing weight and having stomachaches from the stress.

He didn’t know what to do. He wanted her to have pleasant dreams. He wanted her to have a life without stress. He wanted her to be his wife. This was it, she repeated; if she had just one more bad dream, they were through. He squeezed her hand, but said nothing.

### تمرين (9) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-09




The first report was that hundreds in the delta had died. But by the third day, estimates were that 40,000 people could be dead or missing, and perhaps one million might be left homeless. Bodies were floating in rivers that were mixed with ocean water. There was little fresh water and little food. For unknown reasons, the government was refusing most offers of international aid.

The cyclone had hit the capital of Myanmar with winds of 120 mph. It was as powerful as Hurricane Katrina, which

Berlin marathon, as he was still tired from the San Diego marathon he had run two months earlier. Hank's San Diego marathon time was just under 4 hours; his Berlin time was little more than 2 ½ hours. Asked why he had held his arms up high as if he was the winner at the finish line, Hank said, "Everyone does that. This was my fifth marathon this year. I knew the computer chip would detect my shortcut. The organizers need to lighten up; it's only a race."

Hank crossed the finish line wearing a floppy hat, a long-sleeved T-shirt, long pants, and a huge grin. He looked as cool as a cucumber, said a suspicious photographer. The other early finishers in the over-55 group crossed the finish line wearing sweaty T-shirts and nylon running shorts. None of them were grinning.


### تمرين (11) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-11 

The Ozark city zoo's tiger exhibit featured Winnie, a female Siberian tiger.

government was doing nothing to help matters. "That's because they prefer that we all die," said an angry survivor.

### تمرين (10) : إسمع و أفهم


ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-10 

The 2007 Berlin marathon for males over 55 was unusual in that the winner cheated. "Hank" skipped two checkpoints during the race. The electronic tracking chip that all runners must wear confirmed that Hank had run only 17 miles of the 26-mile marathon. Instead of confessing, Hank let race organizers discover the facts by themselves. He accepted the cheers and winner's trophy. He wasn't officially disqualified until the following day. Race organizers were angry that Hank, who was a well-known but retired politician in his native country, had accepted the winner's trophy. "He disgraced himself and his country," said one race official.

Hank later told the media that he had never intended to run the whole

made it. Winnie quickly caught up to one, and then the other. With one bite to each of their necks, she killed them both.

## تمرين (12) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-12 

Carbon Street is a long, tree-lined street with majestic houses on either side. The houses are owned by millionaires who cherish their quiet, residential street. Throughout the day, the only noise is usually the sound of various birds singing in the trees or the occasional jetliner flying high overhead. Not even the sound of gas leaf blowers or gas lawn mowers invades the silence.

But, nothing lasts forever. Carbon Street is about to change. Mr. Bing, a self-made billionaire, has a plan. A big plan. A big plan for a big house. Mr. Bing says he likes to do everything big.

“I like to make a statement. What’s the use of being on this planet if others don’t know that you’re here? After years of searching all over the world, I have determined that Carbon Street is the perfect place to live. I plan to build the

She was five years old, weighed 300 pounds, and stood three feet tall at her shoulders. Siberian tigers are endangered; only about 500 exist in the wild, and about 200 exist in captivity. They live up to 25 years.

Two brothers, 18 and 19 years old, visited the zoo just before closing. Earl and Merl had had a few drinks. They went straight to Winnie's pit. They decided it would be fun to tease her as she lay within the walled pit minding her own business. They threw pine cones and sticks at Winnie, causing her to growl. Then Earl hopped onto the wall and dangled his legs into the tiger pit area. He yelled at Winnie while Merl threw a plastic bottle full of water. The bottle struck Winnie's head.

Enraged, she sprang toward the wall. She slashed at Earl’s foot, removing one of his shoes. Earl screamed, hopped off the wall, and started running. Winnie quickly measured the height of the wall, and leapt. Although the wall was 13 feet high, Winnie landed on top of it. The two brothers were running toward the zoo restaurant, figuring that there would be safety in numbers. But they never

failing to stop completely at stop signs. That's what they call a "California, or rolling, stop," he told her.

"If the cops catch you sliding through a stop sign like that," he said, wagging a finger at her, "they'll give you a ticket for running a stop sign. That's a moving violation. That means at least a \$100 ticket, plus eight hours of driving school for another \$30."

"I know, I know," she replied. "But I never do it when they're around, so how can they catch me?" Simon was about to tell her that cops have a habit of suddenly appearing out of nowhere, but Colleen told him to stop thinking so negatively. "You are bad luck," she said. "When you talk like that, you make bad things happen." He told her that life doesn't work that way.


Colleen was in a hurry because she needed to drop off a package at the post office. It had to get to New York by Wednesday. She exited the freeway and pulled up at the stop sign. One car was in front of her. Colleen looked to the right and to the left. No cars were coming. It was safe to pull out. She hit the gas pedal. Bang! The car in front of her was

biggest house in the world at the end of this street. Construction will take about three years, but it will be worth it. I'm going to throw at least one party every weekend for all my friends. It's going to be fantastic!?

"It's going to be a nightmare," said one neighbor. "We're already talking to some realtors. Three years of construction. Three years of trucks going back and forth every day. And then parties every weekend? We can't even sue him—I think he's got more money than ou

r whole state. No, it's time to move. We went from having the nicest neighborhood to having the worst neighborhood, all because of one new neighbor. I wonder who the idiot is who told him about our street.?

### تمرين (13) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-13 

Colleen was in a hurry, which made her driving even more careless than usual. Her boyfriend Simon had already criticized her many times for

Dana screamed for help. An airport supervisor appeared. He told Dana to get on the plane. Dana said that she was not moving until an ambulance arrived. The supervisor said her plane would leave without her. Dana said that she didn't care.

An ambulance and two paramedics finally arrived. The paramedics said that the man would be okay, but he would need stitches. They put him into the ambulance and drove off.

On her way out to the plane, which was still refueling, Dana saw the employee who had initially ignored the old man. The employee said, "You're lucky the plane didn't leave without you."

"The plane?" Dana asked. "Who cares about the plane? How could you be so cold? That was an old man; he could have been your grandfather! How would you like it if everyone just stepped over your grandfather and went on their way?"

### تمرين (15) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-15



still sitting there. The driver was a young woman, who got out of her car, walked back to look at the damage to her new car, and started yelling at Colleen.

"What were you waiting for?" Colleen demanded.

### تمرين (14) : إسمع و أفهم

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-00-14



The crowd at the airport surged forward. The passengers had been waiting for a couple of hours for an airline employee to open the door leading to the plane outside. No one was in a good mood. An old man got trapped in the middle of the rush. He fell down without being able to break his fall. His head hit the concrete floor. Blood gushed from his forehead. He appeared to be unconscious. Everyone rushed past him, except for Dana. She called for help.

A minute later, a young airline employee showed up. Hardly looking at the old man, she told Dana to get aboard her plane. She said the old man would be okay, and walked away.

movie. She checked again, and said, "\$4.64." Baxter handed her a five, noting that she did not bother to apologize for her mistake.

She handed him his change without a word. "What's your name?" Baxter asked. She told him. "What's your last name?" he asked. She placed the two DVDs and the receipt on the counter top, where she could see him printing her full name on a piece of paper. Without asking him if he wanted a plastic bag for the DVDs, she turned back to the register. He looked at her, took the DVDs, and walked out. Maybe her manners will improve after I call her supervisor, he thought.

Baxter had wandered around Blockbuster for almost 30 minutes after work. He was looking for a movie that seemed even slightly interesting. He had to rent a "new release" in order to get a free "favorite." Actually, he would rather just rent two favorites; he hadn't read one good thing about any of the new releases.

Finally, because a coworker had liked it, he selected a new release called "Cloverfield." It was a story about a giant monster that destroys Manhattan. The other DVD he selected was "South Park," a popular HBO comedy series about third-grade students in Colorado. He went to the front counter.

He said hello to the employee. She did not look at him; all she said was, "Card?" Baxter gave her his Blockbuster card. She scanned it. She broke open the two locked DVD cases and checked to make sure the DVDs were in them. She said, "\$9.28." Baxter corrected her, "You mean \$4.64." She repeated, gruffly, "\$9.28." Boy, this is one rude woman, Baxter thought. He told her to check again; he was entitled to a free

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-01

**A:** Excuse me, do you mind if I sit down?

**B:** No. Let me move my bag.

**A:** Thanks. By the way, do you live in the dorm? I think I've seen you there.

**B:** Yes, I just moved in last week.

**A:** I live in the dorm, too.

**B:** Oh, really? Do you like it?

**A:** Yeah, it's okay. It takes me about 5 minutes to get to my first class in the morning.

**B:** I'm not so lucky. My first class is on the other side of the university. But I've got a bicycle, so it doesn't take too long.

**A:** I've got a bike, too. But I haven't needed it this semester.

**B:** Well, this is my stop coming up. By the way, my name's Bob.

**A:** Hi, Bob. I'm Sylvia.

**B:** Nice meeting you, Sylvia. I'll probably see you around.

**A:** Okay. Bye, Bob.

### 1. Where are the speakers?

- A) In a car
- B) In a bus
- C) In a dorm
- D) In a classroom

الجواب الصحيح : ( B )

## المهارة الثانية

### مهارة الإستيعاب والأستنتاج

الثانية، مهارة الإستيعاب و الأستنتاج، هذه المهارة تتطلب قدرات الطالب علي الإستماع الى النص بإنصات شديد و واع و لإدراك المعلومات الواردة في النص، زيادة على ذلك يتوقع من الطالب إستنتاج معلومات جديدة من المعلومات الواردة في النص. وهذه المهارة مهمة للتعامل مع الأسئلة الغير مباشرة في الإمتحان و التي تشكل جزء مهم منه. مثلا

حاول ان تنهي جميع التمارين حسب الخطوات التالية:

أولاً، إقرأ النص قراءة جيدة قبل الإستماع اليه

ثانياً، حاول ان تتمرّن على نطق الكلمات الجديدة عليك بأستخدام برنامج الوافي (برنامج سهل و مفيد و رخيص يمكن طلبه من أي محلات بيع و صيانة البرامج) أو أي من البرامج المتوفرة على الإنترنت

ثالثاً، أستمع الى النص و تابع قراءة النص في الكتاب أثناء الإستماع الى التسجيل الصوتي للنص

رابعاً، أستمع الى المعلومات الواردة في النص.

خامساً، كرر الخطوات السابقة حتى تحس أن إنذك إستطاعت أن تميز جميع المعلومات الواردة في النص

سادساً، إجب على الأسئلة المعطاه لك مع النص.

### تمرين (1) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك إجب على الأسئلة التالية.





**5. What is the last thing the man says to the woman?**

- A) He says he has to stop seeing her.  
B) He says he will likely see her again.  
C) He says he looks forward to meeting her.  
D) He says he is going to come by her room.

الجواب الصحيح : ( B )

لاحظ عبارة

I'll **probably** see you around.

من المحتمل أن نلتقي مرة أخرى و هذا مأملة

**تمرين (2) : إستيعاب**

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-02



A: Hi there; I'm Zack. I saw you in the 8:00 class.

B: Oh, you mean Math 204?

A: Yeah, you probably didn't see me. I was late, so I was sitting by the door.

B: Well, I'm Zack. I'm sorry; did you say your name was "Jack"?

A: Actually, it's Zack with a "Z."

B: Sorry, Zack. I didn't get a lot of sleep last night.

A: Don't worry about it. People are always calling me Jack.

لاحظ عبارة *this is my stop coming up* هذه هي المحطة التي سأنزل بها

**2. What does the man say when the woman asks if she can sit down?**

- A) He says it is okay to have a seat.  
B) He says the seat is already occupied.  
C) He says he minds her sitting next to him.  
D) He says the bag seated there can't be moved.

الجواب الصحيح : ( A )

لاحظ عبارة *No. Let me move my bag.* لا ، دعني أبعث حقائبي لتجلس

**3. How does the woman go to her first class?**

- A) She walks.  
B) She takes a bus.  
C) She drives her car.  
D) She rides her bicycle.

الجواب الصحيح : ( A )

لاحظ عبارة

*It takes me about 5 minutes to get to my first class in the morning.*

أحتاج 5 دقائق للوصول إلى المحاضرة الأولى

**4. Where is the man's first class?**

- A) Across campus  
B) Near the bus stop  
C) Not far from the dorm  
D) On the other side of town

الجواب الصحيح : ( A )

لاحظ عبارة

*My first class is on the other side of the university*

- C) She hates having a morning math class.  
D) She doesn't say the man's name correctly.

الجواب الصحيح : ( D )

لاحظ عبارة

*I'm sorry; did you say your name was "Jack"?*

**4. When does the man want to take the 205 class?**

- A) At 8:00  
B) At night  
C) Any time he can  
D) In the afternoon

الجواب الصحيح : ( D )

لاحظ عبارة

*I think I'll be able to take Math 205 in the afternoon.*

**5. The woman says she is "not a morning person." What does she mean?**

- A) She never sleeps past dawn.  
B) She dislikes going to bed late.  
C) She doesn't perform well before noon.  
D) She isn't at her best unless it's morning.

الجواب الصحيح : ( C )

### تمرين (3) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-03



A: Hey, Tyler! Long time, no see.

B: Turkey, why are you taking that 8:00 math class?

A: That's the only time I can take 204. If I could take it later, I would.

B: Yeah, I understand. My schedule's the same way.

A: But next semester, I think I'll be able to take Math 205 in the afternoon.

B: I'd like to do that. I'm just not a morning person; especially when it comes to math!

**1. What do the speakers have in common?**

- A) They both like math.  
B) They have the same class.  
C) Both of them are always late.  
D) They have the same sleeping habits.

الجواب الصحيح : ( B )  
لاحظ عبارة

*My schedule's the same way.*

جدولي مشابه لذلك.

**2. Why did the man sit by the door in class?**

- A) He was very sleepy.  
B) He didn't arrive on time.  
C) He was looking for the woman.  
D) He didn't like being called names.

الجواب الصحيح : ( B )

لاحظ عبارة

*I was late, so I was sitting by the door.*

**3. Why does the woman apologize?**

- A) She is constantly late for class.  
B) She cannot see the man any longer.

- C) They both have had problems with their eyes.  
D) They haven't run across each other for a while.

الجواب الصحيح : ( D )

لاحظ عبارة

*I haven't seen you here at the gym for ages.*

**3. The man says, "For ages." What does he mean?**

- A) For adults only  
B) For a long period  
C) For not enough time  
D) For both young and old

الجواب الصحيح : ( B )

**4. What does the woman say about school?**

- A) School has been terrible.  
B) Everything has been perfect.  
C) On the whole, school's been alright.  
D) Everything but her math class has been bad.

الجواب الصحيح : ( C )

إحذر من الإختيار ( D ) لأنه عكس الصحيح

**5. What color is Zack Peterson's hair?**

- A) Red  
B) Gray  
C) Brown  
D) Yellow-Orange

الجواب الصحيح : ( D )

لاحظ عبارة *He's a carrot-top.*

هذه العبارة تعني أن رأسه مثل الجزرة، و بذلك يكون شعره برتقالي يميل الى الصفرة.

B: Sylvia! I haven't seen you here at the gym for ages.

A: Yeah, I've just been too busy to work out.

B: How's school going?

A: Everything's okay except for an 8:00 math class I have.

B: That is early! Say, it isn't Math 204, is it?

A: Yes, it is. Why?

B: Oh, a friend of mine is in that class.

A: Really? What's his name?

B: Zack Peterson. Do you know him?

A: I think so. What color is his hair?

B: He's a carrot-top.

A: Yeah, that's him. He likes the morning math class as much as I do.

**1. What are the speakers doing?**

- A) Walking to school  
B) Working in an office  
C) Sitting in a classroom  
D) Exercising in a gymnasium

الجواب الصحيح : ( D )

لاحظ عبارة

*I haven't seen you here at the gym for ages.*

**2. What is true about the speakers?**

- A) They have been seeing other people.  
B) They have seen one another a lot recently.

1. What does the woman have to do?

- A) Form a line
- B) Register to vote
- C) Complete an application
- D) Fill out a pair of jeans

الجواب الصحيح : ( C )

إحذر من الإختيار (B)

2. Where did the woman grow up?

- A) Lebanon
- B) Bahrain
- C) Qatar
- D) Jeddah

الجواب الصحيح : ( B )

لاحظ عبارة

when I was a baby we moved to Bahrain. That's where I lived until I went to university

3. Why does the man ask the woman questions?

- A) To determine her nationality
- B) To help her finish her homework
- C) To assist her in locating her mother
- D) To find out what her native language is

الجواب الصحيح : ( A )

4. What will the woman probably do next?

- A) Move to Saudi Arabia
- B) Write to her mother
- C) Apply for a passport
- D) Mail a letter to the school

الجواب الصحيح : ( D )

لاحظ عبارة

All I need now is a stamp and an envelope.

تمرين (4) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-04



A: Jean, could you help me?

B: Sure, Marie. What do you need?

A: Oh, it's this registration form I have to fill out for school; there's a line that I don't know what to do with.

B: Which one?

A: Where it says "Country of Origin." I was born in France, but when I was a baby we moved to California. That's where I lived until I went to university.

B: Your mother's an American citizen, right?

A: Yes, she is. She was born and raised in Texas.

B: And you have a U.S. Passport?

A: Yes, I do.

B: Well, then, don't worry about that part. It's only for people who aren't American citizens.

A: Thanks, that's everything; I'm finished! All I need now is a stamp and an envelope.

A: It shows that you're making progress. I bet you know more Chinese than you think you do.

**1. Where does the conversation take place?**

- A) In a car
- B) In a dorm
- C) In a restaurant
- D) In a language class

( C ) : الجواب الصحيح

**2. On which day does the conversation probably NOT take place?**

- A) Tuesday
- B) Wednesday
- C) Thursday
- D) Monday

( C ) : الجواب الصحيح  
لاحظ عبارة

*But on weekends, I like to go out.*

**3. What does the woman offer?**

- A) A sign
- B) Her fries
- C) Language lessons
- D) A ride to the dorm

( B ) : الجواب الصحيح  
لاحظ عبارة

*do you want to help me finish my fries?*

**4. Where is the woman from?**

- A) Spain
- B) Malaysia
- C) England
- D) Puerto Rico

( D ) : الجواب الصحيح

**5. What does the woman say about the man's English?**

## تمرين (5) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-05



A: Hi Steve. So that was your car I saw. I thought you always ate at the dorm.

B: Hi Juanita. Most of the time I do. But on Fridays and weekends, I like to go out.

A: Listen, you want to help me finish my fries? I shouldn't have ordered the large.

B: Thanks, they look good. Uh, by the way, Juanita, can I ask where you're from?

A: I'm from Isabela, a town in Puerto Rico. Why?

B: Well, you speak English fluently, and your Spanish is perfect.

A: I've used both languages ever since I can remember. My parents made sure I attended schools where they spoke English.

B: I'd love to be bilingual. I've studied Chinese for five years, but I know I'll never speak like a native.

A: Let me ask you something, Sebastian. Do you ever dream in Chinese?

B: Um, yes, I do sometimes. Is that a good sign?

A: That's got to be a lot of work. What do your parents do?

B: Well, my father drives a cab. He works out at the airport at night .

A: What about your mother; what does she do?

B: My mother runs a small family store.

A: What kind of store is it?

B: Oh, we mostly sell food - bread, eggs, milk, rice, that sort of thing .

A: I guess a food store like that would come in handy if you had a large family.

**1. Where does the conversation probably take place?**

- A) A taxicab
- B) An airport
- C) A cafeteria
- D) A food store

الجواب الصحيح : ( C ) لاحظ عبارة

*Looks like the whole dorm came to have lunch today, doesn't it*

**2. Where did the man hear the woman say that she had a big family?**

- A) In class
- B) On a bus
- C) In a store
- D) At the dorm

الجواب الصحيح : ( A )

**3. How many children are in the woman's family?**

- A) Five
- B) Six

- A) He doesn't speak it very well.
- B) He already speaks it like a native.
- C) He probably speaks it better than he thinks.
- D) He will speak it fluently if he practices more.

الجواب الصحيح : ( C )

لاحظ عبارة

*I bet you know more English than you think you do.*

## تمرين (6) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-06



A: Hi, Viola. Anybody sitting here

B: Oh, hi, Tyler. No, have a seat. Looks like the whole dorm came to have lunch today, doesn't it ?

A: Yeah, it does; it's crowded. They must have bused some of them in! Hey, in class today I heard you say that you have a big family.

B: That's right. I've got six brothers and five sisters.

A: Wow! That is pretty big! Are you the oldest?

B: No. Actually, I'm the second oldest .

B: How do you practice your German?

A: Oh, the man who lives next door--I call him Heinz--is from Berlin. He and I are always talking about Germany.

B: Well, all you need now is a neighbor from Paris!

**1. What is the woman's native language?**

- A) French
- B) Korean
- C) English
- D) Chinese

( B ) : الجواب الصحيح

**2. What languages does the man speak?**

- A) English, French, and Chinese
- B) English, Chinese, and Korean
- C) English, German, and French
- D) English, Korean, and German

( C ) : الجواب الصحيح

**3. The man says his "French is rusty." What does he mean?**

- A) He studied French in the countryside.
- B) He thinks he is too old to learn French.
- C) He doesn't speak French very often now.
- D) He never learned French grammar very well.

( C ) : الجواب الصحيح

لاحظ عبارة **rusty** وهي بمعنى صدأ من قلة الإستعمال

**4. How does the man practice his German?**

- A) In Berlin
- B) With a neighbor

- C) Eleven
- D) Twelve

( C ) : الجواب الصحيح

لاحظ عبارة

*I've got six brothers and five sisters.*

**4. What does the woman's father do?**

- A) He sells food.
- B) He flies planes.
- C) He drives a taxi.
- D) He operates a gym.

( C ) : الجواب الصحيح

لاحظ عبارة

*my father drives a cab*

## تمرين (7) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-07



A: Sylvia, what languages do you speak?

B: As you know, Korean is my first language. I also speak English and some Chinese. How about you; what languages do you speak?

A: English, German, and French. While I was studying in Europe, I used French and German all the time. Now my French is rusty, but I do keep my German up.

B: I don't know much about computers.  
All I have is a typewriter.

A: Really, but you can't get on the  
Internet with that!

B: That's right. I use the library's  
computers when I read my email.

A: Well, I know what you need for your  
birthday!

1. Which sport does the man play the  
most often?

- A) Football
- B) Baseball
- C) Volleyball
- D) Basketball

الجواب الصحيح : ( B ) لاحظ عبارة  
*The last one .*

2. What would the woman probably  
**NOT DO** in her spare time?

- A) Play sports
- B) Read books
- C) Take pictures
- D) Use a computer

الجواب الصحيح : ( A ) لاحظ عبارة *NOT DO* في  
السؤال.

3. What does the man most likely  
**own**?

- A) A computer and a football
- B) A camera and a basketball
- C) A painting and a volleyball
- D) A typewriter and a baseball

الجواب الصحيح : ( D )

- C) On the telephone
- D) At a language school

( B ) : الجواب الصحيح

5. Why does the woman say the man  
needs a neighbor who's from Paris?

- A) The man's native language is French.
- B) The man's just started taking French  
classes.
- C) The man wants to study abroad at a  
French school.
- D) The man needs to maintain his ability to  
speak French.

( D ) : الجواب الصحيح

### تمرين (8) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس  
الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الي  
المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك  
أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-08



A: Dan--what do you like to do in your  
spare time?

B: I like to play sports.

A: Which sport do you play the most --  
volleyball, basketball, football, or  
baseball?

B: The last one. When I was in high  
school, I was a pitcher.

A: You're more active than I am. I like  
reading, photography, and computers.



paper for two hours. Then I eat lunch around noon. If I have time, I'll go catch a matinee at the theater over at the mall.

A: When do you go to work?

B: I catch a bus at three-thirty, and I get to the office about forty-five minutes later. Wait; let me unlock the door.

A: And what time do you come back?

B: Here in the corner is fine, thanks. Uh, I get home pretty late, usually after one in the morning.

A: Really? What exactly is your job?

B: Oh, I thought you knew. I'm a TV announcer. I do WNTV's entertainment reports! Haven't you seen me before?

A: Gee, I'm sorry. I never watch TV.

### 1. Who are the speakers?

- A) Neighbors
- B) Passengers
- C) Co-workers
- D) Close friends

الجواب الصحيح : ( A )

### 2. What do the speakers do with the box?

- A) They take it on the bus.
- B) They bring it to the office.
- C) They carry it up the stairs.
- D) They put it in the elevator.

الجواب الصحيح : ( C )

### 3. At what time does the woman usually arrive at work?

### 4. Why does the man go to the library?

- A) To read books
- B) To mail letters
- C) To do his homework
- D) To use the computers

الجواب الصحيح : ( D )

### 5. What does the woman think the man needs for his birthday?

- A) Books
- B) A camera
- C) A computer
- D) Sports equipment

الجواب الصحيح : ( C )

### تمرين (9) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-09



A: That box looks heavy, Serena. Can I help you carry it up to your apartment?

B: Thanks. This chair was on sale, but I wasn't thinking about the stairs. I wish we had an elevator in this building!

A: I've got this side. Hey, Serena, I was wondering; what do you do during the day?

B: Well, on weekdays I usually get up at ten. I get on the Internet or read the

A: Seven-thirty! That didn't give you much time, did it?

B: No, it didn't. I took a quick shower, jumped into my clothes, and ran all the way here.

A: Did you make it in time?

B: Yeah, I think I got here right at eight. But there was one problem.

A: What was that?

B: There were no other students; I was the only one here!

A: Oh, no! Let me guess--it was Saturday!

B: That's right. I need a clock that tells me what day it is.

**1. What time does the woman say it is?**

- A. 20 minutes to 8:00
- B. 15 minutes to 8:00
- C. 10 minutes to 8:00
- D. 5 minutes to 8:00

**2. Why does the man ask what time it is?**

- A. He thinks he is going to be late for his first class.
- B. He believes his watch is not showing the correct time.
- C. He wants to know when the laundry room is going to open.
- D. He is waiting for the news headlines to be announced.

**3. The woman says she did a "scatterbrained thing." What does she mean?**

- A) 12:00 pm
- B) 2:45 pm
- C) 3:30 pm
- D) 4:15 pm

الجواب الصحيح : ( D ) لاحظ عبارة 3:30 + 45 دقيقة

5. What is woman's profession?

- A) TV announcer.
- B) Reporter
- C) Radio DJ
- D) Salesperson

الجواب الصحيح : ( A )

### تمرين (10) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-10



A: What time is it, Sylvia?

B: Uh, it's seven-fifty.

A: Huh, my watch is slow. Maybe it's the battery.

B: Oh, that reminds me; I should tell you about the scatterbrained thing I did.

A: What was that?

B: Well, a few mornings ago, when I woke up, it was already seven-thirty. I thought I'd slept through the alarm.

A: And what time does it arrive in Chicago?

B: Just a sec; let me check. It gets in at six twenty-five pm.

A: Okay, I can read this; it's easier than I thought. One more thing--I'll come back on Sunday. Should I use the same timetable?

B: If you turn the page over, you'll see the times for weekends and holidays on the other side

A: Great! Thanks for your help.

B: No problem. Have a good trip..

**1. What are the speakers discussing?**

- A. A training program
- B. A railroad schedule
- C. Where to cash a check
- D. Where to stay in AlHassa

**2. At what time does the train to Chicago leave?**

- A. 2:14
- B. 2:40
- C. 4:13
- D. 4:30

**3. On what day is this conversation taking place?**

- A. Sunday
- B. Saturday
- C. A holiday
- D. A weekday

**4. What is the woman having trouble doing?**

- A. Reading her book

- A. She did something nice.
- B. She did something silly.
- C. She did something clever.
- D. She did something hurtful.

**4. What did the woman do after she saw it was 7:30?**

- A. She drove to class.
- B. She rushed to class.
- C. She strolled to class.
- D. She attended to class.

**5. Why didn't the woman see any other students in the room?**

- A. The class was on a field trip.
- B. She didn't go to the right classroom.
- C. All of the other students were late too.
- D. She went on a day when class is not held.

Question 1=c

Question 2=b

Question 3=b

Question 4=b

Question 5=d

### تمرين (11) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-11



A: Excuse me, sir; I can't read this timetable. When does train 214 leave?

B: It leaves at four-thirteen pm.

B: Wow, it's hard to read; the words are so small! Where's north; is it up here?

A: Uh . . . , I think so.

B: Okay, then this dark line has to be the freeway. And . . . what's this dotted line?

A: Maybe it's a train track.

B: And this circle here looks like a lake. I think he wrote 12253 Waterview Court. Is that right?

A: Something like that. I can check my address book.

B: You know what, Tom? Let's get on the Internet and print out a better map. What do you think?

A: Yeah, let's do that. We'll get lost using this.

**1. Where does this conversation probably take place?**

- A. In a car
- B. In a house
- C. In an office
- D. In a restaurant

**2. Who are the speakers?**

- A. Classmates
- B. Co-workers
- C. A husband and wife
- D. A cab driver and a passenger

**3. What is the conversation mostly about?**

- A. Finding a freeway
- B. Directions to a house
- C. A map on the Internet
- D. A person's bad handwriting

- B. Seeing what time it is
- C. Finding when her train leaves
- D. Getting some time to take it easy

**5. What is on the other side of the paper the woman is holding?**

- A. Weekend and holiday train times
- B. Advertisements for different trips
- C. Tips for scheduling one's time better.
- D. Prices for one-way and round-trip tickets

Question 1=b

Question 2=c

Question 3=d

Question 4=c

Question 5=a

**تمرين (12) : إستيعاب**

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-12



A: Hey Jenny, I'm home.

B: Hi Tom; anything new at work?

A: Yeah. The Lees asked us over to their house for dinner tomorrow night.

B: What time?

A: Harry said to come around 6:30.

B: That sounds fine. You know where they live?

A: Well, Harry drew me this map.

A: Thank you. Are you going all the way into the city?

B: Yeah, the semester's out and I just took my last exam, so I'm going to go sightseeing in Chicago.

A: Is this your first time riding the train to Chicago?

B: No, this is my second time, but I don't remember much. I came with my parents when I was 3.

A: Well, I'd suggest changing seats. The view's much better over on that side of the train.

B: Thank you, I'll do that.

A: And hold on to your ticket. You might be asked for it again. Have a nice trip.

B: Thanks for your help. Maybe I'll see you again when I come back.

**1. Where does the woman find her ticket?**

- A. In her bag
- B. On the seat
- C. On the floor
- D. In her pocket

**2. What had the woman been doing before her train trip?**

- A. Studying at school
  - B. Looking for a ticket
  - C. Sightseeing in Chicago
  - D. Traveling with her parents
3. How many times has the woman taken the train to Chicago?

A. Never

**4. What does the man think the dotted line is?**

- A. A lake
- B. A house
- C. A freeway
- D. A road

**5. What will the man and woman probably do next?**

- A. Take a drive
- B. Reserve a table
- C. Buy a better map
- D. Use the computer

Question 1=b

Question 2=c

Question 3=b

Question 4=d

Question 5=d

### تمرين (13) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-13



A: Tickets . . . tickets, please. May I see your ticket, miss?

B: Yes. Uh, now where did I put it? Just a moment; let me look for it.

A: Sure.

B: In my bag? No. Is it on the seat, the floor? No. Oh, here it is in my pocket!

B: Well, let me ask you--you ever heard of "FastPass"?

A: No, not until now. Is that a bus line?

B: Yes, it is. It will take you straight to your terminal at O'Hare.

A: That sounds like what I need. Do you know how much it costs?

B: The last time I took it, it was \$30 one-way. Let me see if I have their card in my wallet. Yeah, here it is. You should call 1-800-500-5500 to reserve a seat.

A: So, do I have to make a reservation?

B: No, you don't have to, you know. But it's better if you do. That way you can make sure you've got a seat. They're pretty crowded at times, especially around holidays.

A: Uh, I think you said 1-800-500-5500, right? I'll give them a call when I get home. Thanks a lot, Tyler..

**1. What does the woman ask the man?**

- A. If he is going home for the upcoming holidays
- B. If he knows of a simple way to go to the airport
- C. If he knows someone who can take her to the airport
- D. If he thinks it's a bad idea for her to fly during the holiday

**2. How does the man go to the airport when he flies?**

- A. By car
- B. By bus
- C. By taxi
- D. By train

- B. Once before
- C. Twice before
- D. Three times before

**4. What does the man suggest the woman do?**

- A. Switch seats
- B. Look in her pocket
- C. Throw the ticket away
- D. Take the train more often

**5. What might the woman be asked for later on?**

- A. Her bag
- B. Her seat
- C. Her plans
- D. Her ticket

Question 1=d

Question 2=a

Question 3=b

Question 4=a

Question 5=d

**تمرين (14) : إستيعاب**

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-14



A: Tyler, do you know of an easy way to get to the airport? I'm flying home for the holidays.

B: Why don't you take the bus, Sylvia? That's what I always do when I fly.

A: Okay, but I don't know anything about the bus service here.

A: Oh, Tyler! Where have you been? I called you a few times. I even stopped by your place, but you weren't there.

B: Sorry, I didn't tell you. We go to Indian Lake every Fourth of July. It's kind of a family tradition.

A: Indian Lake? Where's that?

B: Uh, it's about an hour and a half from Chicago. My parents have a cabin here.

A: So, it's just you and your folks there?

B: Yeah, but they have to go back home tomorrow night. Say, would you like to come out?

A: I'd love to, but I can only stay for the weekend. I have a test Monday afternoon.

B: I can get you back in time if we leave early Monday morning. You know how the drive is Monday morning!

A: You don't have to drive me anywhere, Tyler. My friend just sold me her car; that's what I wanted to tell you. Now . . . how do I get to Indian Lake?

**1. What had the woman been trying to do earlier?**

- A. Take a test
- B. Sell her car
- C. Find the cabin
- D. Contact Thamer

**2. What had the man NOT told the woman?**

- A. His name
- B. Where he lived

**3. How much did it cost the man to take the FastPass?**

- A. \$13 one-way
- B. \$13 round-trip
- C. \$30 one-way
- D. \$30 round-trip

**4. What does the man look for?**

- A. A wallet
- B. A telephone
- C. A place to sit
- D. A business card

**5. Why does the man say the woman should make a reservation?**

- A. Seats go quickly.
- B. The trip is speedy.
- C. The scenery is pretty.
- D. Departures leave hourly.

Question 1=b

Question 2=b

Question 3=c

Question 4=d

Question 5=a

### تمرين (15) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-15



A: Hello.

B: Hi there Sylvia. This is Tyler.

B: I'll be departing from Houston, Texas, and flying to Chicago, Illinois.

A: And when do you want to return?

B: Uh, I want to come back on the fifth. Oh, and ma'am, I'd like the cheapest flight you have.

A: Yes, sir. Well, if you leave at 6 am from Houston on May fifth, the price for the flight is \$150.

B: And what about from Chicago on the fifth?

A: That's also \$150 if you leave at 6 am.

B: Great, let's do that. And would you have any information about places to stay? I'm going to an attorney's convention in the Michigan Avenue area.

**1. What is the man's most likely profession?**

- A. A pilot
- B. A lawyer
- C. A physician
- D. A travel agent

**2. At what time will the man depart from Houston, Texas?**

- A. 5:00 am
- B. 5:00 pm
- C. 6:00 am
- D. 6:00 pm

**3. What does the man want?**

- A. A one-way ticket
- B. The woman's name

- C. Where he was going
- D. His telephone number

**3. According to the man, how far away is Indian Lake from Chicago?**

- A. 30 minutes
- B. 45 minutes
- C. 60 minutes
- D. 90 minutes

**4. Why does woman tell the man not to worry?**

- A. She can drive herself
- B. She likes Thamer's parents
- C. The man can take him back on Monday
- D. The man doesn't have to tell her everything

Question 1=d

Question 2=c

Question 3=d

Question 4=a

**تمرين (16) : إستيعاب**

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-16



A: Frontier Airlines. How may I help you?

B: I'd like to make a reservation for the second of May.

A: Yes, sir. Could you give me the city you're leaving from and your destination, please?



B: Um, there were two of us going, but now it's only me, so . . . just a single room, please.

A: If you'd give me just a moment, please . . . Yes, we do have a single room available on the 15th. The room rate is ninety dollars.

B: Wow! Boy . . . that's a bit more than I expected to pay.

A: Well, you can try calling other hotels, but you'll find this is pretty standard.

B: Uh . . . okay. I don't have the time to call around and I know you're probably right.

A: Great. Let me go ahead then and reserve a room for you. Can you tell me your name, please?

B: It's Mrs. Horner, Peggy Horner. That's with two Gs.

**1. What does the woman want?**

- A. One single room
- B. One double room
- C. Two single rooms
- D. Two double rooms

**2. How much does the woman pay?**

- A \$15
- B \$19
- C \$50
- D \$90

**3. On what day will the woman stay?**

- A. Wednesday
- B. Thursday
- C. Friday
- D. Saturday

- C. Two flights on May fifth
- D. The least expensive flight

**4. How much will the total trip cost?**

- A. \$150
- B. \$200
- C. \$300
- D. \$450

**5. What else does the man want to know about?**

- A. Hotels
- B. Streets
- C. Rental cars
- D. Restaurants

Question 1=b

Question 2=c

Question 3=d

Question 4=c

Question 5=a

**تمرين (17) : إستيعاب**

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-17



A: Skylight Hotel Reservations.

B: I want to reserve a room, please.

A: Certainly madam, when would you like to stay?

B: Next Thursday night, that's the 15th.

A: And what type of room would you like? Single or double?

B: On the . . . on the . . . I'm sorry, I'm a nervous wreck right now. We're on the second floor of Cutler Hall, room 211.

A: I understand, sir. May I have your name and the student's name?

B: Her name is . . . uh . . . Anita Rivera. And my name's Lawrence Clark. I'm a professor here at the university

A: Okay, who is there with you?

B: Um, Anita and two other students. They're watching her while I call. What do you think; should we drive her to the hospital?

A: No, an ambulance is already on its way. It should be there very soon.

B: Uh, what should we do while we wait for it to come?

A: Just keep her calm and warm.

B: Okay, we'll do that. Thank you.

**1. Who does the man talk to on the phone?**

- A. A professor
- B. A university student
- C. An ambulance driver
- D. An emergency operator

**2. Why does the man call?**

- A. He fell down
- B. There has been a wreck
- C. A woman is about to have a baby.
- D. A student has been working too hard.

**3. Where is the man calling from?**

- A. A vehicle

**4. What does the man suggest the woman do?**

- A. Come that day
- B. Stay two nights
- C. Go to a better hotel
- D. Make the reservation

**5. What is the woman's name?**

- A. Perry
- B. Petty
- C. Pegy
- D. Peggy

Question 1=a

Question 2=d

Question 3=b

Question 4=d

Question 5=d

### تمرين (18) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-18



A: 911.

B: Help. I need some help!

A: Yes sir. Can you tell me what is happening?

B: I'm at the university and a student of mine is . . . is going into labor right at this very moment.

A: Yes sir. Can you tell me exactly where you are?

A: Well, we've got pepperoni, sausage, bacon, ham, pineapple, mushrooms, olives, tomatoes, and green peppers.

B: Hmm . . . I'll have sausage and mushroom. No . . . wait . . . let me change that. I'd like ham and pineapple on it.

A: Okay. Would you like a drink with that?

B: Yes. What do you have?

A: We've got one-liter bottles of apple juice, orange soda, grape soda, and cola.

B: I'd like the orange soda, please.

A: Okay. That comes to . . . thirteen ninety. May I have your name, address, and phone number?

B: Uh, my name's Joan Smith. I'm at 533 Rosewood Avenue, and you can reach me at 876-2345.

A: Okay. That's Joan Smith at 533 Rosewood Avenue, 876-2345?

B: Yes, that's right.

A: Okay. We'll be there at 5:15.

B: In half an hour? Great, thanks!

**1. Which topping is NOT mentioned?**

- A. Bacon
- B. Onions
- C. Tomatoes
- D. Green peppers

**2. What does the woman want on her pizza?**

- B. A factory
- C. A movie theater
- D. A school building

**4. How many other people are there with the man?**

- A. 2
- B. 3
- C. 4
- D. 5

**5. What does the woman tell the man to do?**

- A. To go into labor
- B. To drive to the hospital
- C. To keep the student cool
- D. To wait for the ambulance

Question 1=d

Question 2=c

Question 3=d

Question 4=b

Question 5=d

### تمرين (19) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-19



A: Jiffy Pizza. Can I take your order?

B: Yes. I'd like a large pizza.

A: What kind of toppings would you like on that?

B: Uh, I don't know. What toppings can I order?

A: Dr. Silver's Office.

B: Oh, I thought you opened at 10:00 am, but my wife said to try earlier. She was right! I was going to call you at lunch.

A: Yes, people are always surprised that we're here so early. How can I help you, sir?

B: I'd like to make an appointment to have a check-up, please.

A: Okay. Could I have your name please?

B: Yes. My name is Ian Conley.

A: Mr. Conley, how about the day after tomorrow at 9:30?

B: Um . . . would you have anything in the afternoon? I have a meeting Thursday morning.

A: Okay. Hmm . . . we do have an opening that afternoon at 4:00. Would that be good for you?

B: Yes, that would be just fine.

A: Okay. Mr. Conley, while I have you on the line, could I just check a few things?

B: Sure.

A: Is your address still 2354 Locklear Street, apartment 11?

B: Actually, ma'am, it's number 17.

A: Okay, I'll change that. And your phone number--is it 233-4027?

- A. Ham and pineapple
- B. Bacon and tomatoes
- C. Pepperoni and olives
- D. Sausage and mushroom

**3. What does the woman have to drink?**

- A. Cola
- B. Grape soda
- C. Apple juice
- D. Orange soda

**4. How much is the pizza?**

- A. \$13.19
- B. \$13.90
- C. \$30.19
- D. \$30.90

**5. At what time does this conversation take place?**

- A 4:45
- B 5:15
- C 5:30
- D 5:50

- Question 1=b
- Question 2=a
- Question 3=d
- Question 4=b
- Question 5=a

### تمرين (20) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-20



- C. He'll be getting his car fixed.  
D. He has to run some errands then.

Question 1=a  
Question 2=d  
Question 3=d  
Question 4=c  
Question 5=a

### تمرين (21) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-21



إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي ( STEP 09 )

- A: Great Lakes Fish and Lobster. How may I help you?  
B: Yes, when I ate lunch there yesterday, I saw that you accept reservations.  
A: Yes, we do.  
B: Well, then I'd like to reserve a table for 6:00 tonight if that's possible.  
A: Certainly, may I have your name, sir?  
B: My name is Tyler.  
A: And let me confirm the time you said--you want a table at 6 pm, is that correct?  
B: Yes, it is.  
B: How large is your party, sir?

B: Yes, it is.

A: Thank you, Mr. Conley. Alright, I have you down for 4:00 on Thursday afternoon.

B: Thanks. See you then.

A: Bye.

### 1. At what time does this conversation take place?

- A. Before 10 am  
B. Around noon  
C. At 4:00 pm  
D. In the evening

### 2. What does the man want to do?

- A. Have lunch  
B. Update his file  
C. Pay with a check  
D. Get a medical exam

### 3. What does the woman change in the man's file?

- A. The street name  
B. The man's name  
C. The phone number  
D. The apartment number

### 4. On what day will the man have an appointment?

- A. Tuesday  
B. Wednesday  
C. Thursday  
D. Friday

### 5. Why CAN'T the man come at the time the woman first suggests?

- A. He has a meeting.  
B. He's going out of town.

- A. 6
- B. 8
- C. 10
- D. 12

**5. What does the man prefer?**

- A. A private table
- B. A table by the window
- C. A table close to the kitchen
- D. A table in the non-smoking section

Question 1=d

Question 2=a

Question 3=b

Question 4=c

Question 5=b

**تمرين (22) : إستيعاب**

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-22



A: Oh, Janna, you're early! I'm happy you're here early today because I'd like to discuss your attendance for a moment.

B: Gee, Dr. Livingston, I'm really sorry about missing yesterday.

A: Actually, it's been several days. Counting today, we've only had 6 classes, yet you've already missed 4. You won't be able to pass if you're constantly absent.

B: Sorry, I've been extremely busy.

A: Uh . . . including myself, there will be ten of us altogether.

B: And do you have a preference, sir?

A: Huh . . . excuse me?

B: Is there any place you would prefer to sit? We do have a smoking section out on the terrace.

A: Oh, I see! Um, would it be possible to reserve a table next to the window? You have a good view of the city.

B: Yes, we can arrange that.

A: Thank you very much.

B: No problem. We'll see you at six..

**1. What kind of establishment does the man call?**

- A. An Indian resturent
- B. A steak house
- C. A Chinese buffet
- D. A seafood restaurant

**2. When does the man say he ate at the restaurant?**

- A. The day before
- B. Earlier that day
- C. The previous week
- D. A few months ago

**3. What does the woman confirm?**

- A. The man's name
- B. The time of the reservation
- C. The man's seating preference
- D. The number of people coming

**4. How many people are in the man's party?**

too early.

D. She has been overloading herself with homework.

**2. How many days has the woman attended class?**

- A. Two
- B. Four
- C. Six
- D. Eight

**3. What does the woman decide?**

- A. To stay in class
- B. To get another class
- C. To withdraw from class
- D. To miss just one more class

**4. At the end of the conversation, what does the man say he has to do?**

- A. Dismiss class
- B. Drop the class
- C. Change his class
- D. Prepare for class

Question 1=b

Question 2=a

Question 3=c

Question 4=d

### تمرين (23) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-23



Class, before I let you go today, I want to tell you about a fascinating program that is going to be on in four days at 8

A: Well, I hope you're ready for today's exam.

B: Today? I thought it was Monday!

A: Read the syllabus, Janna; this is precisely what I'm talking about. You should either make an effort to attend, or you should consider withdrawing while it's still possible.

B: What do you mean?

A: Today's the final day you can withdraw and get a full refund.

B: Maybe I really should; what do you suggest?

A: I wish you could attend classes regularly; however, if you don't believe you're capable of this, then don't waste your money.

B: Thanks, Dr. Livingston; I really appreciate your advice. If it's okay, I suppose I'll go ahead and drop the class.

A: It's entirely up to you, but that might be best if you don't think things are going to change. Excuse me, the students are coming, and I've got to get ready for class. I wish you the very best of luck, Janna.

B: Thank you, Dr. Livingston. Good bye.

**1. What is the woman's problem?**

- A. She hasn't been getting adequate grades.
- B. She hasn't been attending class every day.
- C. She has been coming to school much

evenhanded as this one is about Sigmund Freud. Well, that's all I have for today. Tomorrow is a holiday, so I will see you Monday afternoon. Oh, and please make sure you bring in your homework when I see you next time. Bye and have a good holiday!

**1. Where would you most likely hear this talk?**

- A. In an English class
- B. In an arithmetic class
- C. In a psychology class
- D. In a physical education class

**2. When does this talk take place?**

- A. Monday
- B. Tuesday
- C. Wednesday
- D. Thursday

**3. What does the speaker like about the program?**

- A. It is fair.
- B. It is biased.
- C. It is overly-long.
- D. It is controversial.

**4. What can be said about the ideas presented in the TV program?**

- A. They have evoked romantic feelings.
- B. They have been the subject of debate.
- C. They have made some people egotistical.
- D. They have rendered some people unconscious

Question 1=c  
Question 2=d

pm on Channel 12. It's part of the "Great Minds in Psychology" series that has been on Public TV this year. The subject of Monday's program will be Austrian psychoanalyst Sigmund Freud. The program explains how Freud pioneered the technique of psychoanalysis, and it looks at Freud's investigations into the internal conflicts between the conscious and unconscious. As you know from taking this class, Freud split the psyche into three parts: the id, the ego and the super ego. The program covers this fairly well, and everything is illustrated with great computer animation that makes the explanations really easy to grasp. One more thing I like is that Freud's controversial ideas are shown without bias, for the narrative is fair and balanced, as well as scholarly. There are no 'Freud lovers' or 'Freud bashers' here. You really should make an effort to watch this show, especially since some questions about Sigmund Freud will be on the quiz next Tuesday. But more than that, I think you will find the hour-long show to be both interesting and informative. By the way, it says here in the program notes that the following week's program will be about Carl Jung. I just hope that it's as good and



I'm getting way ahead of myself. Right now I want to show you a short video about Pangea. After that, I'll talk about the oceans.

**1. What is the subject of the talk?**

- A. Biology
- B. Geology
- C. stronomy
- D. Oceanography

**2. What did the speaker probably NOT mention in the previous lecture?**

- A. The Earth
- B. The Moon
- C. The Atlantic Ocean
- D. The continent of Pangea

**3. According to the speaker, when did Pangea start to break apart?**

- A. 200,000 years ago
- B. 2,000,000 years ago
- C. 20,000,000 years ago
- D. 200,000,000 years ago

**4. After showing a video, what will the speaker probably discuss?**

- A. The origin of Pangea
- B. The development of the Sun
- C. The creation of the Earth and Moon
- D. The formation of the Atlantic Ocean

Question 1=b  
Question 2=c  
Question 3=d  
Question 4=d

**تمرين (25) : إستيعاب**

Question 3=a  
Question 4=b

**تمرين (24) : إستيعاب**

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-24



إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي ( STEP 09 )

Welcome. It looks as if everyone who's coming is already here, so let's start, shall we? In yesterday's class, I talked about how the Earth and the Moon are thought to have formed. As I told you, the best theory concerning their origins seems to be the "Single Source" theory. This states that the Earth and Moon were made out of the same ball of molten mass. I also talked about how the Earth eventually cooled down and how its surface features formed. And just before the end of class, we looked at how all the continents were fused into one gigantic continent called Pangea. Now, to continue from where we left off, we know for certain that this massive continent did not last forever-just look at a present-day globe. According to current theories regarding continental drift, this huge landmass probably began to fracture into the continents we see today about 200 million years ago. This date is supported by the ages of basalt flows that have been found in the middle of the Atlantic Ocean. It is likely, by the way, that the Atlantic did not form immediately after Pangea's breakup, but

building. They apologized for being so slow.

The firemen never arrived. Instead, a school police officer showed up. He walked around the area with the supervisor. It was a false alarm. The officer used his key to finally turn off the alarm.

But it was too late for Jennifer. She had listened to the loud alarm for too long. She should have known better. Even as she drove home, her ears felt strange.

1. What was the cause?

- A) A bubbles bursting
- B) little sounds
- C) busy signal on a phone
- D) alarm sound

الجواب ( D )  
لاحظ عبارة

*She had listened to the loud alarm for too long*

2. What didn't the firemen arrived?

- A) because the policeman arraived first.
- B) because there was no fire.
- C) because the fireman was busy.
- D) becace the fire was too small.

الجواب ( B )

لاحظ عبارة *It was a false alarm..*

3. All of the following could be true EXCEPT?

- A) Jennifer is a graduate student.

إقراء نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-25



Jennifer's ears were "talking" to her. They were making little sounds, like little bubbles bursting. A "bubble" was bursting almost every second. It was not painful, but annoying. She knew the cause.

While she was cleaning the whiteboard after her class ended last night, the fire alarm went off. Instead of leaving the building immediately, she walked around to see what the problem was. The blaring alarm sounded like the busy signal on a phone, but 1,000 times louder. The school seemed to be empty. Then she walked by one room, and saw about seven students inside.

Just then the night supervisor came by. She told everyone to leave immediately. The students were packing their hair-care equipment into their bags. The night supervisor waited impatiently. Finally, after almost five minutes, all the students and their teacher left the

Helen stepped outside her front door to see what the weather was like. It was sunny and warm. That was nice, because for the past two weeks it had been cold and rainy. It had been so cold that she had had to turn her heater on. She was lucky, because her heater worked and she could pay her heating bills.

Some people in Los Angeles were not so lucky. Unable to use their home heater, they placed charcoal into a barbecue grill and lit it. The heat kept them warm, but the carbon monoxide killed them.

This happens almost every winter in Los Angeles. People shut all the windows tight to keep the cold out, then light the charcoal. Soon enough, the oxygen in their home is consumed by the open flames. The family suffocates to death.

Everyone knows that smoke detectors are required in Los Angeles. But many people don't know about, or don't think they need, carbon monoxide detectors. They're not expensive. A \$25 investment can save a family from death.

- B) Jennifer is studying in a modlin.  
C) The night supervisor is a man.  
D) The policeman has all the keys to the school.

الجواب ( C )  
لاحظ عبارة

*the night supervisor came by. She told everyone*

4. "They apologized for being so slow", who are they?

- A) The fire department  
B) The police department  
C) The students.  
D) The teatures.

الجواب ( C )

5. How many students were in the school when the alarm went off?

- A) 0  
B) 1  
C) 5  
D) 9

الجواب ( D )  
لاحظ عبارة

*and saw about seven students inside.*

### تمرين (26) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-26



- B) Some people in Lose Angeles  
 C) Those who think that nothing will happen to them.  
 D) Those who think that they are protected from carbone monoxide.

( D ) الجواب

4. "the other guy", is closest in meaning to?

- A) The next person  
 B) The other person  
 C) Someone else  
 D) Some other person

( C ) الجواب

"the other guy" مصطلح شائع الإستخدام في اللغة الأمريكية يعني شخص آخر ما في مكان ما

### تمرين (28) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-28



إقرأ نص القصة التالية ثم أجب على الأسئلة المعطاة بعدها، إذا لم يكن هناك جواب صحيح، اختر أحسن الأجوبة المعطاة و أقربها للصحيح

The well-dressed, gray-haired woman was crying her eyes out. She had

People always think that nothing bad will happen to them; it always happens to "the other guy." So they forget to put fresh batteries into their smoke detectors annually, and they don't bother to buy carbon monoxide detector.

1. According to the passage, why do many people die in Los Angeles every year in winter?

- A) breathing Carbon Monoxide  
 B) drinking and driving  
 C) freezing to death  
 D) car accident

( A ) الجواب  
 لاحظ عبارة

*The family suffocates to death.*

2. All of the following could be true EXCEPT?

- A) smoke detectors are required in Los Angeles.  
 B) some people in Los Angeles do not know that smoke detectors are required in Los Angeles.  
 C) Smoke detectors are not expensive.  
 D) some people in Los Angeles think that they do not need smoke detectors.

( D ) الجواب

4. "So they forget to put fresh batteries into their smoke detectors", who are they?

- A) Everybody in Lose Angeles

was a nice old man who owned four dogs. So I said, 'OK, thank you, I'll fight the ticket.'

"So when I went to court, I dressed Poopsie up in his prettiest ribbons and made extra sure he did his business first. We were both so excited. I just knew the judge and Poopsie would hit it off.

"But do you know what happened when we got inside? They had a different judge, a judge who is allergic to dogs, and he immediately started sniffing, coughing, sneezing, and looking around. And then he yelled at me to get the dog out of the courtroom. He fined me \$100 on the way out without even giving me a chance to talk about Poopsie's chronic dyspepsia. It was terrible! I'm still upset."

1. Why was the women crying?

- A) She finds \$100
- B) She lost \$100
- C) She had to pay \$100
- D) She needs \$100

الجواب ( C )  
طلب منها أن تدفع غرامة "was fined",

2. All of the following could be true EXCEPT?

just been fined \$100 by the judge because a month ago her dog made a mess on the front lawn of the courthouse.

"I just got out of the cab and I leashed Poopsie to the light pole. After I paid the fare and gave the driver a dollar tip, I turned around and saw that Poopsie had made a mess. I didn't have any plastic bags, so I said, 'Well, Poopsie, let's go home. There's nothing I can do about this now.'

"We were just starting home when I heard this voice out of nowhere: 'Excuse me, ma'am. Is that your dog?' I turned around. It was an officer of the law. Well, of course, it was my dog. 'That dog just made an illegal deposit on the courthouse lawn. As its owner, it's your responsibility to dispose of that deposit. See the sign over there? I'm going to have to write you a citation.'

"I asked him what sign he was talking about. He pointed all the way down to the end of the block. One little sign, a block away! How could anyone see that? I couldn't see that sign with my best opera glasses. The officer said that I could fight the ticket. He said the judge

Liz was excited. She was going to Asia with her mom. Neither of them had ever traveled out of the United States before. They were going to fly to Hong Kong. After staying in Hong Kong for three nights, they would travel on their cruise ship to Shanghai and Beijing.

"Beijing is inland, so we have to take about a two-hour bus ride to get there from the port. I forget the name of the port. Anyway, we're going to see the Great Wall, the Tiananmen Square, and the Forbidden City. It's going to be so cool!" she told her neighbor Jane.

From China, the cruise ship would go to Pusan in South Korea, and finally to Tokyo. From Tokyo, they would catch a flight back to Los Angeles.

"The trip is going to last three weeks. It's only going to cost us \$2,800 each, IF we can control our urge to shop," she laughed.

"I hope your trip is more fun than mine was," said Jane. "I took a cruise to the Bahamas, but almost all the passengers got sick. I caught some kind of virus that made me throw up for almost three days. They gave us a

- A) The sign was small and she could not see it.
- B) The old judge was allergic to dogs
- C) Poopsie has a chronic dyspepsia.
- D) The officer was an nice man

( B ) الجواب

3. "hit it off", is closest in meaning to?

- A) hit each other
- B) the judge would hit the dog
- C) the dog would hit the judge
- D) become friends

( C ) الجواب

"hit it off", مصطلح شائع الإستخدام في اللغة الأمريكية يعني يصبح صديقين حميمين

4. All of the following could be allergy symptoms EXCEPT?

- A) sniffing,
- B) coughing,
- C) sneezing.
- D) looking around

( D ) الجواب

### تمرين (29) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-29



4. How many contries would Liz and her mom would have been in, after the trip?

- A) 3
- B) 4
- C) 5
- D) 6

( B ) الجواب

USA, China, South Korea, Japan

5. Which transport Liz can not take from Beijing to Pusan?

- A) Bus
- B) Boat
- C) Air plan
- D) Ship

( A ) الجواب

*Beijing is inland*

### تمرين (30) : إستيعاب

إقرأ نص المحادثة التالية بصوت عالي ثم إدرس الكلمات الجديدة عليك ، ومن بعد ذلك إستمع الى المحادثة في ملف التسجيل الصوتي التالي. بعد ذلك أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

ملف صوتي رقم : STEP-01-30



A local community college professor decided to fight back. "The price of books for our students is just getting higher and higher and, combined with the rising cost of tuition, it's killing these kids," said Peter Jason, Ph.D. "Remember, students are one of the poorest groups of people in America.

discount that we could use on a future trip. Ha! No more cruising for me."

"We've heard about those disasters," said Liz. "Mom and I are going to be washing our hands every 30 minutes, and we're bringing surgical masks with us."

1. All of the following could be true EXCEPT?

- A) Liz loves to travel
- B) Liz loves shopping
- C) Liz loves her mother
- D) Liz does not loves her neighbor, Jane.

( D ) الجواب

2. "urge", is closest in meaning to?

- A) urgent
- B) wants
- C) desire
- D) needs

( C ) الجواب

3. Which is NOT true about Liz neighbor?

- A) She did not enjoyed her trip
- B) She payed less for her trip
- C) She was thrown up
- D) She hates cruising now

( C ) الجواب

called it Successful Public Speaking: How To Be Brief, Concise, and to the Point.

“Compared to most other public speaking primers, mine is half the number of pages, and one-third the price. That is, \$30 instead of \$90. Plus, it is published in a three-ring binder format. So, when I wrote a second edition last year, students only had to buy the 35 new pages and delete 35 of the original pages. For only \$7.00, they had upgraded to the new edition. I’ve had great feedback from my students about this loose-leaf concept. Maybe the word will get out, and more writers and publishers will try it

Almost half of them have at least one part-time job. In fact, one of my students has three jobs. She is a part-time sales clerk at a clothing store three days a week, then works three evenings a week as a pizza cook, and on weekends she does manicures at a beauty salon. And she still manages to have a high GPA and go to school full-time.”

Textbook prices are traditionally high. Adding to that problem, many college instructors change textbooks year after year; they either upgrade to a new edition or switch to an entirely different textbook. This further hurts students because if an instructor no longer uses a particular textbook, that book has no resale value.

Dr. Jason decided to make life a little easier and a lot cheaper for his students by writing his own book on public speaking. “Many books have an increased price because of bells and whistles: CD-ROMs, lots of color photographs, and lots of graphics. I talked to my students, and many of them, like me, prefer to keep things simple. So, during a sabbatical a few years ago, I wrote my own textbook. I made sure that it wasn’t long-winded. I